

THE WATER  
OF THE  
WONDROUS  
ISLES  
BY  
WILLIAM  
MORRIS



*The  
University  
of Iowa  
Libraries*

---

x1P R5079  
W3



75

304















































THE WATER OF THE WONDROUS ISLES  
BY WILLIAM MORRIS



BY WILLIAM MORLEY  
THE EDITOR OF THE LONDON GAZETTE



THE WATER OF THE MONDROUS ISLES  
THE FIRST PART: OF THE HOUSE OF CAPTIVITY.

Chapter I. Catch at Utterhay.



AS TELLS THE TALE, was a walled cheaping town hight Utterhay, which was builded in a bight of the land a little off the great highway which went from over the mountains to the sea.

THE SAID TOWN was hard on the borders of a wood, which men held to be mighty great, or maybe measureless; though few indeed had entered it, & they that had, brought back tales wild & confused thereof.

THEREIN WAS neither highway nor byway, nor wood/reeve nor way/warden; never came chapman thence into Utterhay; no man of Utterhay was so poor or so bold that he durst raise the hunt therein; no outlaw durst flee thereto; no man of God had

such trust in the saints that he durst build him a cell in that wood.

FOR all men deemed it more than perilous; & some said that there walked the worst of the dead; othersome that the Goddesses of the Gentiles haunted there; others again that it was the faery rather, but they full of malice and guile. But most commonly it was deemed that the devils swarmed amidst of its thickets, and that wheresoever a man sought to, who was once environed by it, ever it was the Gate of Hell whereto he came. And the said wood was called Evilshaw.

NEVERTHELESS the cheaping town throve not ill; for whatso evil things haunted Evilshaw, never came they into Utterhay in such guise that men knew them, neither wotted they of any hurt that they had of the Devils of Evilshaw.

NOW IN the said cheaping town, on a day, it was market and high noon, and in the market place was much people thronging; and amidst of them went a woman, tall, and strong of aspect, of some thirty winters by seem,



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

ing, black/haired, hook/nosed and hawk/eyed, not so fair to look on as masterful & proud. She led a great grey ass betwixt two panniers, wherein she laded her marketings. But now she had done her chaffer, and was looking about her as if to note the folk for her disport; but when she came across a child, whether it were borne in arms or led by its kinswomen, or were going alone, as were some, she seemed more heedful of it, and eyed it more closely than aught else.

**S**he strolled about till she was come to the outskirts of the throng, and there she happened on a babe of some two winters, which was crawling about on its hands & knees, with scarce a rag upon its little body. She watched it, & looked whereto it was going, and saw a woman sitting on a stone, with none anigh her, her face bowed over her knees as if she were weary or sorry. Unto her crept the little one, murmuring and merry, and put its arms about the woman's legs, & buried its face in the folds of her gown: she looked up therewith, and showed a face which had once been full fair, but was now grown bony and haggard, though she were scarce past five & twenty years. She took the child and strained it to her

bosom, and kissed it, face and hands, and made it great cheer, but ever woefully. The tall stranger stood looking down on her, and noted how evilly she was clad, & how she seemed to have nought to do with that throng of thriving cheapeners, and she smiled somewhat sourly.

**A**t last she spake, & her voice was not so harsh as might have been looked for from her face: Dame, she said, thou seemest to be less busy than most folk here; might I crave of thee to tell an alien who has but some hour to dwell in this good town where she may find her a chamber wherein to rest and eat a morsel, and be untroubled of ribalds & ill company? Said the poor wife: Short shall be my tale; I am overpoor to know of hostelries & ale/houses that I may tell thee aught thereof.

Said the other: Maybe some neighbour of thine would take me in for thy sake? Said the mother: What neighbours have I since my man died; and I dying of hunger, and in this town of thrift & abundance?

**T**he leader of the ass was silent a while, then she said: Poor woman! I begin to have pity on thee; and I tell thee that luck hath come to thee to day.



**N**OW the poor wife had stood up with the babe in her arms & was turning to go her ways; but the alien put forth a hand to her, & said: Stand a while & hearken good tidings. And she put her hand to her girdle/pouch, & drew thereout a good golden piece, a noble, & said: When I am sitting down in thine house thou wilt have earned this, and when I take my soles out there of there will be three more of like countenance, if I be content with thee meanwhile.

**T**HE woman looked on the gold, & tears came into her eyes; but she laughed & said: House/room may I give thee for an hour truly, and therewithal water of the well, and a mouse's meal of bread. If thou deem that worth three nobles, how may I say thee nay, when they may save the life of my little one. But what else wouldst thou of me? Little enough, said the alien; so lead me straight to thine house.

**S**OWENT they forth of the market/place, and the woman led them, the alien & the ass, out of the street through the west gate of Atterhay, that, to wit, which looked on Evilshaw, and so into a scattering street without the wall, the end of which

neared a corner of the wood aforesaid: the houses there were nought so evil of fashion, but whereas they were so nigh unto the Devil's Park, rich men might no longer away with them, and they were become wares for poor folk.

**N**OW THE townswoman laid her hand on the latch of the door that was hers, and threw the door open; then she put forth her palm to the other, and said: Wilt thou give me the first gold now, since rest is made sure for thee, as long as thou wilt? The ass/leader put it into her hand, and she took it and laid it on her baby's cheek, & then kissed both gold and child together; then she turned to the alien & said: As for thy way/beast, I have nought for him, neither hay nor corn: thou wert best to leave him in the street. The stranger nodded a yea/say, and the three went in together, the mother, the child, and the alien.

**N**OT right small was the chamber; but there was little therein; one stool to wit, a yew/chair, a little table, and a coffer: there was no fire on the hearth, nought save white ashes of small wood; but it was June, so that was of no account.



**T**HE guest sat down in the yew/chaire, and the poor-wife laid her child down gently on the floor & came and stood before the stranger, as if abiding her bidding.

**S**PAKE the alien: Nought so uncomely or strait is thy chamber; & thy child, which I see is a woman, & therefore belike shall long abide with thee, is lovely of shape, & fair of flesh. Now also thou shalt have better days, as I deem, & I pray them on thine head.

**S**HE SPAKE in a kind wheedling voice, & the poor-wife's face grew softer, & presently tears fell down on to the table from her, but she spake no word. The guest now drew forth, not three nobles, but four, and laid them on the table, and said: Lo, my friend, the three nobles which I behight thee! now are they thine; but this other thou shalt take and spend for me. Go up into the town, and buy for me white bread of the best; and right good flesh, or pou-laine if it may be, all ready cooked and dight; and, withal, the best wine that thou mayst get, and sweetmeats for thy baby; & when thou comest back, we will sit together and dine here. And thereafter, when we be full of meat & drink, we shall devise something more for thy

good speed.

**T**HE woman knelt before her weeping, but might not speak no word because of the fullness of her heart. She kissed the guest's hands, and took the money, & then arose and caught up her child, and kissed her bare flesh eagerly many times, and then hastened out of the house and up the street and through the gate; and the guest sat hearkening to the sound of her footsteps till it died out, and there was nought to be heard save the far/off murmur of the market, & the chirrup of the little one on the floor.

**T**HEN arose the guest & took up the child from the floor, who kicked and screamed, & craved her mother as her broken speech might; but the alien spake softly to her, and said: Hush, dear one, and be good, and we will go & find her; & she gave her therewith a sugar/plum from out of her scrip. Then she came out of doors, & spake sweetly to the little one: See now this pretty way/beast. We will ride merrily on him to find thy mother.

**T**HEN she laid the child in the pannier with a soft cushion under, & a silk cloth over her, so that she lay there happily. Then



she took her ass's rein and went her ways over the waste toward Evilshaw; for, as ye may deem, where the houses & the street ended, the beaten way ended also.

**Q**UETLY & speedily she went, and met but three men on the way; and when these saw her, and that she was making for Evilshaw, they turned their heads away, each one, & blessed themselves, and went past swiftly. Not one sought to stay her, or held any converse with her, & no foot she heard following after her. So in scarce more than the saying of a low mass she was in amongst the trees, with her ass and her wares and her prey.

**N**O stay she made there, but held forward at her best before the night should fall upon her. And whatsoever might be told concerning the creatures that other folk had met in Evilshaw, of her it must needs be said that therein she happened on nought worser than herself.

Chapter II. Now shall be told of the House by the Water-side

**F**OUR days they wended the wood, & nought befell to tell of. The witch-wife (for even such was

she) fed the stolen child well and duly, and whiles caressed her & spake sweetly unto her; whiles also she would take her out of the pannier, and set her on the ass's back and hold her thereon heedfully; or, other-whiles, when they came upon grassy and flowery places, she would set her down on the ground & let her roam about, and pluck the flowers and the strawberries. And whoso might be sorry, the child was glad, so many things new and fair as she came upon.

**A**T last, when the fifth day was waning, & they had been a long while wending a wood set thick with trees, it began to grow grey betwixt the distant boles, & then from grey to white, and it was as if a new world of light lay before them. Thitherward went they, and in a little, and before the sun was set, came they to the shore of a great water, and thence was no more land to be seen before them than if it had been the main sea itself, though this was a sweet water. Albeit, less than a half mile from the shore lay two eyots, as it might have been on the salt sea; but one of these sat low down on the water, & was green and well bushed, but the other, which lay east of it, and was nigher to the shore, was



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

high, rocky, and barren.

**N**OW the ending of the wood left a fair green plain betwixt it and the water, whiles more than a furlong across, whiles much less; & whiles the trees came down close to the water side. But the place whereas they came from out the wood was of the widest, and there it was a broad bight of greensward of the fashion of the moon seven nights old, & a close hedge of thicket there was at the back of it; and the lake lay south, & the wood north. Some deal of this greensward was broken by closes of acre land, and the tall green wheat stood blossoming therein; but the most was sweet meadow, and there as now was a gallant flock of goats feeding down it; five kine withal, & a tethered bull. Through the widest of this meadow ran a clear stream winding down to the lake, & on a little knoll beside a lap of the said stream, two bowshots from the water, was a knoll, whereon stood, amidst of a potherb garden, a little house strongly framed of timber. Before it the steep bank of the lake broke down into a slowly shelving beach, whose honey coloured sand thrust up a tongue in amongst the grass of the mead.

**W**ENT the witch/wife straight to the door of the said house as if she were at home, as was sooth indeed. She threw the door open, & unladed the ass of all his wares, & first of the youngling, whom she shook awake, & bore into the house, and laid safely on the floor of the chamber; nor did she wait on her wailing, but set about what was to be done to kindle fire, and milk a she/goat, & get meat upon the board. That did she, and fed both herself and the child plenteously: neither did she stint her of meat ever, from that time forward, how-ever else she dealt with her.

Chapter III. Of skin/changing.

**N**E thing must here be told: Whenas the said dame stood forth clad amidst of the chamber the next morning, the child ran up to her to greet her or what not, but straightway when she saw her close, drew aback, & stood gasping with affright; for verily she deemed this was no-wise she who had brought her last night into the fair chamber, and given bread and milk to her and put her to bed, but someone else. for this one had not dark hair, & hooked nose,



and eyen hawk / bright; stark  
& tall was she indeed, as that  
other one, and by seeming of  
the same / like age; but there  
came to an end all her likeness  
to last night's housewife. This  
one had golden / red hair flow-  
ing down from her head; eyes  
of hazel colour, long and not  
well / opened, but narrow & sly.  
High of cheek / bones she was,  
long / chinned and thin / lipped;  
her skin was fine and white, but  
without ruddiness; flat / breast /  
ed she was, & narrow / hippered.

**N**OW SHE laughed at the  
babe's terror, & said, but  
in her old voice at least:  
Thou foolish little beast! I  
know what scares thee, to wit,  
that thou deemest me chang-  
ed: now I tell thee that I am the  
one who brought thee here last  
night, and fed thee; neither is  
my changing a matter of thine,  
since at least I am the one who  
shall keep thee from hunger  
& weather henceforward; that  
is enough for thee to know as  
now. Now thou hast to eat and  
sleep and play & cry out, that  
thou mayest the sooner wax, &  
grow into the doing of my will.

**T**HERewith she led her  
out into the sunshine, &  
tethered her to an ash  
sapling which grew anigh the  
door, that the child might be  
safe the while she went about  
her work in acre and mead.

**B**UT AS FOR that mat-  
ter of changing of as-  
pect, the maiden came to  
know thereafter that the witch  
durst not go into the wood in  
the same skin as that which she  
wore at home, wherefore she  
had changed it for the journey  
to Utterhay, and changed back  
again in the night / tide before  
she arose.

Chapter IV. Of the waxing of  
the stolen Child. ✿ ✿

**T**HIS LITTLE  
one, who is hence-  
forth called Bird-  
alone, though the  
witch called her  
but seldom so,  
nor indeed by any name, dwelt  
there betwixt the water & the  
wood, & saw none save the said  
witch / wife, who, as aforesaid,  
fed her well, but scarce med-  
dled with her else for a long  
while; so she wandered well-  
nigh as she had will, & much in  
the wood; for she had no fear  
thereof, nor indeed of aught  
else, save of the dame. She  
learned of the ways & the wont  
of all the creatures round a-  
bout her, and the very grass &  
flowers were friends to her, &  
she made tales of them in her  
mind; & the wild things feared  
her in nowise, & the fowl would  
come to her hand, & play with  
her and love her. A lovely child  
she was, rosy and strong, and



as merry as the birds on the bough; & had she trouble, for whiles she came across some ugly mood of the witch/wife, she bore it all as lightly as they.


**M**ORE the years thus, till now she was grown tall & thin, & had seen twelve winters, & was far stronger and handier than at first sight she looked to be. That found her mistress, and would not forego the using of her deftness. for indeed the maiden knew all matters of wood and field full well, and somewhat of the water also (though no boat had she ever seen there), for she learned herself swimming, as the ducks do belike.

**B**UT NOW her mistress would learn her swinking, & hard was the lesson, for with twiggen rods & switches was she learned, and was somewhat stubborn with this woman, whom she deemed loved her not; and, however it were, there began to grow in her an inkling that all was not well with the dame, and howsoever she might fear her, she trusted her not, nor worshipped her; otherwise she had learned her lesson speedily; for she was not slack nor a sluggard, and hated not the toil, even when it pained and wearied her, but a-

gainst the anger & malice she hardened her heart.

**I**T IS TO BE said, that though there she dwelt alone with the witch/wife, she had somehow got to know that they two were not alone in the world, & she knew of male and female, and young and old. Thereof doubtless the witch herself had learned her, would she, would she not; for though she were mostly few/spoken, yet whiles the tongue of her would loosen, and she would tell Birdalone tales of men & women, & kings and warriors and thralls, and the folk of the world beyond them, if it were but to scare the child. Yea, and when she rated Birdalone, or girded at her, words would come forth which the maiden stored up, and by laying two and two together gat wisdom howso it were. Moreover, she was of the race of Adam, & her heart conceived of diverse matters from her mother's milk & her father's blood, & her heart and her mind grew up along with her body. Herein also was she wise, to wit, how to give wrath the go/by, so that she oft found the wood a better home than the house; for now she knew that the witch/wife would enter it never; wherefore she loved it much, and haunted it daily if she might.





**A**MIDST all this she lived not unmerrily; for the earth was her friend, and solaced her when she had suffered aught: withal she was soon grown hardy as well as strong; & evil she could thole, nor let it burden her with misery.

**Chapter V. Of Birdalone, and how she is grown into Maidenhood.**

**N**EAR the years & the years amidst such days as these, and now is Birdalone grown a dear maiden of seventeen summers; & yet was her life not unhappy; though the mirth of her childhood was somewhat chastened in her, & she walked the earth soberly & measurely, as though deep thoughts were ever in her head: though, forsooth, it is not all so sure that her serious face & solemn eyes were but a part of the beauty which was growing with the coming forth of childhood into youth & maidenhood. But this at least is sure, that about this time those forebodings which had shown her that she had no call to love & honour her mistress took clearer shape, & became a burden on her, which she might never wholly shake off. for this she saw, that she was not her

own, but a chattel and a tool of one who not only used her as a thrall in the passing day, but had it in her mind to make of her a thing accursed like to herself, and to bait the trap with her for the taking of the sons of Adam. forsooth she saw, though dimly, that her mistress was indeed wicked, and that in the bonds of that wickedness was she bound.

**O**NE THING, moreover, had she noted now this long while, that once and again, it might be once every two moons, the witch-wife would arise in the dead of night and go forth from the house, and be away for a day, or two or three, or whiles more, and come back again weary and fordone; but never said she any word to Birdalone hereof. Yet oft when she arose to go this errand, before she left the chamber would she come to Birdalone's truckle-bed, & stand over her to note if she were asleep or not; and ever at such times did Birdalone feign slumber amidst of sickening dread. forsooth in these latter days it whiles entered the maiden's head that when the dame was gone she would rise & follow her and see whither she went, and what she did; but terror constrained her that she went not.

**Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity**





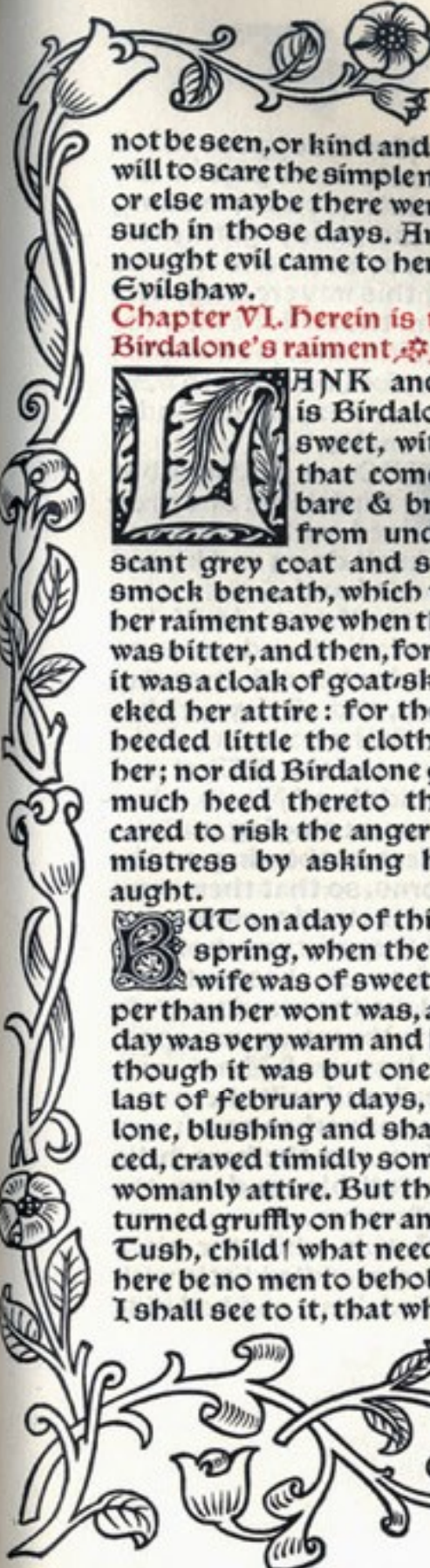
**N**OW from amidst all these imaginings arose a hope in her that she might one day escape from her thralldom: & whiles, when she was lonely & safe in the wood, to this hope she yielded herself; but thereof came such tumult of her soul for joy of the hope, that she might not master her passion; the earth would seem to rise beneath her, & the woods to whirl about before her eyes, so that she might not keep her feet, but would sink adown to earth, and lie there weeping. Then most oft would come the cold fit after the hot, and the terror would take her that someday the witch would surprise the joy of that hope in her eyes, & would know what it meant, or that some light word might bewray her; and therewith came imaginings of what would then befall her, nor were that hard to picture, & it would come before her over and over again till she became weary & worn out therewith.

**B**UT though they abode ever with her, these troubling thoughts pricked not so oft at the keenest, but were as the dull ache of little import that comes after pain overcome: for in sooth busy & toilsome days did she wear,

which irked her in nowise, since it eased her of the torment of those hopes & fears aforesaid, and brought her sound sleep and sweet awaking. The kine & the goats must she milk, and plough and sow and reap the acre/land according to the seasons, and lead the beasts to the woodland pastures when their own were flooded or burned; she must gather the fruits of the orchard, and the hazel nuts up the woodlands, & beat the walnut trees in September. She must make the butter & the cheese, grind the wheat in the quern, make & bake the bread, and in all ways earn her livelihood hard enough. Moreover, the bowman's craft had she learned, and at the dame's bidding must fare alone into the wood now & again to slay big deer and little, and win venison: but neither did that irk her at all, for rest & peace were in the woods for her.

**T**RUE IT IS, that as she wended thicket or glade or wood/lawn, she would at whiles grow timorous, and tread light and heedfully, lest rustling leaves or crackling stick should arouse some strange creature in human shape, devil, or god now damned, or woman of the favery. But if such were there, either they were wise and would





not be seen, or kind and had no will to scare the simple maiden; or else maybe there were none such in those days. Anyhow, nought evil came to her out of Evilshaw.

**Chapter VI. Herein is told of Birdalone's raiment.**

**L**ANK and long is Birdalone the sweet, with legs that come forth bare & browned from under her scant grey coat and scantier smock beneath, which was all her raiment save when the time was bitter, and then, forsooth, it was a cloak of goat/skin that eked her attire: for the dame heeded little the clothing of her; nor did Birdalone give so much heed thereto that she cared to risk the anger of her mistress by asking her for aught.

**A**T on a day of this same spring, when the witch-wife was of sweeter temper than her wont was, and the day was very warm and kindly, though it was but one of the last of february days, Birdalone, blushing and shame-faced, craved timidly some more womanly attire. But the dame turned gruffly on her and said: Tush, child! what needeth it? here be no men to behold thee. I shall see to it, that when due

time comes thou shalt be whitened & sleeked to the very utmost. But look thou! thou art a handy wench; take the deer-skin that hangs up yonder and make thee brogues for thy feet, if so thou wilt.

**G**VEN so did Birdalone, and shaped the skin to her feet; but as she was sewing them a fancy came into her head; for she had just come across some threads of silk of divers colours; so she took them and her shoon & her needle up into the wood, & there sat down happily under a great spreading oak which much she haunted, and fell to broidering the kindly deer/skin. And she got to be long about it, & came back to it the next day and the next, and many days, whenso her servitude would suffer it, and yet the shoon were scarce done.

**S**O on a morning the dame looked on her feet as she moved about the chamber, and cried out at her: What! art thou barefoot as an hen yet? Hast thou spoilt the good deer/skin and art yet but shoeless? Nay, our lady, said Birdalone, but the shoon are not altogether done. Show them to me, said the dame.

**B**IRDALONE WENT to her little coffer to fetch them, & brought

**Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity**



them somewhat timorously, for she knew not how her mistress would take her working on them so long, if perchance she would blame her, or it might be chastise her, for even in those days the witch/wife's hand was whiles raised against her. But now when the dame took the shoes and looked on them, & saw how there were oak/leaves done into them, and flowers, and coneyes, and squirrels, she but smiled somewhat grimly on Birdalone, and said: Well, belike thou art a fool to waste thy time & mine in such toys; & to give thee thy due would be to give thee stripes. But thou doest herein after the nature of earthly women, to adorn thy body, whatsoever else is toward. And well is that, since I would have thee a woman so soon as may be; and I will help thy mind for finery, since thou art so deft with thy needle.


**W**HEREWITH she went to the big coffer & drew forth thence a piece of fine green cloth, and another of fine linen, & said to Birdalone: This mayest thou take, and make thee a gown thereof and a new smock, and make them if thou wilt as gay as thy new shoon are gotten to be; & here is wherewithal. And therewith she gave her two handfuls of silken threads & gold,

& said: Now I suppose that I must do the more part of thy work, while thou art making thee these gaudy garments. But maybe someone may be coming this way ere long, who will deem the bird the finer for her fine feathers. Now depart from me; for I would both work for thee and me, and ponder weighty matters.

**S**HE was glad now but Birdalone; she grew red with new pleasure, & knelt down and kissed the witch's hand, & then went her ways to the wood with her precious lading, and wrought there under her oak/tree day after day, and all days, either there, or in the house when the weather was foul. That was in the middle of March, when all birds were singing, and the young leaves showing on the hawthorns, so that there were pale green clouds, as it were, betwixt the great grey boles of oak and sweet/chestnut; and by the lake the meadow/saffron new/thrust/up was opening its blossom; & March wore and April, and still she was at work happily when now it was later May, and the hare/bells were in full bloom down the bent before her.

**A**L this while the witch had meddled little with Birdalone, and had bid-





den her to no work afield or in the stead which was anywise grievous, but had done all her self; yet was she few spoken with her, and would oft behold her gloomily. And one evening when Birdalone came in from the wood, the witch came close up to her and stared her in the face, and said suddenly: Is it in thine heart to flee away from me and leave me?

**A** SHARP pang of fear shot through Birdalone's heart at that word, and she turned very red, and then pale to the lips, but stammered out: No, lady, it is not in mine heart. The dame looked grimly on her and said: If thou try it & fail, thou shalt rue it once only, to wit, life-long; and thou canst but fail. She was silent a while, and then spake in a milder voice: Be content here a while with me, and thereafter thou shalt be more content, and that before long.

**S**HE said no more at that time; but her word clave to Birdalone's heart, and for some time thereafter she was sorely oppressed with a burden of fear, and knew not how to hold herself before the witch-wife. But the days wore, and nought betid, & the maiden's heart grew lighter, & still she wrought on at her gown &

her smock, & it was well nigh done. She had broidered the said gown with roses and lilies, and a tall tree springing up from amidmost the hem of the skirt, and a hart on either side thereof, face to face of each other. And the smock she had sewn daintily at the hems and the bosom with fair knots & buds. It was now past the middle of June, hot and bright weather.

**Chapter VII. Birdalone hath an Adventure in the Wood.**

**O**N a day she went to the wood, and sat down under her oak tree, & it was far & far out of sight of any one standing in the meadow by the lake; and in the wood Birdalone looked to see nought at all save the rabbits and squirrels, who were, forsooth, familiar enough with her, and fearless, so that they would come to her hand and sport with her when she hailed them. Wherefore, as the day was exceeding hot, she put off from her her simpler aiment, that she might feel all the pleasure of the cool shadow & what air was stirring, and the kindness of the green sward upon her very body. So she sat sewing, covered but by a lap of the green gown which her needle was painting.

**Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity**



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

**B**UT as she sat there intent on her work, and her head bent over it, and it was now at the point of high noon, she heard as if some creature were going anigh to her; she heeded it not, deeming that it would be but some wandering hind. But even therewith she heard one say her name in a soft voice, & she leapt up trembling, deeming at first that it would be the witch come to fetch her: but yet more scared she was, when she saw standing before her the shape of a young woman as naked as herself, save that she had an oak-wreath round about her loins.

**T**HE new-comer, who was now close to her, smiled on her, and said in a kind and sweet voice: fear nought, Birdalone, for I deem thou wilt find me a friend, & it is not unlike that thou wilt need one ere long. And furthermore, I will say it, said she smiling, that since I am not afraid of thee, thou needest not be afraid of me. Said Birdalone, she also smiling: True it is that thou art nought fearsome to look on. The new-comer laughed outright, and said: Are we not well met then in the wildwood? and we both as two children whom the earth loveth. So play we at a game. At what game? said Birdalone. Spake she

of the oak-wreath: This; thou shalt tell me what I am like in thine eyes first, because thou wert afraid of me; & then when thou art done, I will tell thee what thou seemest to me.

**Q**UOTH Birdalone: for me that will be hard; for I have nought to liken thee to, whereas save this sight of thee I have seen nought save her that dwelleth in the House by the Water, & whom I serve.

Nay, said the other, then will I begin, & tell thee first what-like thou art, so that thou wilt know the better how to frame thy word concerning me. But tell me, hast thou ever seen thyself in a mirror? What thing is that? said Birdalone. It is a polished round of steel or some other white metal, said the wood-maiden, which giveth back in all truth the image of whatso cometh before it.

**S**AID Birdalone, & reddened therewith: We have at home a broad latten dish, which it is my work, amongst other things, to brighten and keep bright; yet may I not make it so bright that I may see much of mine image therein; and yet. What wouldst thou? said the wood-woman. Said Birdalone: I shall tell thee presently when thy part of the play is done.



**L**AUGHED THE new-comer, and said: It is well; now am I to be thy mirror. Thus it is with thee: thou standest before me a tall & slim maiden, somewhat thin, as befitteth thy seventeen summers; where thy flesh is bare of wont, as thy throat and thine arms & thy legs from the middle down, it is tanned a beautiful colour, but otherwhere it is even as fair a white, wholesome & clean, & as if the golden sunlight, which fulfilleth the promise of the earth, were playing therein. fairer and rounder shall be thine arms and thy shoulders when thou hast seen five more summers, yet scarce more lovesome, so strong and fine as now they are. Low are thy breasts, as is meet for so young a maiden, yet is there no lack in them; nor ever shall they be fairer than now they are. In goodly fashion sits thine head upon thy shoulders, upheld by a long and most well-wrought neck, that the sun hath tanned as aforesaid. The hair of thee is simple brown, yet somewhat more golden than dark; & ah! now thou lettest it loose it waveth softly past thy fair smooth forehead & on to thy shoulders, and is not stayed by thy girdlestead, but hideth nought of thy knees, and thy legs shapely thin, & thy strong

and clean-wrought ankles and feet, which are with thee as full of thine heart and thy soul and as wise & deft as be thy wrists and thine hands, and their very fellows. Now as to thy face: under that smooth forehead is thy nose, which is of measure, neither small nor great, straight, and lovely carven at the nostrils: thine eyes are as grey as a hawk's, but kind and serious, and nothing fierce nor shifting. Nay, now thou lettest thine eyelids fall, it is as fair with thy face as if they were open, so smooth and simple are they & with their long full lashes. But well are thine eyes set in thine head, wide apart, well opened, and so as none shall say thou mayst not look in the face of them. Thy cheeks shall one day be a snare for the unwary, yet are they not fully rounded, as some would have them; but not I, for most pitiful kind are they forsooth. Delicate & clear-made is the little trench that goeth from thy nose to thy lips, and sweet it is, and there is more might in it than in sweet words spoken. Thy lips, they are of the finest fashion, yet rather thin than full; and some would not have it so; but I would, whereas I see therein a sign of thy valiancy and friendliness. Surely he who did thy carven chin had

Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

amind to a master/work & did no less. Great was the deftness of thine imaginer, and he would have all folk that see thee wonder at thy deep thinking and thy carefulness & thy kindness. Ah maiden! is it so that thy thoughts are ever deep and solemn? Yet at least I know it of thee that they be hale and true and sweet.

**M**Y friend, when thou hast a mirror, some of all this shalt thou see, but not all; & when thou hast a lover some deal wilt thou hear, but not all. But now thy she-friend may tell it thee all, if she have eyes to see it, as have I; whereas no man could say so much of thee before the mere love should overtake him, and turn his speech into the folly of love and the madness of desire. So now I have played the play, and told thee of thee; tell me now of me, and play thy play.

**F**OR a while stood Bird-alone silent, blushing & confused, but whiles casting shy glances at her own body, what she might see of it. At last she spake: fair friend, I would do thy will, but I am not deft of speech; for I speak but little, save with the fowl and wild things, and they may not learn me the speech of man. Yet I will say that I wonder to

hear thee call me fair and beautiful; for my dame tells me that never, nor sayeth aught of my aspect save in her anger, and then it is: Rag! and bag! of bones! and when wilt thou be a woman, thou lank elf thou?

**T**he new-comer laughed well-favouredly hereat, & put forth a hand, and stroked her friend's cheek. Bird alone looked piteous kind on her & said: But now I must needs believe thy words, thou who art so kind to me, and withal thyself so beautiful. And I will tell thee that it fills my heart with joy to know that I am fair like to thee. for this moreover I will tell thee, that I have seen nought in field or woodland that is as lovely to me as thou art; nay, not the fritillary nodding at our brook's mouth, nor the willow boughs waving on Green Eyot; nor the wild cat sporting on the little wood-lawn, when she saw me not; nor the white doe rising up from the grass to look to her fawn; nor aught that moves & grows. Yet there is another thing which I must tell thee, to wit, that what thou hast said about the fashion of any part of me, that same, setting aside thy lovely words, which make the tears come into the eyes of me, would I say of thee. Look thou! I take thine hair & lay the



tress amongst mine, and thou mayst not tell which is which; and amidst the soft waves of it thy forehead is nestling smooth as thou saidst of mine: hawk grey and wide apart are thine eyes, and deep thought and all tenderness is in them, as of me thou sayest: fine is thy nose and of due measure; and thy cheeks a little hollow, and somewhat thin thy lovely lips; & thy round chin so goodly carven, as it might not be better done. And of thy body else I will say as thou sayst of mine, though I deem these hands have done more work than thine. But see thou! thy leg and mine as they stand together; and thine arm, as if it were of my body. Slim & slender thou art, or it may be lank; and I deem our dame would call thee also bag of bones. Now is this strange. Who art thou? Art thou my very own sister? I would thou wert.

**S**PAKE then to Birdalone that image of her, and said, smiling kindly on her: As to our likeness, thou hast it now; so alike are we, as if we were cast in one mould. But thy sister of blood I am not; nay, I will tell thee at once that I am not of the children of Adam. As to what I am, that is a long story, and I may not tell it as now; but thou mayst

call me Habundia, as I call thee Birdalone. Now it is true that to everyone I show not myself in this fair shape of thee; but be not aghast thereat, or deem me like unto thy mistress here in, for as now I am, so ever shall I be unto thee.

**Q**UOTH Birdalone, looking on her anxiously: Yea, & I shall see thee again, shall I not? else should I grieve, and wish that I had never seen thee at all. Yea, forsooth, said Habundia, for I myself were most fain to see thee oft. But now must thou presently get thee back home, for evil as now is the mood of thy mistress, & she is rueing the gift of the green gown, & hath in her mind to seek occasion to chastise thee.

**N**OW was Birdalone half weeping, as she did on her raiment while her friend looked on her kindly. She said presently: Habundia, thou seest I am hard bestead; give me some good rede thereto.

**W**HAT will I, said the woodwife. When thou goest home to the house, be glad of countenance, & joyous that thy gown is nigh done; & therewith be exceeding wary. for I deem it most like that she will ask thee what thou hast seen in the wood, and



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

then if thou falter, or thy face change, then she will have an inkling of what hath befallen, to wit, that thou hast seen someone; and then will she be minded to question thy skin. But if thou keep countenance valiantly, then presently will her doubt run off her, and she will cease grudging, and will grow mild with thee & meddle not. This is the first rede, and is for to day; and now for the second, which is for days yet unborn. Thou hast in thy mind to flee away from her; & even so shalt thou do one day, though it may be by way of Weeping Cross; for she is sly and wise and grim, though sooth it is that she hateth thee not utterly. Now thou must note that now wise she hindereth thee from faring in this wood, and that is because she wotteth, as I do, that by this way there is no outgoing for thee. Wherefore look thou to it that it is by the way of the water that thou shalt fare to the land of men-folk. Belike this may seem marvellous to thee; but so it is; and belike I may tell thee more hereof when time serveth. Now cometh the last word of my rede. Maybe if thou come often to the wood, we shall whiles happen on each other; but if thou have occasion for me, & wouldst see me at once,

come hither, and make fire, & burn a hair of my head therein, and I will be with thee: here is for thee a tress of mine hair; now thou art clad, thou mayst take a knife from thy pouch & shear it from off me.

**E**VEN so did Birdalone, and set the tress in her pouch; & therewith they kissed & embraced each other, and Birdalone went her ways home to the house, but Habundia went back into the wood as she had come.

Chapter VIII. Of Birdalone  
and the Witch-wife

**I**T went with Birdalone as Habundia had foretold, for she came home to the house glad of semblance, flushed and light-foot, so that she was lovely and graceful beyond her wont. The dame looked on her doubtfully and grimly a while, and then she said: What ails thee, my servant, that thou lookest so masterful? Nought ails me, lady, said Birdalone, save that I am gay because of the summer season, & chiefly because of thy kindness and thy gift, and that I have well-nigh done my work thereon, & that soon now I shall feel these dainty things beating about my ankles. And she held up and spread abroad the skirt with



hertwo hands, & it was indeed goodly to look on.

**T**HE witch/wife snorted scornfully & scowled on her, and said: Thine ankles forsooth! Bag/o'/bones! thou wisp! forsooth, thou art in love with thy looks, though thou knowest not what like a fair woman is. forsooth, I begin to think that thou wilt never grow into a woman at all, but will abide a skinny'elf thy life long. Belike I did myself wrong to suffer thee to waste these three or four months of thy thrall's work, since for nought but thrall's work shalt thou ever be meet.

**B**IRDALONE hung her head adown, & blushed, but smiled a little, and swayed her body gently, as a willow/bough is swayed when a light air arises in the morning. But the witch stood so scowling on her, & with so sour a look, that Birdalone, glancing at her, found her heart sink so within her, that she scarce kept countenance; yet she lost it not.

**T**HEN SAID the witch sharply: Wert thou in the wood to/day? Yea, lady, said the maiden. Then said the dame fiercely: And what sawest thou? Quoth Birdalone, looking up with an innocent face some-

what scared: Lady, I saw a bear, one of the big ones, crossing a glade. And thou without bow and arrow or woodknife, I warrant me, said the witch. Thou shalt be whipped, to keep thee in mind that thy life is mine and not thine. Nay, nay, I pray thee be not wroth! said the maid; he was a long way down the glade, and would not have followed me if he had seen me: there was no peril therein. Said the witch/wife: Didst thou see aught else? Yea, said Birdalone, and was weeping somewhat now; which forsooth was not hard for her to do, overwrought as she was betwixt hope and fear: yea, I saw my white doe and her fawn, and they passed close by me; and two herons flew over my head toward the water; and. But the witch turned sharply & said: Thrall! hast thou seen a woman to/day in the wood? A woman? said Birdalone, and what woman, my lady, said Birdalone. Hath any woman come to the house, and passed forth into the wood?

**T**HE dame looked on her carefully, and remembered how she had faltered and changed countenance that other day, when she had charged her with being minded to flee; and now she saw her with wondering face, and in no wise

Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

confused or afraid of guilt, as it seemed; so she believed her tale, and being the more at ease thereby, her wrath ran off her, and she spake altogether pleasantly to Birdalone, and said: Now I have had my gird at thee, my servant, I must tell thee that in sooth it is not all for nothing that thou hast had these months of rest; for verily thou hast grown more of a woman thereby, and hast sleekened & rounded much. Albeit, the haysel will wait no longer for us, and the day after tomorrow we must fall to on it. But when that is done, thou shalt be free to do thy green gown, or what thou wilt, till wheat harvest is toward; and thereafter we shall see to it. Or what sayest thou?

**B**IRDALONE wondered somewhat at this so gracious word, but not much; for in her heart now was some guile born to meet the witch's guile; so she knelt down & took the dame's hands and kissed them, and said: I say nought, lady, save that I thank thee over and over again that thou art become so good to me; & that I will full merrily work for thee in the hayfield, or at whatsoever else thou wilt.

**A**ND indeed she was so light-hearted that she had so escaped from the

hand of the witch for that time, & above all, that she had gotten a friend so kind and dear as the woodwoman, that her heart went out even toward her mistress, so that she went nigh to loving her.

Chapter IX. Of Birdalone's swimming

**A**LL fair was the morrow morn, & Birdalone arose betimes before the sun was up, and she thought she would make of this a holiday before the swink afield began again, since the witch was grown good toward her. So she did on her fair shoes, & her new raiment, though the green gown was not fully done, and said to herself that she would consider what she would do with her holiday when she was amidst of her bathing.

**S**O she went down to the waterside, and when she was standing knee-deep in the little sandy bight afore said, she looked over to Green Eyot, and was minded to swim over thither, as oft she did. And it was a windless dawn after a hot night, & a light mist lay upon the face of the water, and above it rose the greenery of the eyot.



**S**HE pushed off into the deep & swam strongly through the still water, and the sun rose while she was on the way, & by then she had laid a hand on the willow/twigs of the eyot, was sending a long beam across the waters; and her wet shoulders rose up into the path of it and were turned into ruddy gold. She hoisted herself up, & climbing the low bank, was standing amongst the meadow/sweet, and dripping on to its fragrance. Then she turned about to the green plain and the house and the hedge of woodland beyond, & sighed, and said softly: A pity of it, to leave it! If it were no better elsewhere, and not so fair?

**W**HEN SHE turned inward to the eyot, which had done her nought but good, and which she loved; & she unbound her hair, and let it fall till the ends of the tresses mingled with the heads of the meadow/sweet, & thereafter walked quietly up into the grassy middle of the isle.

**S**HE was wont to go to a knoll there where the grass was fine, & flowery at this time with white clover and dog violet, and lie down under the shade of a big thorn with a much/twisted bole: but to-day some thought came a-

cross her, & she turned before she came to the thorn, & went straight over the eyot (which was but a furlong over at that place) and down to the southward/looking shore thereof. There she let herself softly down into the water & thrust off without more ado, & swam on and on till she had gone a long way. Then she communed with herself, & found that she was thinking: If I might only swim all the water and be free.

**A**ND still she swam on: & now a light wind had been drawn up from the west, and was driving a little ripple athwart the lake, & she swam the swiftest for it awhile, but then turned over on her back & floated southward still. Till on a sudden, as she lay looking up toward the far/away blue sky, and she so little and low on the face of the waters, and the lake so deep beneath her, & the wind coming ever fresher from the west, and the ripple rising higher against her, a terror fell upon her, and she longed for the green earth and its well/wrought little blossoms & leaves and grass; then she turned over again & swam straight for the eyot, which now was but a little green heap far away before her.



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

**L**ONG she was ere she made land there, and the sun was high in the heavens when she came, all spent & weary, to the shadow of the hawthorn tree; and she cast herself down there & fell asleep straightway. forsooth her swim was about as much as she had might for.

**W**HEN SHE awoke it lacked but an hour of noontide, & she felt the life in her and was happy, but had no will to rise up for a while; for it was a joy to her to turn her head this way & that to the dear and dainty flowers, that made the wide, grey, empty lake seem so far away, and no more to be dealt with than the very sky itself.

**A**T last she arose, and when she had plucked and eaten some handfuls of the strawberries which grew plenteously on the sweet ground of the eyot, she went down to the landward looking shore, and took the water, and swam slowly across the warm ripple till she came once more to the strand and her raiment. She clad herself, and set her hand to her pouch and drew forth bread, and sat eating it on the bank above the smooth sand. Then she looked around, and stood up with her face toward the house, to see if the

dame would call to her. But she saw the witch come out of the porch and stand there looking under the sharp of her hand toward her, & thereafter she went back again into the house without giving any sign. Wherefore Birdalone deemed that she had leave that day, and that she might take yet more holiday; so she stepped lightly down from her place of vantage, turned her face toward the east, & went quietly along the very lip of the water.

Chapter X. Birdalone comes on new tidings.

**S**OON she had covered up the house from her, for on that eastern end, both a tongue of the woodland shoved out west into the meadow, & withal, the whole body of the wood there drew down to the water, and presently cut off all the greensward save a narrow strip along by the lake, off the narrowest whereof lay the rocky eyot aforesaid, nigher unto the shore than lay Green Eyot.

**N**OW never had Birdalone gone so far east as to be over against Rock Eyot. In her childish days the witch had let her know that she might go where she would, but therewith had told her a



tale of a huge serpent which dwelt in the dark wood over against Rock Eyot, whose wont it was to lap his folds round and round living things that went there, and devour them; and many an evil dream had that evil serpent brought to Birdalone. In after days belike she scarce trowed in the tale, yet the terror of it abode with her. Moreover the wild-wood toward that side, as it drew toward the water, was dark and dreary & forbidding, running into black thickets standing amidst quagmires, all unlike to the sweet, clean upland ridges, oak begrown and green-swarded, of the parts which lay toward the north, & which she mostly haunted.

**B**UT this summer day, which was so bright & hot, Birdalone deemed she might harden her heart to try the adventure; & she had a mind to enter the wood thereby, and win her way up into the oakland whereas she had met Habundia, and perchance she might happen on her; for she would not dare to summon her so soon after their first meeting. And if she met her, there would be the holiday worthily brought to an end!

**S**HE went Birdalone, and was soon at the narrowest of the green-

sward, and had the wood black on her left hand, for the trees of it were mostly alder. But when she was come just over against Rock Eyot, she found a straight creek or inlet of the water across her way; and the said creek ran right up into the alder thicket; and, indeed, was much overhung by huge ancient alders, gnarled, riven, mossy, & falling low over the water. But close on the mouth of the creek, on Birdalone's side thereof, lay a thing floating on the dull water, which she knew not how to call a boat, for such had she never seen, nor heard of, but which was indeed a boat, oarless and sailless.

**S**HE looked on it all about, and wondered; yet she saw at once that it was for wending the water, & she thought, might she but have a long pole, she might push it about the shallow parts of the lake, & belike take much fish. She tried to shove it somewhat toward the lake, but with her little might could make nothing of the work; for the craft was heavy, like a barge, if there were nothing else that withstood her.

**B**UT this new thing she hung a long while, wondering that she had never heard thereof, or been set to toil therewith. She not-



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

ed that it was mostly pale grey of hue, as if it had been bleached by sun and water, but at the stem and stern were smears of darker colour, as though some one had been trying the tints of staining there.

**N**OW so much did this new matter take up all her mind, that she thought no more of going up into the wood; but though she had fain abided there long to see what ever might be seen, she deemed it would go ill with her did the witch happen on her there; wherefore she turned about, and went back the way she had come, going very slowly & pondering the tidings. And ever she called to mind what Habundia had said to her, that it was by water she must flee, & wondered if she had sent her this thing that she might escape therein; so different as her going would be thereby to swimming the lake with her wet body. Then again she thought, that before she might let herself hope this, it were best, if she might, to find out from the witch what was the thing, and if she knew thereof. Yet at last she called to mind how little patient of questions was her mistress, and that if she were unheedful she might come to raise an evil storm about her. Wherefore she took this rede

at the last, that she would keep all hidden in her own breast till she should see Habundia again; & meanwhile she might steal down thither from time to time to see if the thing still abode there; which she might the easier do by swimming if she chose her time heedfully, & go thither from Rock Eyot, which now & again she visited.

Chapter XI. Of Birdalone's  
guilt and the chastisement  
thereof.

**B**Y THIS she was come back to the sandy bight, and the sun was westerling; and she looked up toward the house and saw that it was the time of their evening meal, for the blue smoke of the cooking fire was going up into the air. So she went thither speedily, and entered gay of seeming. The witch looked on her doubtfully, but presently fell to speaking with her graciously as yesterday, and Birdalone was glad and easy of mind, & went about the serving of her; for always she ate after the dame; and the mistress asked her of many matters concerning the house, and the gathering of stuff.

**S**O came the talk on the fishing of the brook that ran before their door, &



how the trouts therein were but little, & not seldom none at all; and even therewith came these words into Birdalone's mouth, she scarce knew how: My lady, why do we not fish the lake, whereas there be shoal places betwixt us and the eyots where lie many & great fish, as I have seen when I have been swimming thereover? And now in that same creek whereas the serpent used to lurk when I was little, we have a thing come, which is made to swim on the water; & I, could I have a long pole to shove withal.

**B**UT no time she had to make an end, ere the witch-wife sprang up & turned on her with a snarl as of an evil dog, & her face changed horribly: her teeth showed grinning, her eyes goggled in her head, her brow was all to-furrowed, & her hands clenched like iron springs.

**B**IRDALONE shuddered back from her and cringed in mere terror, but had no might to cry out. The witch hauled her up by the hair, and dragged her head back so that her throat lay bare before her all along. Then drew the witch a sharp knife from her girdle, and raised her hand over her, growling & snarling like a wolf. But suddenly she dropped the knife, her hand

fell to her side, and she fell in a heap on the floor & lay there hushed.

**B**IRDALONE stood gazing on her, & trembling in every limb; too confused was she to think or do aught, though some image of flight through the open door passed before her: but her feet seemed of lead, & as in an evil dream, she had no might to move her limbs, & the minutes went by as she stood there half dead with fear.

**A**T last, (and belike it was no long while) the witch-wife came to herself again, & sat up on the floor, and looked all about the chamber, and when her eyes fell upon Birdalone, she said in a weak voice, yet joyfully: Hah! thou art there still, my good servant! Then she said: A sickness fell upon me suddenly, as whiles it is wont; but now am I myself again; and presently I have a word for thee.

**T**HEREWITH she rose up slowly, Birdalone helping her, and sat in her big chair silent a while, and then she spake: My servant, thou hast for the more part served me well: but this time thou hast done ill, whereas thou hast been spying on my ways; whereof may come heavy trouble but if we look to it.



Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

Well is it for thee that thou hast none unto whom thou mightest babble; for then must I needs have slain thee here and now. But for this first time I pardon thee, & thou hast escaped the wrath.


**H**ER voice was soft and wheedling; but for Birdalone the terror had entered into her soul, and yet abode with her.

**T**HE witch/wife sat a while, and then arose and went about the chamber, and came to a certain aumbry and opened it, and drew forth a little flasket of lead and a golden cup scored over with strange signs, & laid them on the board beside her chair, wherein she now sat down again, and spake once more, still in the same soft and wheedling voice: Yet, my servant, thy guilt would be required of me, if I let this pass as if to day were the same as yesterday; yea, & of thee also would it be required; therefore it is a part of the pardon that thou be corrected: and the correction must be terrible to thee, that thou mayst remember never again to thrust thyself into the jaws of death. And what may I do to correct thee? It shall be in a strange way, such as thou hast never dreamed of. Yet the anguish thereof shall go to thine heart's root; but

this must thou needs bear, for my good & thine, so that both we may live and be merry hereafter. Go now, fill this cup with water from the spring & come back with it. Birdalone took the cup with a sinking heart, & filled it, and brought it back, & stood before the witch more dead than alive.

**W**HEN the witch/wife took up the flasket and pulled out the stopple and be-took it to Birdalone, and said: Drink of this now, a little sip, no more. And the maiden did so, and the liquor was no sooner down her gullet than the witch/wife and the chamber, and all things about her, became somewhat dim to her; but yet not so much so as that she could not see them. But when she stretched out her arm she could see it not at all, nor her limbs nor any other part of her which her eyes might fall upon. Then would she have uttered a lamentable wail, but the voice was sealed up in her and no sound came from her voice. Then she heard the witch/wife how she said (and yet she heard it as if her voice came from afar) Nay, thou canst not speak, & thou canst not see thyself, nor may any other, save me, & I but dimly. But this is but part of what I must lay upon thee; for next





I must give thee a new shape, & that both thyself and all other may see. But, before I do that, I must speak a word to thee, which thy new shape would not suffer the sense thereof to reach to thine heart. Harken!

**Chapter XII. The words of the Witch-wife to Birdalone.**

**W**HEN the witch-wife: When thou comest to thyself (for it is not my will that thou shouldest never have thine own shape again), doubtless the first thing which thou shalt do with thy new-gained voice & thy new-gained wit shall be to curse me, and curse me again. Do as thou wilt herein; but I charge thee, disobey me not, for that shall bring thee to thy bane. For if thou do not my bidding, & if thou pry into my matters, and lay bare that which I will have hidden, then will it be imputed unto thee for guilt, and will I, will I not, I must be avenged on thee even to slaying: & then is undone all the toil and pain I have had in rearing thee into a deft and lovely maiden. Deem thou, then, this present anguish kind to thee, to keep thee that thou come not to nought.

**N**OW since I have begun speaking, I will go on; for little heretofore have

I spoken to thee what was in mine heart. Well I wot that thou thinkest of me but as of an evil dream, whereof none can aught but long to awake from it. Yet I would have thee look to this at least; that I took thee from poverty and pinching, & have reared thee as faithfully as ever mother did to child; clemming thee never, smiting thee not so oft, and but seldom cruelly. Moreover, I have suffered thee to go whereso thou wouldest, and have compelled thee to toil for nought but what was needful for our two livelihoods. And I have not stayed thy swimings in the lake, nor thy wanderings in the wood, & thou hast learned bowshot there, till thou art now a past-master in the craft: and, moreover, thou art swift-foot as the best of the deer, & mayest over-run any one of them whom thou wilt.

**S**OOTHLY a merry life hast thou had as a child, and merry now would be thy life, save for thine hatred of me. Into a lovely lily-lass hast thou grown. That I tell thee now, though my wont has been to gird at thee for the fashion of thy body; that was but the word of the mistress to the thrall. And now what awaiteth thee? for thou mayst say: I am lonely here, & there

**Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity**





Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

is no man to look on me. Of what avail, therefore, is my goodliness and shapeliness? Child, I answer thee that the time is coming when thou shalt see here a many of the fairest of men, and then shalt thou be rather rose than lily, and fully come to womanhood; and all those shall love and worship thee, and thou mayst gladden whom thou wilt, & whom thou wilt mayst sadden; & no lack soever shalt thou have of the sweetness of love, or the glory of dominion.

**T**HINK of it then! All this is for thee if thou dwell here quietly with me, doing my will till thy womanhood hath blossomed. Wherefore I beseech and pray thee put out of thy mind the thought of fleeing from me. for if thou try it, one of two things shall be; either I shall bring thee back and slay thee, or make thee live in misery of torment; or else thou wilt escape, & then what will it be? Dost thou know how it shall go with thee, coming poor & nameless, an outcast, into the world of men? Lust shalt thou draw unto thee, but scarce love. I say an outcast shalt thou be, without worship or dominion; thy body shall be a prey to ribalds, and when the fine flower thereof hath faded, thou shalt find that the

words of thy lovers were but mockery. That no man shall love thee, & no woman aid thee. Then shall Eld come to thee & find thee at home with Hell; and Death shall come & mock thee for thy life cast away for nought, for nought. This is my word to thee: & now I have nought to do to thee save to change thee thy skin, & therein must thou do as thou canst, but it shall be no ugly or evil shape at least. But another time may be I shall not be so kind as to give thee a new shape, but shall let thee wander about seen by none but me. Then she took the cup and took water in the hollow of her hand and cast it into Birdalone's face, & muttered words withal; & presently she saw herself indeed, that she was become a milk-white hind; and she heard and saw again, but not as she, the maiden, was wont to hear and see; for both her hearing & seeing & her thought was of a beast and not of a maiden.

**S**HID the witch-wife: It is done now, till I give thee grace again; and now be off into the field; but if thou stray more than half a bowshot from the brook, it shall be the worse for thee. And now the day was done and night was come.



Chapter XIII. Birdalomeet  
eth the Woodwoman again.

**I**T was fifteen days there  
after that Birdalone a-  
woke lying in her bed on  
a bright morning, as if  
all this had been but a  
dream. But the witch-  
wife was standing over  
her and crying out: Thou art  
late, slug/a/bed, this fair/wea-  
ther day, & the grass all spoil-  
ing for lack of the scythe. Off!  
and down to the meadow with  
thee.

**B**IRDALONE waited  
not for more words,  
but sprang out of bed,  
& had her work/a/day raiment  
on in a twinkling, and stayed  
but to wash her in a pool of the  
brook, & then was amidst the  
tall grass with the swathe fall-  
ing before her. As she worked  
she thought, and could scarce  
tell whether joy at her present  
deliverance, or terror of the  
witch/wife, were the greatest.  
Sore was her longing to go see  
her friend in the wood, but the  
haysell lasted more than a week,  
& when that was done, wheth-  
er it were of set purpose or no,  
the dame forgot her other pro-  
mise, to give Birdalone more  
holiday, and kept her close to  
her work about meadow and  
acre. Otherwise her mistress  
nowise mishandled or threat-  
ened her, though she had gone

back to the surliness & railing  
which was her wont. At last, on  
a morning when the dame had  
bidden her to nought of work,  
Birdalone took her bow in her  
hand and cast her quiver on her  
back, and went her ways into  
the wood, and forgot not the  
tress of Habundia's hair; but  
she had no need to use it, for  
when she was come to the Oak  
of Tryst, straightway came Ha-  
bundia forth from the thicket,  
and now so like to Birdalone  
that it was a wonder, for as her  
friend she bare bow and quiver,  
and green gown trussed up till  
her knees were naked.

**S**O they kissed and em-  
braced, and Birdalone  
wept upon her friend's  
bosom, but was ashamed of  
the words which would have  
told her of her case. Then Ha-  
bundia set her down upon the  
greensward, and sat down be-  
side her, and caressed her and  
soothed her; then she smiled  
on Birdalone, & said: Thy tale  
is partly told without words,  
and I would weep for thee if I  
might shed tears. But thou  
mayest tell me wherefore thou  
didst suffer this; though for-  
sooth I have an inkling there-  
of. Hast thou happened on the  
witch's ferry?

**G**IVEN so it was, sister,  
quoth Birdalone. And  
therewith she plucked

Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity




Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

up heart, & told her all the tale of the vanishing of her body and the skin-changing. And Habundia answered: Well then, there is this to be said, that sooner or later this must have happened, for thereby lieth thy road of escape; wherefore it is better sooner than later. But tell me again: was she fierce & rough in words with thee? for what she said to thee thou hast not yet told me. Said Birdalone: In her first fury, when she was like to have slain me, she had no words, nought but wolfish cries. But thereafter she spake unto me strangely, yet neither fiercely nor roughly; nay, it seemed to me as if almost she loved me. And more than almost she besought me rather than commanded me not to flee from her. And wert thou beguiled by her soft speech? said Habundia. No wise to cast aside my hope of escape, nay, not even in that hour, said Birdalone; but amidst all the confusion and terror somewhat was I moved to compassion on her.

**S**PAKE Habundia, looking anxiously on her: Dost thou deem that thou art somewhat cowed by what she hath done to thee? Said Birdalone, & flushed very red: Oh no, no! Nought save death or bonds shall come

betwixt me & my utmost striving for escape. That is better than well, said Habundia; but again, canst thou have patience a little, and be wary and wise the while? So meseemeth, said the maiden. Said Habundia: Again it is well. Now is the summer beginning to wane, & by my rede thou shalt not try the flight until May is come again and well nigh worn into June; for thou wilt be bigger then, little sister, & tidings are waxing that shall get matters ready for thy departure: moreover, thou must yet learn what thou hast to do meanwhile, and thereof shall I tell thee somewhat as now. For that boat, the thing which thou didst find, and for which thou didst suffer, is called the Sending Boat, and therein thy mistress fareth time and again, I deem to seek to some other of her kind, but I know not unto whom, or whereto. Hast thou noted of her that whiles she goeth away privily by night & cloud? Yea, verily, said Birdalone, and this is one of the things which heretofore hath made me most afraid. Said Habundia: Well now, that she wendeth somewhither in this ferry I wot; but as I wot not whither, so also I know not what she doth with the Sending Boat to make it obey her;





whereas, though I know all things of the wood, I know but little of the lake. Wherefore, though there be peril to thee therein, follow her twice or thrice when she riseth up for this faring, & note closely what is her manner of dealing with the said Sending Boat, so that thou mayst do in like wise. Wilt thou risk the smart & the skin/changing, or even if it were the stroke of the knife, to gather this wisdom? And thereafter thou shalt come hither and tell me how thou hast sped. With a good heart will I, dear sister, said Birdalone.

**W**HEN Habundia kissed her and said: It is a joy to me to see thee so valiant, but herein may I help thee somewhat; here is a gold finger/ring, see thou fashion ed as a serpent holding his tail in his mouth; whenso thou goest on this quest, set thou this same ring on the middle finger of thy left hand, and say thou above thy breath at least:

To left and right,  
Before, behind,  
Of me be sight  
As of the wind!

And nought then shall be seen of thee even by one who standeth close beside. But wear not the ring openly save at such times, or let the witch have

sight thereof ever, or she will know that thou hast met me. Dost thou understand, & canst thou remember?

**L**HUGHED Birdalone, and took the ring and set it on her finger, and spake aloud even as Habundia had given her the words. Then quoth Habundia, laughing: Now have I lost my friend and sister, for thou art gone, Birdalone. Take off the ring, sweetling, & get thee to thine hunting, for if thou come home empty-handed there will be flyting awaiting thee, or worse.

**S**O Birdalone took off the ring & came back to sight again laughing; then the wood/woman kissed her and turned her heels to her, & was gone; but Birdalone strung her bow, and got to her wood/craft, & presently had a brace of hares, wherewith she went back home to the dame; who indeed girded at her for her sloth, and her little catch in so long a while; but there it ended.

**Chapter XIV. Of Birdalone's fishing.**

**W**ere the days wearing toward wheat/harvest, & nought befel to tell of, save that on a morn the witch/wife called Birdalone to her, & said: Now is little to be

**Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity**





done till the wheat is ready for the hook, & thy days are idle; or what is that word that fell from thee that other day, that there be good swims for fish about the eyots? Canst thou swim across bearing thine angle, & back again therewith, and thy catch withal? ¶ Yea, certes, said Birdalone gaily; with one hand I may swim gallantly, or with my legs alone, if I stir mine arms ever so little. I will go straightway if thou wilt, lady; but give me a length of twine so that I may tie my catch about my middle when I swim back again.

**W**HEREWITH she went forth lightly to fetch her angle, which was in a shed without; but just as she took it in her hand, a sudden thought came to her, so wary as she was grown. She undid the bosom of her gown, and took forth her serpent-ring; for she bore it next to her skin, made fast to the bosom of her smock; but now she hid it carefully in the thickest of her brow-hair, which was very thick and soft. Withal the tress of Habundia's hair she bore ever mingled with her own.


**N**O sooner had she done it, but she was glad; for she heard the dame calling her, who, when she came to the house-door, spake & said:

Now shall I fare with thee down to the water, and look to thy garments lest they be fouled by some straying beast. And therewith she looked curiously on Birdalone, and knit her brows when she saw that the maiden changed countenance in nowise.

**D**OWN to the water went they, and the witch sat down close to where Birdalone should take the water, and watched her do off her raiment, and eyed her keenly when she was bare, but said nought. Birdalone turned her head as she stood knee-deep, & said: How long shall I abide, lady, if I have luck? ¶ As long as thou wilt, said the dame: most like I shall be gone by then thou comest back, even if thou be away no long while.

**E**LL Birdalone to swim ming then, & when she was more than half over, the witch, stirring no more than need was, got hold of her raiment, which was but the old grey coat over a smock, & ransacked it, but found nought, as well ye may wot. And when she had done, she sat down again in heavymood as it seemed, & watched Birdalone swimming, and when she beheld her body come forth out of the water, and pass out of sight amongst the flowers of the





eyot, she arose and went her ways home.

**B**IRDALONE looked through the willow-boughs, and saw her turn away; then she fared to her fishing with a smile, & soon had plenteous catch from under the willow-boughs. Then, whereas the day was very calm and fair, & the dame had given her holiday, she wandered about the eyot, and most in a little wood of berry-trees, as quicken and white-beam and dog-wood, and sported with the birds, who feared her not, but came & sat on her shoulders, and crept about her feet. She went also and stood a while on the southern shore, and looked on the wide water dim in the offing under the hot weather haze, and longed to be gone beyond it. Then she turned away, & to the other shore, and gather fish & strung them on the string, and made them fast to her middle, and so took the water back again to the yellow strand, where now was no one awaiting her. But before she did on her garments, she looked on them, and saw that they lay not as she had left them, whereby she knew well that the witch-wife had handled them.

**A**MIDST all this the day was wearing to an end, & again she saw the smoke of the cooking-fire going up into the air from the chimney of the house; & she smiled ruefully, thinking that the witch might yet find an occasion for ransacking her raiment. But she plucked up heart, & came home with her catch, and the dame met her with a glum face, & neither praised her nor blamed her, but took the fish silently. Such ending had that day.

**Chapter XV. Birdalone wear-  
eth her Serpent-ring.**

**A**FTER this she went once and again fishing on to Green Eyot by the bidding of the dame, who went not again to the shore with her. These times she had half a mind to go see the Sending Boat, but durst not, lest the thing itself might have life enough to tell of her.

**A**ND now was come the time of wheat-harvest, & Birdalone must wear her days swinking in the acreland, clad but in smock and shoes; & the toil was hard, and browned her skin & hardened her hands, but it irked her not, for the witch let her work all alone, and it was holiday unto the maiden if her mistress were

**Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity**





not anigh, despite those words which had somewhat touched her heart that other day.

**B**UT when wheat getting was done, there was again rest for her body, & swimming withal and fishing from the eyot by the witch's leave. And again by her own leave she went to seek Habundia in the wood, and spent a happy hour with her, and came back with a fawn which she had shot, and so but barely saved her skin from the twig/shower. Then yet again she went into the wood on the witch's errand as well as her own, and was paid by her friend's sweet converse, and by nought else save the grudging girding of her mistress.

**B**UT on a night when September was well in, and the sky was moonless & overcast, somewhat before midnight the dame came and hung over Birdalone as she lay abed, and watched to see if she waked; forsooth the witch's coming had waked her; but even so she was wary, and lay still, nor changed her breathing. So the witch turned away, but even therewith Birdalone made a shift to get a glimpse of her, and this she saw thereby, that the semblance of her was changed, & that she bore the self/same skin wherewith

she had come to Utterhay, and which she had worn twice or thrice afterwards when she had an errand thither.

**T**HE WITCH now glided swiftly to the door, and out into the night. Birdalone lay still a little, lest she should fall into a trap, and then arose very quietly and did on her smock, which lay ever under her pillow with the ring sewn thereto again, & so went out adoores also, and deemed she saw the witch some way on ahead; but it was nothing for her light feet to overtake her. So she stayed to take the ring from her smock, and set it on her finger; then in a low voice she said:

To left and right,  
Before, behind,  
Of me be sight  
As of the wind!

Then boldly she sped on, and was soon close on the heels of the witch, who made her way to the edge of the lake, & then turned east, and went even as Birdalone had gone when she came across the Sending Boat.

**S**O fared the witch/wife straight to the creek-side, & Birdalone must needs stick close to her, or she had known nought, so black was the night amongst the alder/boughs. But the witch-



wife fumbled about a while when she was stayed by the creek, & presently drew somewhat from under her cloak, & the maiden saw that she was about striking flint upon steel, & quaked somewhat, lest her charm had played her false. Presently the tinder quickened, and the dame had lighted a lantern, which she held up, peering all about; and full she looked on the place whereas was Birdalone, and made no show of seeing her, though well-nigh the maiden looked for it to see her drop the lantern and spring on her.

**N**OW the witch, holding the lantern aloft, steps over the gunwale of the boat, and sits down on the thwart; and it was a near thing but that Birdalone followed her into the boat, but she feared the getting forth again, so she but hung over it as close as she might. Then she saw the witch draw out of her girdle that sharp little knife which Birdalone had seen raised against her own throat; & then the witch bared her arm, and pricked it till the blood sprang from that barren white skin; thereat she stood up, and went to the bows of the craft and hung over them, and drew her arm to and fro over the stem to bloody it; and went thereafter

d 2

to the stern, and took blood into her right hand and passed it over the place of the steerage (for there was no rudder), and came back and sat down on the thwart again; & so far as Birdalone might see, busied herself in staunching the little wound on her arm. Then deemed Birdalone that she knew what manner of paint was that which had made the rusty smears which she had seen on the boat by daylight.

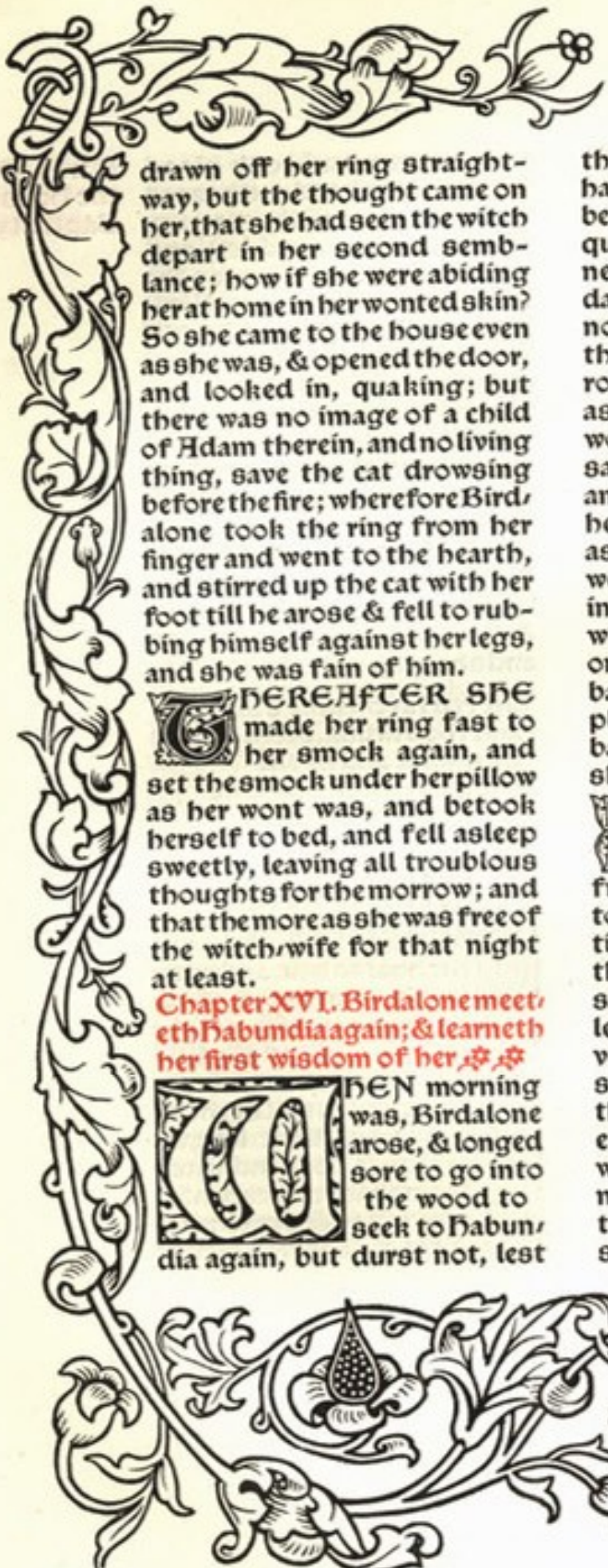
**B**UT now as the witch sat there, a harsh voice began to stir in her throat, & then words came out of her, and she sang in a crow's croak:

The red raven/wine now  
Hast thou drunk, stern & bow;  
Then wake and awake  
And the wonted way take!  
The way of the Wender  
forth over the flood,  
for the will of the Sender  
is blent with the blood.

**T**HEREWITHAL began the boat to stir, and anon it glided forth out of the creek into the waters of the lake, and the light of the lantern died, & it was but a minute ere Birdalone lost all sight of it. She abode a little longer, lest perchance boat and witch might come back on her hands, and then turned & went swiftly back again. She would have

35





drawn off her ring straightway, but the thought came on her, that she had seen the witch depart in her second semblance; how if she were abiding her at home in her wonted skin? So she came to the house even as she was, & opened the door, and looked in, quaking; but there was no image of a child of Adam therein, and no living thing, save the cat drowsing before the fire; wherefore Birdalone took the ring from her finger and went to the hearth, and stirred up the cat with her foot till he arose & fell to rubbing himself against her legs, and she was fain of him.

**T**HEREAFTER SHE made her ring fast to her smock again, and set the smock under her pillow as her wont was, and betook herself to bed, and fell asleep sweetly, leaving all troublous thoughts for the morrow; and that the more as she was free of the witch/wife for that night at least.

**Chapter XVI. Birdalone meeteth Habundia again; & learneth her first wisdom of her.**

**W**HEN morning was, Birdalone arose, & longed sore to go into the wood to seek to Habundia again, but durst not, lest

the witch/wife should come to hand again earlier than might be looked for. So she abode quiet and did what was toward near about the house. All that day the witch came not back, nor the next; but the morrow thereafter, when Birdalone arose, she found the wonted aspect of her mistress in the wonted place, who, when she saw the maiden, greeted her, and was somewhat blithe with her; and Birdalone would have asked her leave to go to the wood, but she trusted little in her unwonted soft mood; which yet lasted so long that on the third day she herself bade Birdalone go take her pleasure in the wood, and bear back with her what of venison she might.

**F**ORTHWITH went Birdalone as glad as might be, and met her friend at the Oak of Tryst, & told her closely how all had be-tid; and Habundia said: Here, then, thou hast learned how to sail the lake. But hast thou learned enough to try the adventure & not to fail? Even so I deem, said Birdalone; but this I would say, that meseemeth it better that I follow the witch down to the boat one more time at least; for this first time it was dark; and moreover shall I not be surer of the spell



if I hear it said oftener, lest it be not ever the same words? What sayest thou? She said: Thou art right herein, & since the adventure may not be tried till next June is at hand, there is time enough and to spare. And now for this hour that is we need talk no more of it. Only, my sweet, I beseech thee be wary; and above all suffer not the witch/wife to set eye or hand on the ring. Truly mine heart oft aches sorely for thy peril; for therein the image of thee abideth rather as of my daughter than my friend. Yea, now thou laughest, but kindly, so that the sound of thy laughter is as sweet music. But know that though thou art but a young maiden, and I in all wise like unto thee of aspect, yet have I dwelt many and many a year upon the earth, and much wisdom have learned. Trowest thou me?

**Y**EA, yea, said Birdalone, with all my heart. Then she hung her head a while and kept silence, & thereafter looked up and spake: I would ask thee a thing & crave somewhat of thee, as if thou wert verily my mother; wilt thou grant it me? Yea, surely, child, said Habundia. Said Birdalone: This it is then, that thou wilt learn me of thy wisdom. Habundia smiled full

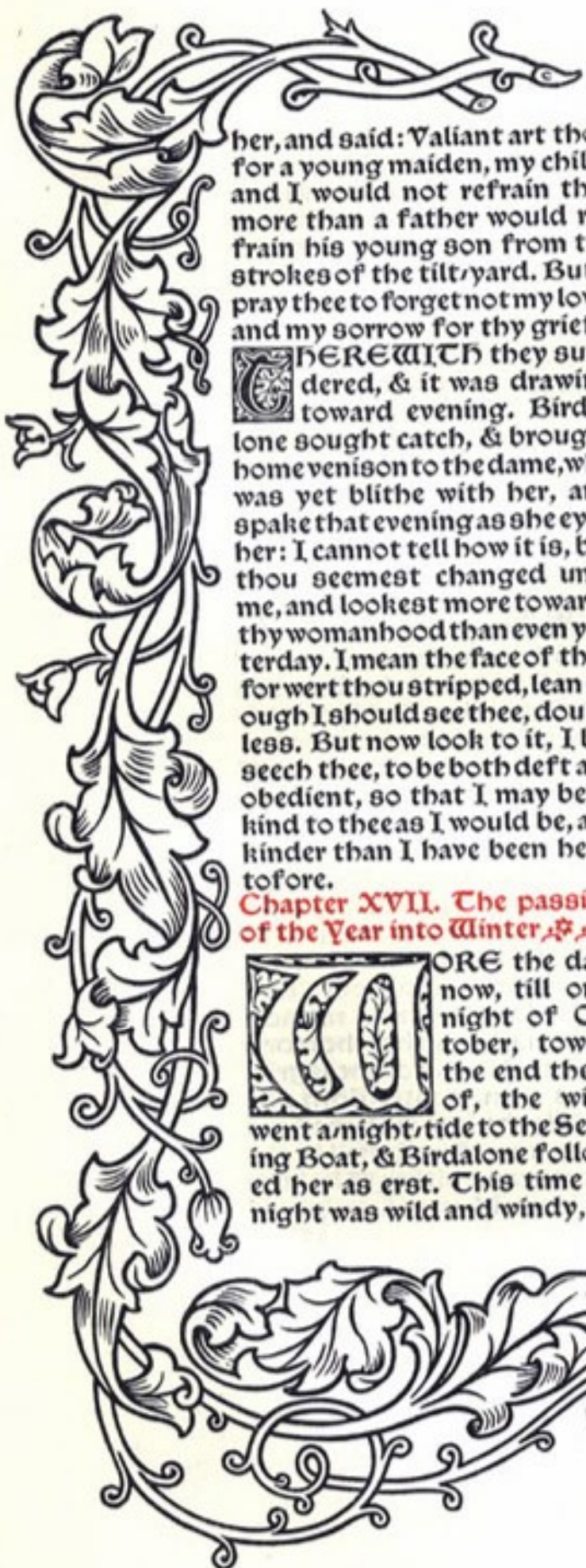
d 3

kindly on her, and said: This of all things I would have had thee ask; and this day and now shall we begin to open the book of the earth before thee. for therein is mine heritage & my dominion. Sit by me, child, & hearken!

**S**O the maiden sat down by her likeness under the oak, and began to learn her lesson. forsooth for gotten is the wisdom, though the tale of its learning abideth, wherefore nought may we tell thereof.

**W**HEN it was done, Birdalone kissed her wood/mother & said: This is now the best day of my life, this and the day when first I saw thee. I will come hither now many times before the day of my departure. Yea, but, sweet child, said Habundia, beware of the witch & her cruelty; I fear me she shall yet be grim toward thee. So will I be wary, said Birdalone, but I will venture some little peril of pain but if thou forbid me, mother. And I pray thee by thy love to forbid me not. And this I pray thee the more, because after one of these grim times then mostly doth she meddle the less with me for a while, wherefore I shall be the freer to come hither. Habundia kissed her and embraced





her, and said: Valiant art thou for a young maiden, my child, and I would not refrain thee more than a father would refrain his young son from the strokes of the tilt-yard. But I pray thee to forget not my love, and my sorrow for thy grief.

**HEREWITH** they sun-  
dered, & it was drawing  
toward evening. Birda-  
lone sought catch, & brought  
home venison to the dame, who  
was yet blithe with her, and  
spake that evening as she eyed  
her: I cannot tell how it is, but  
thou seemest changed unto  
me, and lookest more towards  
thy womanhood than even yes-  
terday. I mean the face of thee,  
for wert thou stripped, lean en-  
ough I should see thee, doubt-  
less. But now look to it, I be-  
seech thee, to be both deft and  
obedient, so that I may be as  
kind to thee as I would be, and  
kinder than I have been here-  
tofore.


**Chapter XVII. The passing  
of the Year into Winter.**

**MORE** the days  
now, till on a  
night of Oc-  
tober, toward  
the end there-  
of, the witch  
went a night/tide to the Send-  
ing Boat, & Birdalone follow-  
ed her as erst. This time the  
night was wild and windy, but

the moon was high aloft and  
big, and all cloud save a few  
flecks was blown from off the  
heavens; so that the night was  
as light as could be; and even  
at the tree/hung creek it was  
easy to see all that was done.  
And so it was that the witch  
did & spake in all wise as she  
did before.

**ANOTHER** time, when  
November was well nigh  
out, the dame arose for  
her lake/faring; but this night  
the snow lay deep betwixt  
house and water, and Bird-  
alone thought that it would  
scarce do to follow. forsooth  
she knew not whether her feet  
would the less leave their print  
in the snow because they were  
not to be seen. When she  
asked Habundia thereof, she  
laughed and said: Once more  
thou hast been wise, my child,  
for though it had been no  
harder to put this might into  
thy ring, that whoso wore it  
should not touch the ground,  
yet it hath not been done.

**IT MUST** be told, that  
in this while Birdalone  
went oft to the Tryst-  
ing Tree, and called on her  
mother (as now she called her)  
to come to her, and ever more  
and more of wisdom she won  
thereby. Though the witch  
was oft surly with her, and  
spared not her girding, yet,






the needful work done, she meddled little with her. But on a day she straightly banned her the wood, and Birdalone went notwithstanding, and when she was there with the woodmother nought she told her thereof, but was blithe and merry beyond her wont. She came back home thereafter empty handed, & stepped into the chamber proudly and with bright eyes & flushed cheeks, though she looked for nought save chastisement; yea, it might be even the skin changing. forsooth the witch was sitting crouched in her chair with her hands on the elbows & her head thrust forward, like a wild beast at point to spring; but when her eye fell on Birdalone, she faltered and drew back into herself again, and muttered somewhat unheard; but to Birdalone spake nought of good or bad.

**N**OW WAS winter tide upon them, when there was nought to do in field and acre, and but a little in the byre. In years bygone, and even in the last one, the witch had not spared Birdalone toil any the more, but had made errands for her amidst the snow and biting winds, or over the lake when it was laid with ice. But now she bade her to nought save what she had

a will to; whereby she lost but little, whereas Birdalone was well willing to strive against wind & weather & the roughness of the winter earth, and overcome if she might, so that all were well done that had to be done about the stead.

**S**TILL did the witch give her hard words and rail at her for the most part, but from the teeth outward only, & because she was wont thereto. Inwardly indeed she began to fear Birdalone, and deemed that she would one day have the mastery; & this led her into fierce and restless moods; so that she would sit staring at the maiden's beauty handling her knife withal, and scarce able to forbear her. And in such a mood she once made occasion to chastise her as her wont had been erst, & looked to see Birdalone rebel against her; but it fell out otherwise, for Birdalone submitted herself to her meekly and with a cheerful countenance. And this also was a terror to the witch, who deemed, as indeed it was, that the purpose was growing in her thrall. So from that time she meddled with her no more. All this while, as may be thought, Birdalone went yet oftener to the Oak of Tryst, despite frost and snow and wind, and gat much lore of







her wood/mother, and learned wisdom abundantly. And her days were happy.


**Chapter XVIII. Of Spring-tide and the Mind of Birdalone.**

**N**OW was the winter gone and the spring/tide come again, and with the blossoming of the earth blossomed Birdalone also. Nought sweeter of flesh might she be than erst, but there was now a new majesty grown into her beauty; her limbs were rounded, her body fulfilled, her skin sleeked and whitened; and if any mother's son had beheld her feet as they trod the meadow besprinkled with saffron and daffodil, ill had it gone with him were he gainsaid the kisses of them, though for the kissing had he fared the worse belike.

**W**HAT spring/tide, amidst of April, she followed the witch/wife down to the Sending Boat for the third time; & there went everything as erst, and she deemed now that the lesson was well learned, and that she was well/nigh as wise as the witch herself therein.

**B**UT the day after she went about somewhat pensive, as though a

troublesome thought were on her; & when, three days there/after, she met the wood/mother, she spake to her even as they parted, & said: Mother, much wisdom hast thou learned me, and now this at the last withal, that hitherto there has been shame in my life; & now fain were I to be done with it.  fair child, said Habundia, little is the shame though this woman hath had the upper hand of thee & hath used thee cruelly: how mightest thou, a child, strive with her? But now I see and know that there is an end of that; that she feareth thee now, and will never again raise a hand against thee save thou fall wholly into her power; as thou shalt not, my child. Be comforted then for what is gone by!  Nay, mother, said Birdalone, it is not that which troubleth me; for, as thou sayest, what else might I do? But thy wisdom which thou hast set in my heart hath learned me that for these last months I have been meeting guile with guile and lies with lies. And now will I do so no more, lest I become a guileful woman, with nought good in me save the fairness of my body. Wherefore hearken, sweet mother! What is done, is done; but when it cometh to the day, which is speed-







ily drawing nigh, that I must part from thee, it may be for a long while, then will I not fare to the Sending Boat by night and cloud & with hidden head, but will walk thither in broad day, and let that befall which must befall.

**C**HANGED THEN Fabundia's face and became haggard and woe-ful, and she cried out: O if I could but weep, as ye children of Adam! O my grief and sorrow! Child, child! then will be-tide that falling into her hands which I spake of e'en now; and then shall this wretch, this servant of evil, assuredly slay thee there & then, or will keep thee to torment thee till thy life be but a slow death. Nay, nay, do as I should do, and fare with hidden head, and my ring on thy finger. Or else, O child, how wilt thou hurt me!

**B**IRDALONE wept; but presently she fell to caressing the mother's hand, & said: This is thy doing, wherein thou hast made me wise. Yet fear not; for I deem that the witch/wife will not slay me, whereas she look-eth to have some gain of me; moreover, in the evil of her heart is mingled some love toward me, whereof, as erst I told thee, I have a morsel of compassion. Mother, she will

not slay me; and I say that she shall not torment me, for I will compel her to slay me else. It is my mind that she will let me go. Said the mother: Yea, may happen, yet but as a bird with a string to its leg. If it be so, said Bird-alone, then let my luck prevail over her guile; as well it may be, since I have known thee, O wise mother!

**T**HE wood/wife hung her head & spake nought for a while; then she said: I see that thou wilt have it so, and that there is something in thine heart which we, who are not children of Adam, may not understand; yet once wert thou more like unto us. Now all I may say is, that thou must rule in this matter, and that I am sad.

**T**HEN she looked down again & presently raised a brighter face, and said: Belike all shall be better than I thought. Then she kissed Birdalone and they parted for that time.

**Chapter XIX. They bid fare-  
well, Birdalone and the Wood-  
mother.**

**W**HEN APRIL was gone, and May was come with the thorn a-blos-soming, & there was Birdalone

**Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity**





Part I. Of  
the House of  
Captivity

waxing still in loveliness. And now the witch had left all girding at her even, and spake to her but little, save when she needs must. But to Birdalone it seemed that she watched her exceeding closely.

**B**IRDALONE went oft to the wood, & learned yet more of lore: but of the matter of the Departure, how it was to be gone about they spake no more, and great was the love betwixt them.

**A**T last when May was worn night to June came Birdalone to the Oak of Tryst, and found the wood-mother there; & when they had talked awhile, but ever from the teeth out, spake Habundia: Though thou be now the wiser of us two maybe, yet have I wisdom to wot that this is the hour of our sundering, & that to-morrow thou wilt try the adventure of the Sending Boat: is it not so? Yea, mother, said Birdalone; I bid thee farewell now: woe is me therefore! Said Habundia: And thou wilt deliver thyself into the hands of the witch, wilt thou, as thou saidst that other day? Quoth Birdalone: Is it not wisdom, dear mother, if I trust in my goodhap? Alas, said the mother, it may be so when all is said. But O my sad heart! and how I fear for thee!

**M**Y mother, my mother! said Birdalone, that I should make the days grievous unto thee! and thou who hast made my days so joyous! But now canst thou not say of thy wisdom that we shall meet again?

**T**HE wood-woman sat down, and let her head fall over her knees, and was silent a long while; then she rose up and stood before Birdalone, and said: Yea, we shall meet again, howsoever it maybe. Let us depart with that sweet word in the air between us. Yet first thou shalt give me a tress of thine hair, as I did to thee when first we met; for by means of it may I know to-morrow how thou hast sped.

**E**VEN so did Birdalone, and this was the end of their talk, save broken words of lamentation as they said farewell. And therewith for that while they sundered.

Chapter XX. Of Birdalone & the Sending Boat.

**B**IRDALONE woke up in the morning, & arose and clad herself, and she saw not the witch-wife in the chamber, though her bed looked as if it had been slept in. Birdalone accounted little thereof, whereas the dame



would oft go on one errand or another much betimes in the morning. Yet was she somewhat glad, for she was nowise wishful for a wrangle with her. Withal, despite her valiancy, as may well be thought, she was all a flutter with hopes & fears, and must needs refrain her body from overmuch quaking and restlessness if she might.

**N**Ow she mingled the tress of the wood / mother's hair with her own hair, but deemed it nought perilous to leave the ring yet sewn to her smock: she set some deal of bread & flesh in her scrip, lest her voyage should be long, and then all simply stepped over the threshold of the House of her Captivity.

**S**HE went straight to the strand aforesaid, seeing nought of the witch-wife by the way; and when she came there, was about to turn straightway to her left hand down to the creek, when it came into her mind that she would first swim over to Green Eyot for this last of times. for the eyot indeed she loved, & deemed it her own, since never had her evil dream, the witch, set foot thereon. Moreover, she said to herself that the cool lake would allay the fever of her blood, and make her flesh firmer and less timorous for

the adventure. And again, that if the witch should see her from afar, as she could scarce fail to do, she would deem the maiden was about her wonted morning swimming, & would be the less like to spy on her.

**S**O now, when she had let her garments slip from off her on to the sand close to the water's edge, she stood a while, with her feet scarce covered by the little ripple of the bight, to be a token of safety to her mistress. To say sooth, now it was come so nigh to the deed, she shrank aback a little, and was fain to dally with the time, and, if it might be, thrust something of no import betwixt her and the terror of the last moment.

**N**Ow she took the water, & rowed strongly with her lovely limbs till she came to the eyot, and there she went aland, and visited every place which had been kind to her; and kissed the trees and flowers that had solaced her, and once more drew the birds and rabbits to sport with her; till suddenly it came into her head that the time was wearing overfast. Then she ran down to the water and plunged in, and swam over to the strand as fast as she might, & came aland there, thinking of nothing less than what had befallen.



**F**OR lo! when she looked around for her raiment and her scrip, it was nowhere to be seen; straightway then it came into her mind, as in one flash, that this was the witch's work; that she had divined this deed of the flight, and had watched her, & taken the occasion of her nakedness and absence that she might draw her back to the House of Captivity. And this the more as the precious ring was sewn to Birdalone's smock, and the witch would have found it there when she handled the raiment.

**B**IRDALONE wasted no time in seeking for the lost; she looked down on to the smooth sand, and saw there footprints which were not her own, & all those went straight back home to the house. Then she turned, & for one moment of time looked up toward the house, and saw plainly the witch come out a-doors, & the sun flashed from something bright in her hand.

**W**HEN indeed she made no stay, but set off running at her swiftest along the water-side toward the creek & the Sending Boat. As is afore-said she was as fleet-foot as a deer, so but in a little space of time she had come to the creek, and leapt into the boat, panting & breathless. She turned

and looked hastily along the path her feet had just worn, & deemed she saw a fluttering and flashing coming along it, but some way off; yet was not sure, for her eyes were dizzy with the swiftness of her flight and the hot sun & the hurry of her heart. Then she looked about a moment confusedly, for she called to mind that in her nakedness she had neither knife, nor scissors, nor bodkin to let her blood withal. But even therewith close to hand she saw hanging down a stem of half-dead briar-rose with big thorns upon it; she hastily tore off a length thereof and scratched her left arm till the blood flowed, & stepped lightly first to stem and then to stern & besmeared them therewith. Then she sat down on the thwart and cried aloud:

The red raven/wine now  
Hast thou drunk, stern & bow;  
Then wake and awake  
And the wonted way take!  
The way of the Wender  
forth over the flood,  
for the will of the Sender  
is blent with the blood.

**S**CARCE had she time to wonder if the boat would obey her spell ere it began to stir beneath her, & then glided out into the lake & took its way over the summer ripple,



going betwixt Green Eyot and the mainland, as if to weather the western ness of the eyot: & it went not a stone cast from the shore of the said mainland.

**N**ITHER to meet it now cometh the witch, running along the bank, her skirts flying wild about her, & a heavy short sword gleaming in her hand. Her furious running she stayed over against the boat, & cried out in a voice broken for lack of breath:

Back over the flood  
To the house by the wood!  
Back unto thy rest  
In the alder nest!  
for the blood of the Sender  
lies warm on thy bow,  
And the heart of the Wender  
is weary as now.

**B**UT she saw that the Sending Boat heeded her words nothing, whereas it was not her blood that had awakened it, but Birdalone's. Then cried out the witch: O child, child! say the spell and come back to me! to me, who have reared thee and loved thee and hoped in thee! O come back!

BUT how should Birda-

Here ends the first Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the House of Captivity. And now begins the Second Part, which is called Of the Wondrous Isles. ❀❀

lone heed her prayer? She saw the sax; & withal had her heart forgotten, her flesh might well remember. She sat still, nor so much as turned her head toward the witch-wife.

**W**HEN CAME wild yelling words from the witch's mouth, and she cried: Go then, naked and outcast! Go then, naked fool! & come back hither after thou hast been under the hands of the pitiless! Ah, it had been better for thee had I slain thee! And there with she whirled the sax over her head & cast it at Birdalone. But now had the boat turned its head toward the ness of Green Eyot and was swiftly departing, so that Birdalone but half heard the last words of the witch-wife, and the sax fell flashing into the water far astern.

**T**HERE the witch stood tossing her arms and screaming, wordless; but no more of her saw Birdalone, for the boat came round about the ness of Green Eyot, and there lay the Great Water under the summer heavens all wide and landless before her. And it was now noon of day.



THE WATER OF THE WONDROUS ISLES  
THE SECOND PART: OF THE WONDROUS ISLES.

Chapter I. The first Isle. ❧ ❧



GLIDED BIRDALONE  
over the lake & was come forth  
from the House of Captivity;  
it might well be that she was  
but swimming unto death; na-  
ked as she was, fireless, food-  
less, and helpless, at the mercy  
of mere sorcery. Yet she called  
to mind the word of the wood-  
mother that they should meet  
again, and took heart thereby;  
& she was glad in that she had  
had her will, & shaken off the  
guile & thralldom of the witch.  
Much she thought of the wood-  
mother, and loved her, & won-  
dered had she yet sought into  
& seen her welfare by the burn-  
ing of a hair of that tress of  
hers; & therewith she looked  
on that tress of Habundia's  
hair and kissed it.

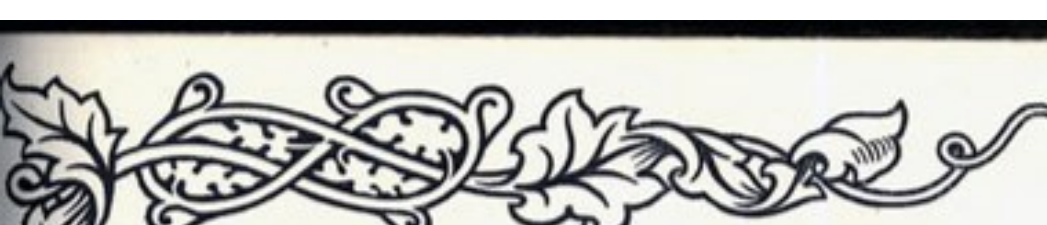
❧ ALL day the Sending Boat  
sped on, and she saw no land

& nought to tell of. It was but  
wave and sky and the familiar  
fowl of the lake, as coot, and  
mallard, & heron, and now and  
then a swift wood/dove going  
her ways from shore to shore;  
two gerfalcons she saw also,  
an osprey, & a great ern on his  
errand high up aloft.

BIRDALONE waked in  
her loneliness till the  
day was spent, & some-  
what worn of the night; then  
she fell asleep for weariness;  
but so it was, that before dusk  
she had deemed that a blue  
cloud lay before her in the of-  
fing which moved not.

SHE slept the short night  
through, and was awak-  
ened by the boat smiting  
against something, and when  
her eyes opened she saw that  
she was come aland & that the  
sun was just risen. She stood  
up, & for the first minute won-  
dered where she was, and she  
beheld her nakedness & knew  
not what it meant; then she  
loosened her hair, and shook  
its abundance all about her, &  
thereafter she turned her eyes  
on this new land and saw that  
it was fair and goodly. ❧ The  
flowery grass came down to the  
very water, and first was a fair  
meadow/land besprinkled with  
big ancient trees; thence arose  
slopes of vineyard, and orch-





ard and garden; and, looking down on all, was a great White House, carven and glorious. A little air of wind had awakened with the sunrise, and bore the garden sweetness down to her; & warm it was after the chill of the wide water. No other land could she see when she looked lakeward thence.

**S**HE stepped ashore, & stood ankle-deep in the sweet grass, & looked about her for a while, and saw no shape of man astir. She was yet weary, and stiff with abiding so long amongst the hard ribs of the boat, so she laid herself down on the grass, and its softness solaced her; and presently she fell asleep again.

**Chapter II. Birdalone falleth in with new friends.**

**W**HEN SHE next awoke, the sun was not yet high, and the morning young, yet she stood upon her feet much refreshed by that short slumber. She turned toward the hill & the gay house, & saw one coming over the meadow to her, a woman to wit, in a shining golden gown, and as she drew nigh Birdalone could see that she was young & fair, tall, white-skinned and hazel-eyed, with long red hair dancing all about her as she trip-

ped lightly & merrily over the greensward.

**N**OW SHE comes up to Birdalone with wonder in her eyes, and greets her kindly, & asked her of her name, and Birdalone told it all simply; & the new-comer said: What errand hast thou hither, that thou art come thus naked and alone in this ill-omened ferry? Birdalone trembled at her words, though she spake kindly to her, and she said: It is a long story, but fate drave me thereto, and misery, and I knew not whither I was bound. But is there no welcome for me in this lovely land? I lack not deftness wholly; & I will be a servant of servants, and ask no better if it must be so.

Said the new-comer: Unto that mayst thou come; but sore will be thy servitude. I fear me thy welcome here may be but evil. Said Birdalone: Wilt thou not tell me how so?

Quoth that lady: We know thy ferry here, that it is the craft wherein cometh hither now & again the sister of our lady the Queen, into whose realm thou art now come, and who liveth up in the white palace yonder, & whom we serve. And meseems thou wilt not have come hither by her leave, or thou wouldst be in other guise than this; so that belike

**Part II. Of the Wondrous Isles**



thou wilt be the runaway of thy mistress. Wherefore I fear that thou wilt be sent back to thy said mistress after a while, and that that while will be grievous to thee, body and soul.

**B**IRDALONE'S heart sank, and she was pale and trembling; but she said: O dear lady, might I then depart as I have come hither, without the wotting of this Queen? after thou hast given me a morsel of bread, for I am hungry. Said the gold-clad one, looking on her pitifully: Nay, maiden, I cannot choose but bring thee before our mistress, whereas most like she hath already seen thee from above there, for she is far-sighted beyond the wont of folk who be more manlike. But as for the bread, see thou! I have brought a manchet in my pouch, and cheese withal, as I came hurrying; for I thought, she will be hungry. And she reached the victual out to her. And Birdalone took it & kissed the golden lady's hands, & she might not refrain her tears, but wept as she ate.

**W**HILE the golden lady spake unto her & said: Nevertheless, thou poor maiden, somewhat may be done for thine helping, and I will presently

speake to my sisters thereon, who are, both of them, wiser than I. Sisters by blood are we not, but by love and fellowship. And I doubt not but that as we go up into the house we shall happen upon them in the garden. But now I look upon thee, how fair a woman art thou!

**T**HOU art kind & friendly, said Birdalone, smiling amidst of her tears; might I know by what name to call so dear a woman? Thou shalt call me Hurea, said the other; and my next sister is Viridis, & the third Htra; for that is according to the hues of our raiment, and other names we have not now. And lo! here cometh Viridis over the meadow.

**B**IRDALONE looked, & saw a woman coming toward them clad all in green, with a rose-wreath on her head. And she drew nigh, and greeted Birdalone kindly, and she also was a very beautiful woman; not great of body, whereas Hurea was tall and big-made, though excellently shapen. Light brown & goodly waved of hair was Viridis, her eyes brown, and rather long than great; her lips full and ruddy, her cheeks soft & sweet & smooth, and as rosy-tinted pearl; her hands small



and delicate of fashion; her whole body soft/shapen as an egg; a kind, wheedling look her face bore.

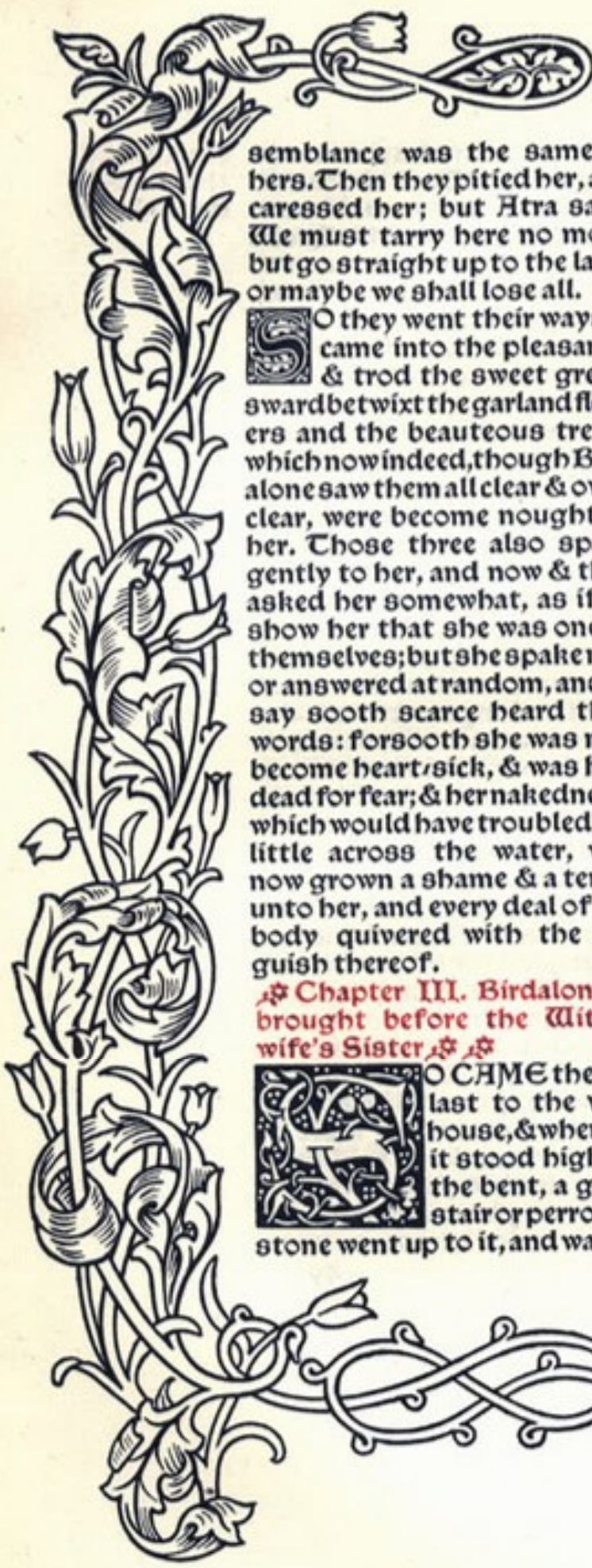
**W**HEN she had looked a while on Birdalone, she kissed her, and said: I would thou wert happier, for thou art beauteous, and all but the evil must love thee. Therewith she drew a cate from her pouch, and said: Eat somewhat, for thou wilt be hungry; and let us go meet our other sister, who is wiser than we.

**S**O THEY went, all three of them, and came from off the meadow on to the garden/slopes, and at the entry thereof was come Atra to meet them; she was clad all in black, a tall, slim woman, with the grace of the willow/bough in the wind, with dark plentiful hair & grey hawk/eyes; her skin privet/white, with but little red in her cheeks. She also greeted Birdalone kindly, but sadly withal. She gave her strawberries to eat laid on a big kale/blade; and she said: Sisters, here are we hidden by the trees, and cannot be seen from the house; therefore we may sit here for a minute or two, while we talk together as to what may perchance be done for the helping of this unhappy maiden, who is so fair and

lovely, & hath strayed into so ugly a trap. Then she said to Birdalone: Thou must know, poor wanderer, that this Queen, our mistress, who is sister to the Witch Under the Wood, is big and strong, well/made, & white/skinned, so that she deems herself a Queen of all beauty: keen/eyed is she to see a fly where others would see nought smaller than a coney; fine/eared withal; wise in wizardry; not altogether dull/witted, though she be proud, and crueller than the cruellest. But herein she faileth, that her memory is of the shortest for matters of the passing hour, albeit she remembers her spells & witch/songs over well. But other matters will scarce abide in her head for four and twenty hours. Wherefore, sisters, if we may keep this maiden out of her sight (after she hath seen her and given doom upon her) till the dead of to/morrow night, we may perchance do some good for her; and it is in my mind that then she may do good for us also.

**N**OW they rejoiced in this word of Atra the wise; & Atra prayed Birdalone to tell them somewhat more of her story; and she told them much; but, whyso it were, she said nought concerning the wood/wife, whose outward





semblance was the same as hers. Then they pitied her, and caressed her; but Atra said: We must tarry here no more, but go straight up to the lady, or maybe we shall lose all.

**S**O they went their ways & came into the pleasance, & trod the sweet green sward betwixt the garland flowers and the beauteous trees; which now indeed, though Birdalone saw them all clear & overclear, were become nought to her. Those three also spake gently to her, and now & then asked her somewhat, as if to show her that she was one of themselves; but she spake not, or answered at random, and to say sooth scarce heard their words: forsooth she was now become heart-sick, & was half dead for fear; & her nakedness, which would have troubled her little across the water, was now grown a shame & a terror unto her, and every deal of her body quivered with the anguish thereof.

**Chapter III. Birdalone is brought before the Witch-wife's Sister.**

**S**O CAME they at last to the very house, & whereas it stood high on the bent, a great stair or perron of stone went up to it, and was of

much majesty. They went through the porch, which was pillared and lovely, & came into a great hall most nobly builded, and at the other end thereof, on a golden throne raised upon a dais, sat a big woman clad in red scarlet. The three damsels led Birdalone to some four paces of the great lady, & then stood away from her, and left her standing there alone, the scarlet-clad woman before her; on the right & the left the tall pillars going up gleaming toward the roof, and about her feet the dark polished pavement, with the wallowing of strange beasts and great serpents and dragons all done on the coal-blue ground.

**W**HEN she was so left alone, at first she tottered, and went nigh to falling; but then came back some little heart to her, as she said to herself that now she should verily die once for all, & that no long while would be the passing from life into death. She looked up and beheld the lady-witch, that she was somewhat like to her sister, white-skinned and of plenteous golden hair as was she, but younger of aspect, and nowise so ill-looking as that other had now become; for somewhat well-shapen of body she was; but her face forbidding; her low-



er lip thrust out, her cheeks flaggy and drooping, her eyes little more than half open; to be short, a face both proud, foolish, and cruel; terrible indeed, sitting in judgment in that place on a shrinking naked creature.

**N**OW SHE spake; and if there were no majesty or solemnity in the voice, there was ugly glee and malice therein; but she said to those damsels: Is this the woman that my keen eyes beheld come a land from my sister's Sending Boat e'en now? Hurea knelt on one knee, and said: Yea, so please you, my lady.

**T**HEN said the witch: Ho thou! Wilt thou plead some errand hither from my sister? Dost thou deem me so witless as not to know that if she had sent thee hither thou wouldst not have come in this plight? Nay, I know; thou hast stolen thyself from her: thou art a thief, and as a thief shalt thou be dealt with.

**S**PAKE Birdalone in a clear voice: No errand do I feign from thy sister, lady: when I could bear my life there no longer, I took occasion to flee from her: this is all the tale. Yet once and again it hath been in my mind that it was thy sister who stole me

from them that loved me.

**H**AH, thrall! said the lady, thou art bold; thou art overbold, thou naked wretch, to bandy words with me. What heed I thy tale now thou art under my hand? Her voice was cold rather than fierce, yet was there the poison of malice therein. But Birdalone spake: If I be bold, lady, it is because I see that I have come into the House of Death. The dying may well be bold.


**T**HE House of Death cried the stupid lady; and wilt thou call my noble house the House of Death? Now art thou no longer bold, stripped thrall, but impudent.

**S**CORN rose into Birdalone's heart at this word, but she refrained her, & spake: I meant that I have stirred the wrath in thee, and that thou wilt slay me therefor; and that it availeth not to crave mercy of thee.

**T**HUGHED THE lady: Thou art a fool, thrall, said she; if a sparrow fled hither from my sister, I should not wring its neck, but keep it for her. So shall I do with thee. I shall not slay thee, and so destroy my sister's chattel; nor shall I spoil thee, & spoil her possession. I shall send thee back unto her, the stolen thrall in the stolen boat, when

Part II. Of  
the Wondrous Isles





I have learned thee a lesson here. forsooth it was for that cause meseemeth that she let thee slip through her fingers, for she is wise enough to have stayed thee from this holiday had she willed it. But she is tenderhearted, and kind, and soft, & might well deem that if thy chastisement were done to her hand here, it were better done than by her mercy. Now, thrall, I have spoken enough to thee, or more than enough: get thee back out of earshot!

**Chapter IV. Of the Witch's Prison in the Mailing Tower.**

**B**IRDALONE did as she was bidden, & the witch called unto her Atra, who came & stood humbly on the footpace beside her, and held converse with her mistress a while. Then she went backward from her a little, and then came to Birdalone, and in a somewhat harsh voice bade her come with her. Birdalone followed her, quaking, & they came out of the hall and into a long passage, which led to a wide stair winding round a newel; and all was builded exceeding fair, had Birdalone's heart suffered her eyes to see it; but her flesh was weak, and quaked before the torment to come, so that her knees well

nigh failed her.

**A**T now Atra lays a hand kindly on her shoulder and stays her, and says: Now meseems the walls of the Mailing Tower, for so it hight, have no ears to hear, and we may talk together. Wottest thou why I have brought thee hither? Said Birdalone in a faint voice: Hast thou been bidden to whip me? And if I had been so bidden, dear maid, en, said Atra laughing, nowise would I do it. Hold up thine heart! for all hath gone well so far, and now meseems betwixt us three we shall save thee.

**B**IRDALONE'S spirit came back to her at that word, and she put her hands to her face & fell a weeping. But Atra was kind to her and made much of her; and she kissed her and wiped her tears, and Birdalone smiled again amidst her sobs, & she thanked Atra; who said to her: first of all I must tell thee that I am taking thee to prison by the witch's bidding. Yea, said Birdalone, & what is prison? Said Atra: A prison is a grim place where poor folk who have done that which pleaseth not rich folk are shut up, that they may be grieved & tormented by not being able to fare abroad, or go where they would; and by suffering whatsoever their



masters may lay upon them, as darkness, and cold, & hunger, and stripes. Somewhat so, or worse, our lady would have it for thee; but so would not we. Therefore for thee shall this prison be a place where thou shalt be safe till we may bring thee forth when the night hath worn towards its ending. for she will have forgotten thee by to-morrow; & this she knoweth; wherefore just now, when thou stoodest out of earshot, she was bidding me, amongst other matters, to bring thee before her to-morrow morning, & tell her the tale of thee, that she might call it to mind then what she had will to this morning.

**Y**EA, said Birdalone, but will she not remember that she hath given thee a charge concerning me? But little thereof, said Htra, and with a few words I may easily confuse her memory so that speech thereon will fail her. Keep up thine heart, sweetling; but let us up this stair now forthwith, for I were fain to have thee hid away in this prison, & then will I down to her and tell her that thou art lying therein in all misery & terror, lest it come into her head to send for thee ere her memory is grown dim.

**A**GAIN did Birdalone take heart, and they hastened a long way up the stair, till Htra stayed at last at a door all done with iron, endlong and overthwart. Then she took a leash of keys from her girdle, one big & two little, and set the big one in the lock and turned it, and shoved the heavy door & entered there by a chamber four square and vaulted; and the vault was upheld by a pillar of red marble, wherein, somewhat higher than a man's head, were set stanchions of latten, that could be clasped and unclasped. This chamber was in a way goodly, but yet grim to look on; for the walls were all of black ashlar stone close jointed, and the floor black also, but of marble polished so wholly that it was as dark water, & gave back the image of Birdalone's dear feet and legs as she went thereon. The windows were not small, and the chamber was light in every corner because of them, but they were so high up under the vaulting that none might see thereout aught save the heavens. There was nought in the chamber save a narrow bench of oak and three stools of the same, a great & stately carven chair dight with cushions of purple and gold, & in one corner a big oaken coffer.



**N**OW spake Atra: This is our lady's prison, and I fear me we cannot make it soft for thee, dear stranger. Yea, I must tell thee (and she reddened therewith) that it is part of my charge to set thee in irons. Birdalone smiled on her, and was over weary to ask what that meant, though she knew not. But Atra went to the big coffer and opened it and thrust in her hands, and there was a jangling therewith, and when she turned about to Birdalone again she had iron chains in her hands, and she said: This shameth me, dear friend; yet if thou wouldst wear them it might be well, for she may have a mind to go visit her prison, & if she find thee there unshackled she shall be wroth, and oftenest her wrath hath a whip in its hand. And these are the lightest that I might find.

**B**IRDALONE smiled again, and spake not, for she was very weary, & Atra did the irons on her wrists and her ankles; and said thereafter: Yet bear in mind that it is a friend that hath the key of these things. And now I will go away for a little, but I shall be on thine errands; for first I shall tell the mistress that thou art lying here shackled & in all wan hope; and next, by the will and command of her, I

am to see that thou be well fed & nourished to day that thou mayst be the stronger for tomorrow. Now if I may give thee rede, it is that thou forbear to open the coffer yonder; for ugly things shalt thou find there, and that may dishearten thee again.

**T**HERewith she kissed her kindly on the cheek and went her ways, & the great key turned in the lock behind her.

**T**HEN then was Birdalone left to herself; & she was over weary even to weep; true it is that she made a step or two towards the coffer, but refrained her, and took two of the pillows from the great chair and turned aside into the other corner, her chains jingling as she went. There she laid herself down, and nestled into the very wall-nook, & presently fell asleep, and slumbered dreamlessly & sweetly a long while.

Chapter V. They feast in the  
Witch's Prison.

**B**IRDALONE was awakened by the sound of the key in the lock, & the door opened, & there was Atra bearing dishes and platters, and behind her Viridis with the like gear, & beakers & a flagon



to boot, and both they were smiling and merry.

**B**IRDALONE'S heart leapt up to meet them, and in especial was she gladdened by the coming of Viridis, who had seemed to be the kindest of them all.

**V**IRIDIS spake: Now is come the meat for the dearsister, & it is time, for surely thou art famished, and it is now long past high noon. Doo off her irons, Atra. Said Atra: Maybe it were well to let the fetters abide on her ankles, lest the mistress should come; but for the wrists, reach out thine hands, wayfarer. So did Birdalone, & Atra laid her things on the ground, and unlocked the hand/shackles, and did them off: and meanwhile Viridis spread forth the banquet, partly on the floor, & partly on that ill-omened coffer. Then she went up to Birdalone and kissed her, and said: Now shalt thou sit in our lady's throne, & we shall serve thee, & thou shalt deem thee a great one.

**N**OUGHT else would they have, and Birdalone laid her nakedness on the purple cushions, & then they fell all three to the feast. The victual was both plenteous & dainty, of venison and fowl, & cream and fruits and sweet-

meats, & good wine they had withal: never had Birdalone feasted in like manner, and the heart came back unto her, and her cheeks grew rosy and her eyes glittered. But she said: How if your lady were to come upon us here, and we so merry?

Said Atra: Out of the chair must thou when thou hearest the key in the lock, and then is all well, and she would have nought against us; for she herself bade us, and me in especial, to keep thee company here, and talk with thee; and Atrera also would have been here, but that she is serving the lady as now.

Hath she then some pity on me, said Birdalone, that she hath bidden thee do by me what is most to my pleasure?

**L**UGHED VIRIDIS thereat, and Atra said: She hath no pity, nor ever shall have; but so hard of heart is she, that she may not deem that we could love thee, a stranger, and unhappy, who can serve us in nowise; so she feareth not the abatement of thy grief from any compassion of us. Rather she hath sent us, and me in especial, not to comfort thee, but to grieve thee by words; for she biddeth me tell thee fair tales, forsooth, of what to-morrow shall be to thee, and the day after; and of how she shall begin on



thee, and what shall follow the beginning, & what thou mayst look for after that. for by all this she deemeth to lower thy pride & abate thy valour, and to make every moment of to-day a terror to thy flesh and thy soul, so that thereby thou mayst thole the bitterness twice over. Such is her pity for thee! And yet belike this cruelty hath saved thee, for but for that she had not refrained her from thee to-day, & to-morrow thou shalt be far away from her.

**MEANTWHILE**, said Viridis in her soft sweet voice, none of all these things will we talk over with thee, but things comfortable and kind; and we will tell each to each of our story. Will we not, Atra? *¶* Yea, verily, said she.

**BIRDALONE** looked up on them and said: Wondrous is your compassion & loving-kindness unto me, & scarce do I know how to bear the burden thereof. But tell me one thing truly; will ye not suffer in my place when this witch cometh to know that ye have stolen me away from her?

**AY**, said Atra, I have told thee that by to-morrow she will have altogether, or at least almost, forgotten

thee and thy coming hither. Moreover, she is foreseeing, & hath come to know that if she raise a hand against any of us three, it will lead her to her bane, save it be for heavy guilt clearly proven against us. forsooth, in the earlier days of our captivity such a guilt we fell into, & did not wholly escape, as Viridis can bear me witness. But we are now grown wiser, and know our mistress better, and will give her no such joy.

**IRIDIS** cast her eyes down at those words and Atra's smile, and turned red and then pale, and Birdalone looked on her wondering what ailed her; then she said: Do ye sisters work in the field & the garden? I mean at milking the kine & the goats, and digging the earth, & sowing and reaping, and the like. *¶* Nay, said Atra; either our mistress, or someone else who is of marvellous might, hath so ordained, that here everything waxeth of itself without tillage, or sowing or reaping, or any kind of tending; and whatso we need of other matters the mistress taketh it for us from out of her Wondercoffer, or suffereth us to take it for ourselves. for thou must know that this land is one of the Isles of the Lake, and is called the Isle of Increase Un-



sought.

**W**HESSEEMETH then, said Birdalone, were the mistress of you to gainsay you the gifts of the Wonder/coffer, ye were undone. Yea, verily, said Atra; then would be but the fruits of the earth and the wild creatures for our avail, & these, we have not learned how to turn them into dinner and supper. And they all laughed thereat; but Birdalone said: See ye then how I was right to offer myself unto you as a servant, for in all matters of the house and the byre and the field have I skill. But since ye would not or could not have me, I wonder not that ye be ill at ease here, & long to be gone, for as plentifulous and lovely as the isle is, & though ye live here without present mishandling or pinning. for, sooth to say, ye have over you a tyrant and a fool.

**V**IRIDIS answered: Yet is there something else, dear friend, that whets our longing to depart. Tell her thereof, Atra.

**A**TRA smiled and said: Simple it is: there are they who long for us and for whom we long, and we would be together. Said Birdalone: Be these kinsfolk of yours, as fathers, mothers, sisters, brothers, or the like?

**R**EDDENED Viridis again; but Atra spake, and she also blushed somewhat, though she smiled: Those whom we love, and who love us, be not queans, but carles; neither be they of our blood, but aliens, till love overcometh them & causeth them to long to be of one flesh with us; & their longing is beyond measure, and they desire our bodies, which they deem far fairer than belike they be. And they would bed us, and beget children on us. And all this we let them do with a good will, because we love them for their might, and their truth, and the hotness of their love toward us.

**L**OOKED UP Viridis thereat, and her eyes gleamed amidst the flushing of her cheeks, & she said: Sister, sister! even in such wise, & no other, as they desire us do we desire them; it is no mere good will toward them from us, but longing & hot love.

**N**OW must Atra blush no less than Viridis; yet she but said: I have told thee hereof, Birdalone, because I deem that thou hast lived simply & without the sight of men; but it is what all know in the world of the sons of Adam. Said Birdalone: Thou sayest

Part II. Of  
the Won-  
drous Isles



sooth concerning me. Yet about this love have I learned somewhat even ere to day, and now, as ye speak & I, meseems the lore of it comes pouring in on me and fills my heart with its sweetness. And O, to have such love from any, and with such love to be loved withall!

**D**EHR sister, said little Viridis, fear not; such as thou shalt not fail of the love of some man whom thou must needs love. Is it not so, sister Atra? Said Atra: Yea; such love shall come unto her as surely as death.

**T**HEY were silent now a little, and it was as if some sweet incense had been burned within the chamber. for Birdalone, the colour came and went in her cheeks, her flesh quaked, her heart beat quick, and she was oppressed by the sweetness of longing. More daintily she moved her limbs, and laid foot to foot & felt the sleekness of her sides; and tender she was of her body as of that which should one day be so sorely loved.

**N**OW she spake timidly to the others, & said: Each one of you then has a man who loves her, and longs for her and for none else? So it is, said Viridis. How sweet that shall be! said Birdalone; and now all the more I wonder

that ye could trouble yourselves over me, or think of me once; and the kinder I think it of you.

**S**AID ATRA smiling on her: Nay, now must the cat be out of the bag, & I must tell thee that thou art to think of us as chapmen who with our kindness would buy something of thee, to wit, that thou wouldst do an errand for us to those three lovers of ours. Surely, said Birdalone, it were a little payment to set against your saving of my life and my soul; and had I to go barefoot over red gleeds I would do it. And yet, if I may go hence to your lovers, why not all three of you along with me?

**S**AID Atra: for this reason; thy ferry, the Sending Boat, wherein ye came hither, is even somewhat akin to thy mistress and ours; and the mistress here hath banned it against bearing us; and now, were we so much as to touch it, such sore turmoil would arise, and such hideous noise as if earth and heaven were falling together; and the lady would be on us straightway, and we should be undone; and, as thou shalt hear presently, this hath been proved. But thou, thou art free of the said ferry. forsooth I wot not why thy mistress banned it not against



thee; maybe because she deemed not that thou wouldst dare to use it or even go anigh it.

**B**IRDALONE considered, & thought that even so it was; that the witch deemed that she would not dare use the Sending Boat, nor know how to, even if she came upon it, and that if she did so find it, she would sicken her of the road thereto. So now she told her friends the whole tale thereof more closely than she had afore, save again what pertained to Habundia; withal she told every word of what her mistress had said to her at that time when she changed her into a hind. And Viridis heard & wondered, and pitied her. But Atra sat somewhat downcast a while. Then she said: However this may be, we will send thee forth to-morrow in the dawn, & take the risk of what may befall thereafter; and thou shalt bear a token for each of those three that love us. for we deem that they have not forgotten aught, but are still seeking us.

**B**IRDALONE said: Whatsoever ye bid me, that will I do, and deem me your debtor still. But now I pray you, pleasure a poor captive somewhat more. Wherein? said they both; we be all ready thereto. Said the maiden:

Would ye do so much as to tell me the tale of how ye came hither, & then how it hath been with you from your first coming until now? With a good will, said Atra; hearken!

**Chapter VI. Atra tells of how they three came unto the Isle of Increase Unsought.**

**W**E were born and bred in the land that lies south-west along this Great Water, & we waxed happily, & became fellows when we were yet but children, and thus grew up dear friends into maidenhood and womanhood. We were wooed by many men, but our hearts turned to none of them save unto three, who were goodly, kind, and valiant; and thou mayst call them the Golden Knight, who is Aurea's man; the Green Knight, who is man of Viridis; and my man, the Black Squire. But in this was unhap, that because of certain feuds which had endured from old time, this love was perilous unto them and us; so that we lived in doubt and unrest.

**C**AME a day, now three years ago, when the king of the whole land brought his folk into our lakeside country, and there held a court and a mote in a fair great

**Part II. Of the Wondrous Isles**



Part II. Of  
the Wond-  
rous Isles

meadow anigh to the water. But even as the mote was hal-  
lowed, and the Peace of God  
proclaimed at the blast of the  
war/horn, came we three woe-  
ful ladies clad in black & knelt  
before the lord king, & prayed  
him hearken us. And he deem-  
ed that we were fair, so he had  
compassion on us, and raised  
us up, and bade us speak.

**S**O we told our tale, how  
that strife and wounds  
and death stood betwixt  
us and love; and we wept, & be-  
wailed it, that our love must be  
slain because men were wroth  
with each other & not with us.

**T**HE KING looked on us  
kindly, & said: Whobe the  
swains for whom these  
lovely damsels make such a  
piece of work? So we nam-  
ed them, & said that they were  
there in the mote; and the king  
knew them for valiant men who  
had done him good service; &  
he cried out their names, and  
bade them stand forth out of  
the throng. So forth they  
stood, the Golden Knight, the  
Green Knight, and the Black  
Squire (and he also was now  
a knight); but now were they  
all three clad in black, and they  
were unarmed, save for their  
swords girt to their sides, with-  
out which no man amongst us  
may come to the mote, be he ba-  
ron or earl or duke, or the very

lord king himself.

**S**O the king looked upon us  
and them, & laughed and  
said: fair ladies, ye have  
got me by the nose, so needs  
must my body follow. Do ye  
three knights, whom I know for  
valiant men and true, take each  
his love by the hand, and let  
the weddings be to-morrow.  
Who then were joyful but us?  
But even at the word the king  
spake arose great turmoil in  
the mote, for they smote the  
feud and contention awake, &  
men thronged forward against  
each other, and swords were  
drawn & brandished. But the  
king arose in his place & spake  
long & deftly, & waxed exceed-  
ing wroth, while none heeded  
him nor hearkened. And there  
stood our three men, who laid  
no hand to hilt, but abode heart-  
whole by seeming amid the tu-  
mult. And lovely they were to  
look on. At last the wise men  
and old barons went between,  
& by fair words appeased the  
trouble, & the mote grew hush-  
ed. Then spake the king: What  
is this, my thanes? I had deem-  
ed that my foemen were far a-  
way, and that ye that here are  
were all friends unto me & un-  
to each other. But now must  
we try another rede. There-  
with he turned unto our men  
and said: Ye champions, are ye  
so much in love with Love that



ye will fight for him? They all yeasaid that, and then the king said: Then do I declare that these three will hold the field against all comers from matins till high noon, and that he who vanquisheth any one of them shall have his lady & wed her if he will, & if he will, shall ransom her. And this field shall be foughten after two months' frist in these fair meadows, when I return from the outermost marches of the south, whereto I am now wending. But when the battle is done, then let all men bow to the judgment of God, whether he be well content or not, & this on peril of life and limb. And now let there be deep peace between all men meanwhile; and if any break the peace, be he high or low, rich or unrich, churl or earl, I swear it by the souls of my fathers that he shall lose nought save his life therefor.

**A**T these words was there a rumour of yeasay, & all men were content, save we three poor maidens, into whose hearts had now entered fear of loss and death.

**B**UT our kindreds on both sides were glad & proud, and they were not so bitter against us as they had been; they put hand to pouch, & let rear for us a fair pavilion of painted timber, all hung with

silk and pictured cloths & Saracen tapestry, by the very lake side; and gay boats gaily bedight lay off the said pavilion for our pleasure; and when all was done, it yet lacked a half month of the day of battle, & thither were we brought in triumph by the kindreds on a fair day of May, & there was not a sword or a spear amongst the whole company, and peaceful and merry was all by seeming. But we were not suffered to meet our lovers all this while, from the time when the mote was.

**W**ON a day came a messenger on the spur, and did us to wit that the king would be with us on the morrow, and that the day after, the fateful field should be foughten. Then, though the coming of this day had been so longed for by us, yet now it was at hand it cast us into all unrest and trouble, so that we scarce knew whether to go, or stand, or sit, or what to do with our bodies. Our folk, and all other men withal, were so busy making ready for the morrow of tomorrow, that they left us alone to wear through the day as we might.

**W**IT was afternoon, & the day hot & hazy, and we stood on the very lip of the land wearied with hope



and fear, and striving to keep good countenance to each other; and there came a boat unto the shore gaily painted and gilded, & bedight with silken cloths and cushions; and the steerer thereof was a woman, not young, by seeming of fifty winters; red-haired she was, thin-lipped and narrow-eyed, flat-breasted & strait-hipped; an ungoodly woman, though her skin was white & smooth as for her age. Hast thou ever seen such an one, guest? Said Birdalone, smiling: forsooth that have I; for such an one is my mistress to behold.

**W**ELL, said Atra, this dame stretched out her hands to us, and said: Will not the pretty ladies, the dear ladies, who have nought on hand this afternoon, come into my boat and look on the face of the water, so calm and fair as it is, & let their lovely hands go over the gunwale and play with the ripple, and so beguile this heavy time for a two hours; & then give a little gift of a piece or two of silver to a poor carline, who loveth all fair ladies and bright warriors, and who needeth a little livelihood?

**N**OW the woman seemed nought lovely unto us, & to me forsooth she seemed hateful; but we looked

on each other, and we found that we were utterly weary of going up & down on the meadow, & lying about in the pavilion, and it seemed as if this would give us a little rest; withal we saw not that the woman could do us any hurt, whereas we were three, and strong enough as women go; nor were we mariners so evil but that we might sail or steer a boat at a pinch. So we stepped into the boat straightway, and the woman sat aft and paddled deftly with the steering oar, and we glided away from the land.

**S**OON we were come so far that we could but just see our pavilion through the haze, which had somewhat thickened, and we said to the woman that she should go about and make for the shore, and that then we would go to and fro a while along by our stead. She nodded yeasay, and began by seeming to dight the craft for return. But therewith the haze was grown suddenly into a low cloud, which came down upon us from the south-west in the arms of a cold breeze, that grew stronger every minute, so no wonder it was though the steerer might not keep head to wind; & then who was afraid and ashamed save ourselves?



**B**UT the woman said, & there seemed to be a mock in her voice: Ill luck, pretty ladies! Now is there nought for it but to drive, if we would not drown. But be-like this duskiness will clear presently, and then at least we shall know whither we be going; & we may either turn back, or seek some other shelter, for I know the lake well; I know, I know.

**W**ERE too terror-stricken to speak, for we felt that still the wind grew stronger, & the lake began to rise into waves, and the craft to wallow; but well-nigh therewith was the dusk and the mist gone; the sky was bright blue overhead, and the westering sun shone cloudless; but on no land it shone, or on aught save the blue waters & the white wave/crests.

**T**HEN wept Aurea, and this Viridis here, but as to me, I grew wroth & cried out to the steerer: Accursed carline! thou hast betrayed us; never now may we get back to our pavilion till the fight is foughten, and our lovers will deem that we have forsaken them, & we are shamed for ever. Well, well, said the carline, what remedy save patience for the winds & waves? And she laughed mocking-

ly. Quoth I: There is this remedy, that we three arise & lay hands on thee, & cast thee outboard, save thou straight-way turn the boat's head and back to the main. forsooth I doubt not but that as thou hast raised this foul wind against us, thou canst raise a fair wind for us.

**H**ARKEN to the lovely lady! quoth the carline, how she deemeth me to be none other than the great God himself, to hold the winds in the hollow of my hand, and still the waves with a word! What! am I wrought somewhat after his image, kind ladies? And she grinned horribly therewith. Then she said again: As to thy remedy, sweetling, meseemeth it nought. for how shall ye sail this stormy water when your captain is gone, & ye but holiday sailors belike?

**A**S she spake, a great wave came up from the windward, and brake over us, and half filled the craft, and lifted her bows up towering, and then down we went into the trough; & I sat cowed and quaking, and spake never another word.

**N**OW began the sun to sink, and the wind abated, and the sea went down, but the boat sped on



as swift as ever over the landless waters.

**N**OW the sun was down, and dusk was at hand, & the carline spake, and drew a bright / gleaming sax from under her raiment: Dam/sels, I warn you that now it were best that ye obey me in all things; for though ye be three and I one, yet whereas I have here an edge / friend, I may take the life of any one of you, or of all three, as simply as I could cut a lamb's throat. Moreover it will serve you better in the house whereto ye are wending, that I make a good tale of you rather than a bad. For the mistress of that house is of all might; & I must say it of her, though she is my very sister, yet she is not so sweet / tempered & kind of heart as I am, but somewhat rough and unyielding of mood, so that it is best to please her. Wherefore, maidens, I rede you be sage.

**O**UR unhappy hearts were now so sunken in wan hope, that we had no word wherewith to answer her, and she spake: Now obey ye my bidding and eat & drink, that ye may come hale & sound to your journey's end, for I would not give starvelings to my dear sister. Therewith she brought forth victual for us, & that nought evil, of flesh

and bread, and cheese & cakes, and good wine withal; and we were hunger / weary as well as sorrow / weary; and hunger did at that moment overcome sorrow, so we ate and drank, and, would we, would we not, something of heart came back to us thereby. Then again spake the carline: Now my will is that ye sleep; and ye have cushions & cloths enough to dight you a fair bed; and this bidding is easy for you to obey. Forsooth, so weary were we with sorrow, & our hunger was now quenched, that we laid us down and slept at once, and forgot our troubles.

**W**HEN we awoke it was after the first dawn, and we were come a land even where thou didst this morning, guest. And thou mayst deem it wondrous, but so it was, that close to where our boat took land lay the ferry which brought thee hither.

**N**OW the carline bade us get ashore, and we did so, and found the land wondrous fair, little as that so laced us then. But she said unto us: Hearken! now are ye come home; and long shall ye dwell here, for never shall ye depart hence save by the will of my sister & me, wherefore, once more, I rede you be good, for it will be better for you. Go



forth now unto yonder house, & on the way ye shall meet the Queen of this land, and ye have nought to do but to say to her that ye are the Gift; and then shall she see to your matter.

**T**HEREWITH she gat into her own craft, the Sending Boat, & therein did the deed and spake the words ye wot of, and was gone north away; & when we turned to seek for our boat wherein we had come hither, it was gone.

**W**E STOOD miserably for a while on the lip of the land, and then I said that we might as well go meet our fate as die there of grief and hunger. So we went, and came into those fair gardens, and as we went slowly up toward the house came on us a woman clad in red scarlet and grandly dight. A big woman she was, and like to her that beguiled us, but far younger and fairer of favour, foolish & proud of visage. She stared on us, and seemed half afraid of us at first, but asked us what we were, and I answered that we were the Gift. The Gift? said she, what meaneth that? Will ye obey me in all things? If ye gainsay it, ye will perish, unless ye can eat grass; for on this isle everything cometh from my hand.

**W**HAT might we do? We all knelt down before her, & swore to do her will. Then she said, after she had stared on us awhile: Now I know: ye are they of whom my sister spake, that she would fetch me a gift of a leash of damsels for my service. Now I take the Gift and thank her good heart. But if ye would do my will, then.... But she broke off here & stared at us a long while, and then she said: Now I know; she bade me treat you well, and hold my hand from you, or evil would come of it, belike at last my bane. So go ye home to the house, and I will give you meat and drink, and show you my stores & the Wonder-coffer, & ye shall serve me in honour.

**G**IVEN so did we; and we ate and drank & rested, and nought we lacked, save leave to depart home to our lovers, & some mistress better than this stupid & proud lump of flesh. But the next morning when we came before the lady, she knew nought of what we were; and again we had to tell her that we were the Gift, and again she glared at us balefully, and again she called to mind her sister and her rede concerning us. And this went on for many days, till at last she got to know what we were; and she



followed her sister's rede in that she never mishandled us, though we could see that it irked her to forbear, nor did she speak to us more roughly than her fool's wont was; & we had in our hands all that was need- ed for our sustenance, & lived easily enough.

**O**ur coming hither be- tid three years ago, and a month thereafter comes thy witch hither in her ferry, & she greeted us when we met, and asked us, grinning, had she not been kind to win us such good days? Yea, and over kind, said she, ye would deem me, knew ye what would have betid you save for my good word, forsooth we deemed it no kind deed to steal us from our lov- ers; but we kept good tongues in our heads, for thralls must needs kiss the rod.

**S**he went away in two days, but came again many times thereafter, till we won the secret of the Sending Boat, and her spell therewith; but we knew not that was banned against us. Wherefore on a day in the grey of the morning, when we had been on this isle somewhat less than a year, we went down

to it and stepped in, and red- dened stem and stern and said the spell/words. But straight- way arose an hideous braying and clatter, and thunder came therewith, & trembling of the earth, & the waters of the lake arose in huge waves; nor might we move from our seats in the boat till the two witches came running down to us, and haled us out ashore, and had us up into the house, and into this very prison/chamber, wherein we are now sitting so merry. And here we bore what was laid upon us, whereof, dear guest, we shall tell thee nought. But this came of it, that never there- after durst we try the adven- ture of the Sending Boat, but have lived on in lazy sorrow & shameful ease, till thou, dear guest & sister, wert sent hith- er by heaven for our helping.

**N**ow what became of the king's court, and the ha- zelled field of our cham- pions, we wot not, or whether they be yet alive we cannot tell thee; but if they be alive, it is to them that we would have thee do our errand, and thereof will we tell thee closely to-morrow. And so, sweetling, an end of my tale.



Chapter VII. The three Damsels take Birdalone out of the Witch's Prison.

Part II. Of the Wondrous Isles

**B**IRDALONE thanked Atra much for her tale, & strange it was to her to hear of such new things and the deeds of folk; but the dealing of the witches with those three was familiar to her and was of her world.

**N**OW they talked merrily, till there came a footstep to the door & one without knocked. Viridis palied thereat, and a pang of fear smote Birdalone, & she swiftly got from out the chair and sat down on a stool; but when Atra opened, it was but Hurea come from her service to bid Atra take her place. So she went, & again was there pleasant converse betwixt Hurea & the other twain; & certain matters did Hurea tell Birdalone which had been left untold by Atra. And chiefly, when Birdalone asked if any other folk had come into the isle while they dwelt there, she said yea; once had come a knight with a lady, his love, fleeing from war and mishap, and these had the witch overcome by wizardry, and destroyed them miserably; & that again another had strayed thither, & him also the

witch undid, because he would not do her will & lie in her bed. Withal had come drifting there a young damsel, a castaway of the winds and waves; her the witch kept as a thrall, & after a while took to mishandling her so sorely, that at last, what for shame and what for weariness of life, she cast herself into the water & was drowned. None of these folk might the damsels help so as to do them any good, though they tried it, and went nigh to suffer therefor themselves.

**N**OW the day wore, and in a while Atra came back, & Viridis must serve. At last the dusk and the dark was come. Then said Atra: Now must we twain begone to wait upon our lady, as the wont is: & that is now for our good hap, for if we be with her all three, and especially, to say sooth, if I be with her, we may well keep her from visiting thee here; since belike she shall yet dimly remember that thou art in her prison. Therefore thou must forgive it if I shackle thy wrists again. And now if thou wilt follow my rede, thou shalt try to sleep some deal, & it were well if thou might'st sleep till we come for thee in the grey dawn.

**T**HERewith they left her there, & she nestled in the corner once



Part II. Of  
the Wond-  
rous Isles

more, and there did verily fall asleep, and slept till the key in the lock and the opening door awakened her, and Htra came stealing soft-footed into the prison. Eager she was & panting, and she kneeled before Birdalone and unlocked her leg/shackles, and then stood up and did the like by the irons on her wrists. Then she said: Look up, dear friend, to thy prison windows, and behold the dawn beginning to break on the day of thy deliverance, & ours maybe. But come now at once: and again, wilt thou pardon me, that we clothe thee not here for thy journey? for from our own bodies must we clothe thee, & if by any hap our lady were to see any one of us more or less unclad, it might draw her on to see what was toward, & we might yet be found out, for our undoing.

**T**HERewith she took her hand, & led her forth of the prison, and locked the door behind her; and then downstairs they went, & out-a/doors by a little wicket at the stair/end. The dawn drew on apace now, and Birdalone saw at once the other twain lurking in the wall/nook hard by. No word was spoken between them, and with noiseless feet they went forth into the orchard, where the blackbirds and

thrushes were beginning their first morning song, & ere they came out on to the meadow the full choir of them was a/singing.

**Chapter VIII.** In what wise Birdalone was clad, & how she went her ways from the Isle of Increase Unsought.

**W**HEN they were all clear of the orchard trees the threedam/sels kept Birdalone between them closely, so that her white body should not be seen if the lady were awake and looking forth. Thus they brought her to where a few thorn/bushes made a cover for them close to the water's edge, some twenty yards from the Sending Boat. There they stood together, & Htra said: Now, dear guest, and dearest messenger, it is our matter to clothe thee from our very bodies; and do thou, Viridis, begin.

**V**IRIDIS came forward blushing, as her wont was, and took off her green gown and laid it on the grass; then she set her hand to her smock, and did it off, & stood naked, knee set to knee, and swaying like the willow branch; and then was seen all the dainty fashion of her body, and how lovely of hue & sweet



of flesh she was.

**B**UT she said: Dear sister Birdalone, here is my smock, which I lend thee, but as to my love, I give it thee therewith; therefore grudge it not, though thou give me back the linen, for happy will be the day to me when I have it again; for now none may do it on me save the Green Knight, my own love. Therewith she gave her the smock, & kissed her, and Birdalone did it on, and felt the valianter & mightier when she had a garment upon her.

**W**HEN Aurea did off her golden gown, & stood in smock alone, so that her naked arms shone more precious than the golden sleeves that had covered them. And she spake: Birdalone, dearmessenger, take now my golden gown, and send it back to me when thou hast found the man unto whom it is due; and think meanwhile that, when thou wearest it, thou wearest my love, & that when thou pullest it off, thou art clad with my love instead of it.

**S**O Birdalone did on the gown, and became to look on as the daintiest of the queens of the earth; and she turned her head about to look on her gold-clad flanks, and wondered.

**T**HEREAFTER Atra knit up her skirts into her girdle, and then did off her shoon, so that her slim feet shone like pearls on the green grass; & she said: Birdalone, sweet friend! wilt thou be my messenger to bear these shoon to my Black Squire, and meanwhile put my love for thee under thy feet, to speed thee and to bear thee up? Wherefore be good to me.

**B**IRDALONE then shod herself, and though pity it were to hide her feet from the eyes of Earth, yet felt she the stouter-hearted thereby, and her cheeks flushed and her eyes brightened.

**T**HEREAFTER Aurea gave her withal a golden collar for the neck, and Viridis a girdle of silver well-wrought, and Atra a gold finger-ring set with a sapphire stone; and all these she did on her; but yet she knew that they were tokens to be delivered to the three lovers according as was due.

**W**HEN spake Atra: Lo, sister, we pray thee to bear these lendings on thy body in such wise that when thou comest to the mainland they may be seen by knights seeking adventures, and that thou mayst answer to any who may challenge thee thereof, &




say that thou bearest this raiment and these jewels from Hurea and Viridis and Atra to Baudoin the Golden Knight, and to Hugh the Green Knight, & to Arthur the Black Squire. And if thou deem that thou hast found these, then shall they tell thee a token, such as we shall tell thee, that they be truly these & none other; and thereafter, when thou art made sure, they shall take of thee the raiment, the gems, & the Sending Boat, & come hither if they may. And God look to therest! But as for the token to be told aforesaid, we have determined that each of us shall tell thee privily what question thou shalt ask for her, & what answer thou must look for.

**W**HEN she had done speaking, each came up to Birdalone and spake something into her ear amidst blushes enough forsooth. And what they said will be seen hereafter. Then again said Atra: Now by this errand shall we be well paid for the care we have had of thee. It may be, forsooth, that thou shalt not find our speech/friends; for they may be dead, or they may deem us untrue, and may have forsaken us & their land; and in any such case thou art free of our errand; but whatsoever may betide us, God speed thee!

**W**HEN Viridis drew forth a basket from under a bush, and said: We know not how long thy voyage may be, but some little provision for the way we may at least give thee: now wilt thou bear this aboard thyself, for we dare not touch thy craft, nay, nor come nigh it, no one of us. And she set down the basket and cast her arms about her, & kissed her and wept over her; and the other twain, they also kissed her lovingly. Birdalone wept even as Viridis, and said: May ye do well, who have been so kind to me; but now am I both so glad and so sorry, that the voice of me will not make due words for me. O farewell!

**H**EREWITH she took up her basket, & turned and went speedily to the Sending Boat; & they beheld her how she stepped aboard and bared her arm, and drew blood from it with the pin of her girdle/buckle, and therewith reddened stem and stern; and a pang of fear smote into their hearts lest their lady had banned it for Birdalone as for them. But Birdalone sat down on the thwart, and turned her face south, and spake:  
The red raven/wine now  
Hast thou drunk, stern & bow;  
Awake then, awake!  
And the southward way take:





The way of the Wender  
forth over the flood,  
for the will of the Sender  
is blent with the blood.

**N**O cloud barred the gate-  
way of the sun as she  
spoke; no wave rose up  
on the bosom of the lake; no  
clatter nor tumult was there;  
but the Sending Boat stirred,  
and then shot out swiftly into  
the wide water; and the sun a-  
rose as they looked, & his path  
of light flashed on Birdalone's  
golden gown for a moment, &  
then it grew grey again, and  
presently she was gone from  
before their eyes.

**S**O they turned up into  
the orchard: & now was  
Viridis of good cheer,  
and Aurea no less; but Atra  
lagged behind, & as she went,  
some passion took her, she  
knew not wherefore; her bo-  
som swelled, her shoulders  
heaved therewith, & she wept.

**Chapter IX. How Birdalone  
came to the Isle of the Young  
and the Old.**

**A**L went well  
with Birdalone  
when she had  
left the Isle of  
Increase Un-  
sought, much  
as it had on her first voyage,  
save that now she was both  
clad & victualled, & her heart,  
if yet it harboured fear, was al-

so full of new & strange hope;  
and oft, even as she sat there  
amidst the waste of waters,  
she wondered what new long-  
ing this was which wrought so  
sweet a pain in her, that it made  
her cheeks burn, and her eyes  
dim, & her hands and her limbs  
restless. And then would she  
set her mind to her friends &  
their errand, and would hope  
and pray for them; but again  
would she fall to picture to her-  
self what manner of men they  
were who were so sore longed  
for by those three beauteous  
women; and she deemed that  
since they were thus desired,  
they must be fairer even than  
her friends of the isle; and a-  
gain the nameless longing o-  
vertook her, and held her till it  
wearied her into sleep.

**W**HEN she awoke again  
the boat had stayed,  
and she was come a-  
land; but the dawn was not yet  
come, & the night was moon-  
less, yet was there light en-  
ough to see, from the water &  
the stars, that the bows of the  
boat were lying safe on a little  
sandy beach. So she stepped  
out & looked around, & deem-  
ed she could see great trees be-  
fore her, & imagined also dark  
masses of she knew not what.  
So she walked warily up the  
said strand till she came on to  
soft grass, & smelled the scent

**Part II. Of  
the Mon-  
drous Isles**



of the clover as her foot/soles crushed it. There she sat down, and presently lay along & went to sleep.

**A**FTER a while she awoke, and felt happy and well at ease, and had no will to move: the sun was shining brightly, but had not been up long: the song of birds was all about her, but amidst it she deemed she heard some speech of man, though it were not like to what she had heard in her life before. So she raised herself on her elbow, & looked up and saw a new thing, and sat up now, and beheld and wondered.

**F**ORTHERE stood before her, gazing wide-eyed on her, two little children, some three winters of age, a man and a woman as it seemed. The man/child with light & fine white/golden hair, falling straight down & square over his brow, & blue/grey eyes which were both kind & merry, and shyly seeking as it were. Plump and rosy he was, sturdy and stout/limbed. No less fair was the woman; her hair golden/brown, as soft it is with children who grow up dark-haired, and curling in fair little rings all over her head; her eyes were big and dark grey; she was thinner than the lad, and somewhat taller.

**T**HESE two babes had between them a milk-white she/goat, & had been playing with her, and now she turned her head to this & that one of them, bleating, as if to crave more of the game; but they had no eyes for her, but stood staring with might and main on the new/comer & her shining golden gown.

**B**IRDALONE laughed with joy when she saw the little ones, & a dim memory of the days of Atterhay passed before her: she stretched out a hand to them, and spake softly and caressingly, & the little lad came forward smiling, & took her hand, and made as if he would help her up for courtesy's sake. She laughed on him, and arose; and when she stood up, tall & golden, he seemed somewhat afraid of so big a creature, but stood his ground valiantly. Then she stooped down to him & kissed him, and he naysaid her not, but seemed rather glad when it was over; but when Birdalone went to the little maid, & kissed her, the child clung to her as if she were her mother, & babbled to her.

**T**HEN comes the lad to her, & takes her hand, & would draw her away, and speaks to her in his prattle, and she understood him



to mean that she should come with him to see the father. So she went, wondering what should next betide; & the little maiden went on the other side of her, holding by a fold of her skirt. forsooth the goat followed bleating, not well pleased to be forgotten.

**N**OW had Birdalone time to look about her, though the two babes fell to prattling with her in their way, and she thought it sweet to look down on the two little faces that looked up to her so pleased and merry.

**S**HE was in a grassy plain, somewhat over rough & broken to be called a meadow, & not enough bestimbered to be called a wood; it rose up a little & slowly as they left the water, but scarce so much as one might call it a hill. Straight before her on the way that they were going went up into the air great masses of grey stone builded by man's hand, but looking, even from this way off, ragged and ruinous. It may well be thought that Birdalone wondered what things might lie betwixt the trees and the towers.

**N**OW as they went they came on other goats, who seemed tame, and these joined them to their fellow, and suffered the young-

lings to play with them. Moreover there were rabbits great plenty scuttling in and out of the brakes & the rough ground upon the way, and the younglings beheld them, and the little lad said, after his fashion: Why do the rabbits run away from us, and the goats follow us? Now, sooth to say, Birdalone scarce knew why, & had no word ready for the child; but she said at last: May happen they will come to me; so it was once when I dwelt away from here. Shall I go fetch thee one?

The little ones ye said that, though somewhat shyly and doubtfully. Then said Birdalone: Do ye, sweetlings, abide me here, and go not away.

They nodded their heads thereat, & Birdalone kilted her skirts & went her ways to some broken bushed ground, where was a many rabbits playing about; but she went not out of eye-shot of the babes. Before she was well nigh to the little beasts, she fell to talking to them in a low sweet voice, as had been her wont when she was little; & when they heard it, those who had not scuttled away at first glance of her, fell to creeping little short creeps one to the other, as their manner is when they be alone together & merry; & they suffered her to come quite amongst



them, and crept about her feet while she stood, still talking unto them. Then she stooped down and took up one in her arms and caressed it, and then laid him down and took up another, and so with three or four of them; and she fell to pushing them, & rolling them over with her foot; then she turned a little away from them toward the children, and then a little more, & the rabbits fell to following her, and she turned & took up one in her arms, and went straight on toward the children, but turning and talking to the rabbits now and again.

**A**S to the babes, she saw the goats, of whom were now a dozen, or thereabouts, standing together in a kind of ring, & the little ones going from one to the other playing with them happily. But presently the lad turned and saw her coming with her tail of little beasts, and he cried out a great Oh! and ran toward her straightway, and the maiden after him; and he held out his arms to have the rabbit she bore, & she gave it to him smiling, and said: Lo now! here be pretty playmates; but look to it that ye be soft and kind with them, for they are but feeble people. So the younglings fell to sporting with their new

friends, and for a little forgot both goats and golden lady; but the goats drew nigh, and stood about them bleating, nor durst they run at the rabbits to butt them, because of Birdalone and the little ones.

**T**HERE then stood the slim maiden, tall and gleaming above her little flock; & her heart was full of mirth and rest, & the fear was all forgotten. But as she looked up toward the grey walls, lo, new tidings to hand! for she saw an old man with a long white beard slowly coming toward them: she started not, but abode his coming quietly, and as he drew nigh she could see of him that he was big & stark, & old as he was, not yet bowed with his many years. He stood looking on this Queen and her court silently a while, and then he spake: Such a sight I looked not to see on this Isle of the Young & the Old. She said: But meseemeth it is full meet that these younglings should sport with the creatures. He smiled and said: Such a voice I looked not to hear on the Isle of the Young and the Old.

**B**IRDALONE became somewhat troubled, & said: Am I welcome here? for if I be not, I will pray thy leave to depart. He said: Thou art as welcome as the very



spring, my child; and if thou have a mind to abide here, who shall naysay thee? for surely thou art young; nay, in regard to me thou art scarce older than babes. All blessings be with thee. But though thou art true & kind, as is clear to be seen by thy playing with these children & the landward beasts in peace and love, yet it may be so that thou hast brought hither some what less than peace. And he smiled upon her strangely.

**S**HE looked somewhat scared at his last words, and said: But how so? If I might I would bear nought but peace & happiness to any place. The old carle laughed outright now, and said: How so, dear child? because ladies so sweet and lovesome as thou be sent by love, and love rendeth apart that which was joined together.

**S**HE wondered at his word, and was bewildered by it, but she held her peace; & he said: Now we may talk here of later on; but the matter to hand now is the quenching of thine hunger; for I will not ask thee whereby thou camest, since by water thou needs must have come. Wherefore now I bid thee to our house, & these little ones shall go with us, & the three of these horned folk whom we are wont to tether a-

midst the wrack and ruin of what once was fair; the rest have our leave to depart, and these nibblers also; for we have a potherb garden by our house, & are fain to keep the increase of the same for ourselves. Birdalone laughed, and shook her skirts at the coneys, and they all scuttled away after the manner of their kind. Thereat the little lad looked downcast and well-nigh tearful, but the maid stamped her foot, and roared well-favouredly.

**B**IRDALONE DID her best to solace her, and plucked a bough from a hawthorn bush far above the little ones' reach whereon was yet some belated blossom, & gave it to her and stilled her. But the old man picked out his milch-goats from the flock (whereof was the white), and drove them before him, while the two babes went on still beside Birdalone, the little carle holding her hand and playing with the fingers thereof, the maiden sometimes hanging on to her gown, sometimes going loose and sporting about beside her.

**S**O came they to where the ground became smooth-er, and there was a fair piece of greensward in a nook made by those great walls and towers, which sheltered it from



the north. The said walls seemed to be the remnant of what had once been a great house & castle; and up aloft, where was now no stair to come at them, were chimneys & hearths here and there, and windows with fair seats in them, and arched doors and carven pillars, and many things beautiful; but now was all ruined and broken, and the house was roofless & floorless: withal it was overgrown with ash trees & quicken-beam, & other berry trees and key trees, which had many years ago seeded in the rent walls, & now grew there great & flourishing. But in the innermost nook of this mighty remnant, & using for its lowly walls two sides of the ancient ashlar ones, stood a cot builded not over trimly of small wood, and now much overgrown with roses & woodbine. In front of it was a piece of garden ground, wherein waxed potherbs, and a little deal of wheat; & therein was a goodly row of bee skeps; and all without it was the pleasant greensward aforesaid, wherein stood three great ancient oaks, and divers thorns, which also were ancient after their kind.

**T**HE elder led his guest into the cot, which had but simple plenishing of stools and benches, and a

table unartful, and then went to tether his goats in the ruined hall of the house, and the children must needs with him, though Birdalone had been glad of one of them at least; but there was no nay, but that they must go see their dear white goat in her stall. Howsoever all three came back again presently, the old carle with a courteous word in his mouth, and he took Birdalone's hand, and kissed it and bade her welcome to his house, as though he had been a great lord at home in his own castle. There with must the little ones also kiss her hand & be courteous; & Birdalone suffered it, laughing, and then caught them up in her arms, and clipped and kissed them well favouredly; wherewith belike they were not overwell pleased, though the boy endured it kindly. Thereafter the elder set forth his banquet, which was simple enough: upland cheer of cream & honey, and rough bread; but sweet it was to Birdalone to eat it with good welcome, & the courtesy of the old man.

**W**HEN THEY were done, they went out a doors, & Birdalone & the old man laid them down under an oak tree, and the children sported about anigh them. Then spake Birdalone:



Old man, thou hast been kind unto me; but now wouldest thou tell me about thee, what thou art, and what are these walls about us here? Said he: I doubt if I may do so, this day at least. But belike thou shalt abide with us, and then some day the word may come into my mouth. She held her peace, & into her mind it came that it would be sweet to dwell there, and watch those fair children waxing, and the lad growing up & loving her; yea, even she fell to telling up the years which would make him a man, and tried to see herself, how she would look, when the years were worn thereto. Then she reddened at the untold thought, & looked down and was silent. But the elder looked on her anxiously, and said: It will be no such hard life for thee, for I have still some work in me, & thou mayst do something in spite of thy slender and delicate fashion. She laughed merrily & said: forsooth, good sire, I might do somewhat more than something; for I am deft in all such work as here ye need; so fear not but I should earn my livelihood, and that with joy. Merry days shall we have then, said he.

**B**UT therewith her eye caught the gleam of her golden sleeve, and she thought of Aurea, & her heart smote her for her errand; then she laid her hand on her girdle & called to mind little Viridis, and the glitter of the ring on her finger brought the image of Atra before her; then she rose up & said: Thou art kind, father, but I may not; I have an errand; this day must I depart from thee. He said: Thou hast broken my heart; if I were not so old, I would weep. And he hung adown his head.

**S**HE stood before him abashed, as if she had done him a wrong. At last he looked up and said: Must it be to-day? Wilt thou not abide with us night/long, and go thy ways in the early morning?

**N**OW SHE scarce knew how to gainsay him, so wretched as the old carle looked; so it came to this, that she yeasaid the abiding till to-morrow. Then suddenly he became gay and merry, & he kissed her hand, and fell to much speaking, telling tales of little import concerning his earlier days. But when she asked him again of how he came there, & what meant the great ruined house, then he became

Part II. Of  
the Wondrous Isles



foolish & wandering, & might scarce answer her; whereas otherwise he was a well-spoken old carle of many words, and those of the grandest.

**T**HEN changed his mood again, and he fell to bewailing her departure, & how that henceforth he should have none to speak to him with understanding. Then she smiled on him and said: But yonder babes will grow up; month by month they will be better fellows unto thee. Fair child, he said, thou dost not know. My days to come are but few, so that I should see but little of their waxing in any case. But furthermore, wax they will not; such as they be now, such shall they be till I at least see the last of them and the earth.

**B**IRDALONE wondered at this word, and the place seemed changed to her, yea, was grown somewhat dreary; but she said to the carle: And thou, dost thou change in any wise, since these change not? He laughed somewhat grimly, & said: The old that be here change from old to dead; how could I change to better? Yea, the first thing I had to do here was to bury an old man. Quoth she: And were there any children here then? Yea, said he; these same, or I can see no difference in them.

Said Birdalone: And how long ago is that? And how camest thou hither? His face became foolish, and he gibbered rather than spake: No, I wot not; no, no, no, not a whit, a whit. But presently after was he himself again, & telling her a tale of a great lady of the earl's folk, a baron's dame, and how dear he was unto her. He lay yet on the grass, and she stood before him, & presently he put forth a hand to her gown, hem & drew her to him thereby, and fell to caressing her feet; & Birdalone was ashamed thereat, and a little angry. He was nought abashed, but sat up and said: Well, since thou must needs depart to-morrow, be we merry to-day. And I pray thee talk much with me, fair child, for sweet and sweet is thy voice to hearken. Then he arose and said: Now will I fetch thee somewhat to eke the joy of us both. And he turned therewith and went into the house.

**B**IRDALONE stood there, and was now perplexed & downhearted; for now the look of the elder scarce liked her, and the children began to seem to her as images, or at the best not more to her than the rabbits or the goats; and she rued her word that she would abide there the



night through. for she said to herself: I fear some trap or guile; is the witch behind this also? for the old man is yet stark, & though he be foolish at whiles, yet may wizardry have learned him some guile.


**W**ITH that cometh out the carle again, bearing a little keg and a mazer roughly wrought; & he came to Birdalone, & sat down, & bade her sit by him, and said to her: Maybe I shall hear more of thy sweet voice when thy sweet lips have been in the cup.

Therewith he poured forth into the mazer, and handed it to Birdalone, & lo! it was clear and good mead. She sipped thereof daintily, and, to say sooth, was well-pleased therewith, and it stirred the heart in her. But then she gave back the cup to the elder, and would no more of it. As for him, he drank what was left in the cup, looking over the rim thereof meanwhile; & then filled himself another, and another, and yet more. But whereas it might have been looked for that his tongue should be loosened by the good mead into foolishness and gibbering, he became rather few-spoken, and more courteous & stately even than he had been at the first. But in the end, forsooth, he was forgetting Birdalone, what she

was, and he fell a-talking, always with much pomp & state, as if to barons and earls, and great ladies; till suddenly his head fell back, he turned over on his face, & all wit was gone from him.

**A**T first, then, Birdalone was afraid that he was dead, or nigh unto death, and she knelt down and raised his head, & fetched water and cast it over his face. But when she saw that he was breathing not so ill, & that the colour was little changed in his lips and cheeks, she knew that it was but the might of the mead that had overcome him. Wherefore she laid him so that he was easy, and then stood up and looked about her, & saw the children playing together a little way off, and nought else a-nigh her, save the birds in the brake, or flying on their errands eagerly from place to place. Then, as it were, without her will being told them, her limbs & her feet turned her about to the shore where lay the Sending Boat, & she went speedily but quietly thitherward, her heart beating quick, for fear lest something should yet stay her, and her eyes glancing from brake to bush, as if she looked to see some enemy, old or new, come out thence.





**S**o now her will was clear enough to her feet, and they brought her down to the water-side and the long strand, past which the wide water lay windless and gleaming in the hot afternoon. Then lightly she stepped aboard, & awoke the Sending Boat with blood-offering, and it obeyed her, and sped swiftly on the way to the southward.

**Chapter X. Birdalone comes to the Isle of the Queens.**

**B**IRDALONE awoke the next morning while the boat was yet speeding over the water, & the sun was up: but she was hard on the land, which sat low and green, like a meadow exceeding fair, on the bosom of the water, and many goodly trees were sprinkled about the greenland. But from amidst the trees, no great way from the water's edge, rose a great house, white and fair, as if it were new-build, and all glorious with pinacles, & tabernacles set with imagery.

**P**RESENTLY THE boat's bows ran into the reed & rush at the brim of the water, & Birdalone stepped ashore without more ado, and the scent of the meadow-sweet amongst which she

landed brought back unto her the image of Green Eyot that while ago.

**B**UT now when she was ashore the dread took hold of her again, & her knees trembled under her, so that she might scarce stand, so fearful was she of walking into some trap; especially when she beheld that goodly house, lest therein awaited her some proud & cruel lady, and no kind damsels to deliver her.

**S**HE looked about her, & saw in all the fair meadow neither man nor woman, nor draught-beast nor milch-beast, nought but the little creatures of the brake and the bent-grass, which were but as the blossoms thereof, and the birds running in the herb-age or singing amidst the tree-boughs.

**T**HEN she thought that she must needs go forward, or belike her errand would not speed; that the Sending Boat might not obey her, unless she saw through the adventure to the end; so she went on toward the house quaking.

**S**OON was she at the porch of the white palace, & had seen no man nor heard any voice of men; much she marvelled, despite her dread, at the beauty of the said house,





and the newness thereof; for it was as one flower arisen out of the earth, and every part of it made the beauty of the other parts more excellent; & so new it was, that it would have seemed as if the masons thereof had but struck their scaffold yesterday, save that under the very feet of the walls the sweet garden flowers grew all uncrushed.

**N**OW comes Birdalone through the porch unto the screens of the great hall; and she stopped a little to recover her breath, that she might be the quieter and calmer amongst the great folk & mighty whom she looked to find therein. So she gathered heart; but one thing daunted her, to wit, that she heard no sound come from that great & goodly hall, so that she doubted if it were perchance left desert by them who had been its lords.

**S**HE raised her hand to the door of the screen, and it opened easily before her, and she entered, and there indeed she saw new tidings. For the boards endlong & overthwart were set, and thereat were sitting a many folk, & their hands were reached out to knife and to dish, and to platter & cup; but such a hush there was within, that the song of the garden birds without

sounded to her as loud as they were the voices of the children of Adam.

**N**EXT she saw that all that company, from the great folk on the dais down to those who stood about the hall to do the service, were women, one & all; not one carle might she see from where she stood: lovely were they many of them, & none less than comely; their cheeks were bright, and their eyes gleamed, and their hair flowed down fair of fashion. And she stood, and durst not move a long while, but expected when someone would speak a word, & all should turn their heads toward the new-comer. But none moved nor spake. And the fear increased in her amidst that hush, and weighed so heavy on her heart, that at last she might endure it no longer, but fell swooning to the floor.

**W**HEN she came to herself, and the swoon-dreams had left her, she saw by the changing of the sun through the hall-windows that she had lain there long, more nearly two hours than one; & at first she covered her face with her hands as she crouched there, that she might not see the sight of the silent hall, for yet was it as hushed as before. Then slowly she a-



rose, and the sound of her raiment and her stirring feet was loud in her ears. But when she was upright on her feet, she hardened her heart, and went forth into the hall, and no less was her wonder than erst. for when she came close to those ladies as they sat at table, and her raiment brushed the raiment of the serving women as she passed by, then saw she how no breath came from any of these, and that they neither spake nor moved; because they were dead.

**A**T first then, she thought to flee away at once, but again she had mind of her errand, and so went up the hall, & so forth on to the dais; and there again, close by the high table, she saw new tidings. for there was set a bier, covered with gold and pall, & on it was laid a tall man, a king, belted & crowned; & beside the said bier, by the head of the king, knelt a queen of exceeding goodly body, clad all in raiment of pearl and bawdekin; and her hands were clasped together, and her mouth was drawn, and her brow knit with the anguish of her grief. But athwart the king's breast lay a naked sword all bloody; and this Birdalone noted, that whereas the lady was of skin & hue as if she were alive, the king was yellow as

wax, & his cheeks were shrunk, en, & his eyes had been closed by the wakers of the dead.

**L**ONG Birdalone looked and wondered; & now if her fear were less, her sorrow was more for all that folk sitting there dead in their ancient state and pomp. And was not the thought clean out of her head, that yet they might awake and challenge her, and that she might be made one of that silent company. Withal she felt her head beginning to fail her, & she feared that she might swoon again & never waken more, but lie for ever beside that image of the dead king.

**S**O then she refrained her both of fear and sorrow, & walked speedily down the hall, looking neither to the right nor left: and she came forth into the pleasance, but stayed there nought, so nigh it seemed to that hushed company. Thence came she forth into the open meadow, and sweet and dear seemed its hot sunshine and noisy birds and rustling leaves. Nevertheless, so great was the tumult of her spirits, that once more she grew faint, and felt that she might scarce go further. So she dragged herself into the shade of a thorn tree, & let her body sink unto the ground, & lay there long unwitting.



**Chapter XI. And now she comes to the Isle of the Kings.**

**Part II. Of the Mon-  
drous Isles**

**W**HEN Birdalone came to herself it was drawing toward the glooming, & she rose up hastily, & went down to the Sending Boat, for she would not for aught abide the night in that fearful isle, lest the flock of the hall should come alive and walk in the dusk & the dark. She stepped aboard lightly, and yielded her blood to the pride of that ferry, and it awoke and bore her forth, & she went through the night till she fell asleep.

**W**HEN SHE awoke it was broad day & the sun just arising, and lo! before her, some half mile off, an isle rugged and rocky, and going up steep from the shore; & then, held as it were by the fangs of the rocks and pikes of the higher land, was a castle, white, high, and hugely builded, though, because of the rock/land belike, it spread not much abroad. Like to the lovely house of yesterday, it seemed new/builded; and, little as Birdalone knew of such matters, her heart told her that this new house was fashioned for battle.

**S**HE was downcast when she saw the isle so rugged and forbidding, but when the boat came aland in a stony bight, whence the ground went up somewhat steeply toward the heights, she went ashore straightway, and toiled up toward the white battlement. Presently she found herself in a strait and rugged path betwixt two walls of rock, so that she lost sight of the castle a while, till she came out on to a level place which looked down from aloft on to the blue water, but all over against her close at hand were the great towers and walls. She was worn by the rough road, and over helpless she felt her, and all too little to deal with that huge morsel of the world; & her valiancy gave way, & her trust in her errand. She sat down on a stone and wept abundantly.

**A**FTER a while she was amended, & she looked up & saw the huge hold, and said: Yea, but if it were less by the half than it is, it would still be big enough to cow me. Yet she stood not up. Then she put forth a foot of her, and said aloud: Sorely hath this rough road tried Atra's shoon and their goodly window/work; if they are to be known I must be speedy on my journey or go barefoot.



**A**S she spoke she stood up, and the sound of her own voice frightened her, though nought noiseless was the place; for the wind was there, and beat to and fro the castle and the rock, & ran baffled into every corner of that market-place of nothing. For in that garth was neither knight nor squire nor sergeant; no spear-head glittered from the wall, no gleam of helm showed from the war-swales; no porter was at the gate; the draw-bridge over the deep ghyll was down, the portcullis was up, & the great door cast wide open.

**B**IRDALONE steeled her heart and went forward swiftly, and over the bridge, & entered the base court, and came without more ado to the door of the great hall, & opened it easily, as with the door of yesterday, looking to find another show like unto that one; & even so it fell out.

**F**OR SOOTH the hall was nought light and lovely, and gay with gold and bright colours, as that other, but beset with huge round pillars that bore aloft a wide vault of stone, & of stone were the tables; and the hallings that hung on the wall were terrible pictures of battle & death, and the fall of cities, and towers a tumbling & houses a flaming.

**N**ONE the less there also were the shapes of folk that moved not nor spake, though not so thronged was that hall as the other one; and it seemed as if men were sitting there at a council rather than a feast. Close by Birdalone's right hand as she entered were standing in a row along the screen big men at arms all weaponed, and their faces hidden by their sallets; & down below the dais on either side of the high table was again a throng of all armed men; and at the high table itself, and looking down the hall, sat three crowned kings, each with his drawn sword lying across his knees, & three long hoary wise men stood before them at the nether side of the board.

**B**IRDALONE looked on it all, striving with her fear: but yet more there was, for she deemed that needs must she go through the hall up to the dais, lest the Sending Boat deny its obedience. Up toward the dais she went then, passing by weaponed men who sat as if abiding the council's end at the end long tables. And now, though no shape of man there spake or breathed, yet sound lacked not; for within the hall went the wind as without, & beat about from wall to wall, and drave



clang and clash from the weapons hung up, and waved the arras, & fared moaning in the nooks, & hummed in the vault above.

**C**AME she up to the dais then, and stood beside one of the wise men, & looked on the kings, & saw the mightiness which had been in them, & quaked before them. Then she turned from them and looked down to the floor, & lo! there, just below the dais, lay a woman on a golden bier; exceeding fair had she been, with long yellow hair streaming down from her head; but now waxen white she was, with ashen lips and sunken cheeks. Clad was she in raiment of purple and pall, but the bosom of her was bared on one side, & therein was the road whereby the steel had fared which had been her bane.

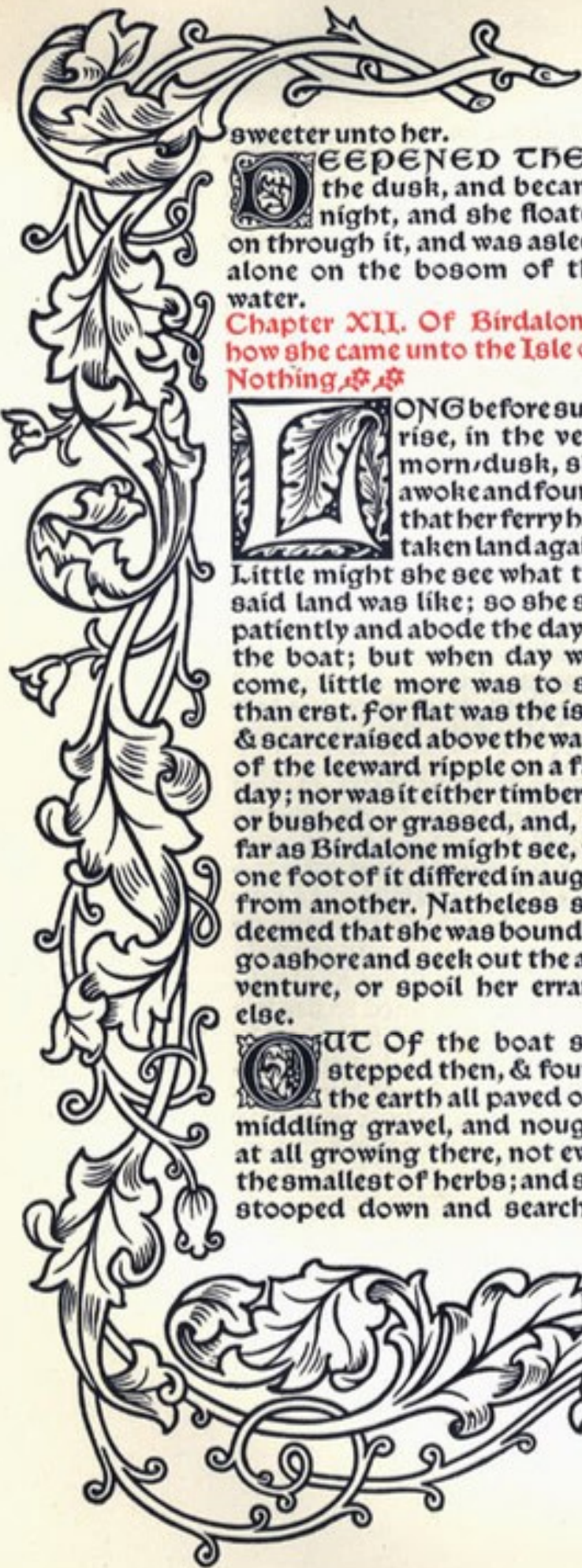
**N**OW when Birdalone had gazed thereon a while, she deemed that if she tarried there long amidst those fierce men by the dead woman, she should lose her wit full soon, so sore the fear, held back, beset her now. Wherefore she turned and went hastily down the hall, and out-a-doors, & over the bridge, and ran fleet-foot down the rocky way whereby she had come, till she could run no further, and

lay down under a great stone breathless & fardone; yet her heart upheld her and suffered her not to swoon, belike because she had given her limbs such hard work to do.

**T**HERE SHE lay awake & troubled for an hour or more, and then she fell asleep, and slept till the day was worn toward sunset, & nought meddled with her. She arose and went to her ship somewhat downhearted, wondering how many such terrors should befall her; nay, whether the Sending Boat would so lead her that henceforth she should happen on no children of Adam but such as were dead images of the living. Had all the world died since she left the Isle of the Young and the Old?

**N**OW SOEVER, she had nought to do save to board her ferry, & content its greedy soul with her blood, & drive it with the spell-words. And thereafter, when it was speeding on, and the twilight dusking apace, she looked aback, & seemed to see the far-off woodland in the north-ern ort, and the oak-clad ridge, where she had met her wood-mother; and then it was as if Habundia were saying to her: Meet again we shall. And there with straightway became life





sweeter unto her.

**D**EEPENED THEN the dusk, and became night, and she floated on through it, and was asleep alone on the bosom of the water.

**Chapter XII. Of Birdalone, how she came unto the Isle of Nothing.**

**L**ONG before sunrise, in the very morn/dusk, she awoke and found that her ferry had taken land again.

Little might she see what the said land was like; so she sat patiently and abode the day in the boat; but when day was come, little more was to see than erst. for flat was the isle, & scarce raised above the wash of the leeward ripple on a fair day; nor was it either timbered or bushed or grassed, and, so far as Birdalone might see, no one foot of it differed in aught from another. Natheless she deemed that she was bound to go ashore and seek out the adventure, or spoil her errand else.

**O**UT Of the boat she stepped then, & found the earth all paved of a middling gravel, and nought at all growing there, not even the smallest of herbs; and she stooped down and searched

the gravel, and found neither worm nor beetle therein, nay nor any one of the sharp and slimy creatures which are wont in such ground.

**A**LITTLE further she went, and yet a little further, & no change there was in the land; and yet she went on & found nothing; & she wended her ways southward by the sun, and the day was windless.

**A**T last she had gone a long way, & had no sight of water south of the isle, nor had she seen any hill, nay, not so much as an antheap, whence she might look further around; and it seemed to her that she might go on for ever, and reach the heart of Nowhither at last. Wherefore she thought she would turn back and depart this ugly isle, and that no other adventure abided her therein. And by now it was high noon; & she turned about and took a few steps on the backward road.

**B**UT even therewith it seemed as if the sun, which heretofore had been shining brightly in the heavens, went out as a burnt-down candle, & all was become dull grey overhead, as all under foot was a dull dun. But Birdalone deemed she could follow a straight course back again,



& so walked on sturdily. Hour after hour she went and stayed not, but saw before her no glimpse of the northern shore, and no change in the aspect of the ground about her.

**L**T had so happened that a little before she had turned to go back, she had eaten her dinner of a piece of bread & a morsel of cheese, and now as she stooped and peered on the ground, looking for some sign of the way, as her foot-prints going south, and had her eyes low anigh the earth, she saw something white at her feet in the gathering dusk (for the day was wearing), and she put her hand to it and lifted it, and found it a crumb of bread, & knew that it must have come from her dinner of seven hours ago, where as till that time her bread had lain unbroken in her scrip. Fear and anguish smote her there-with, for she saw that in that dull land, every piece whereof was like every other piece, she must have gone about in a ring, and come back again to where she first turned to make for the northern shore.

**N**ET would she not cast aside all hope, but clad herself in her valiancy. forsooth she knew it availed nought to try to move on in the twilight; so she laid her-

self down on that waste, and made up her mind to sleep if she might, and abide the new day there, and then to strive with the way once more, forber like, she thought, it may be fair to-morrow, and the sun shining. And as she was very weary with tramping the waste all day, she fell asleep at once, and slept the short night through.

**B**UT when she awoke, and saw what the new day was, her heart fell indeed, for now was she encompassed and shut in with a thick dark mist (though it seemed to be broad day), so that had there been aught to see she would not have seen it her own length away from her. So there she stood, hanging her head, and striving to think; but the master thought of death drawing nigh scattered all other thoughts, or made them dim and feeble.

**L**ONG she stood there; but suddenly something came into her mind. She set her hand to the fair-broidered pouch which hung from Viridis' loin-girdle, and drew out thence flint and steel & tinder, which matters, forsooth, had served her before in the boat to make fire withal. Then she set her hand to her head, and drew forth the tress of hair which Babun-



dia had given her, and which was coiled up in the crown of her own abundant locks which decked her so gloriously; she drew two hairs from the said tress, and held them between her lips while she did up the tress in its place again, & then, pale & trembling, fell to striking a light, & when she had the tinder burning, she cried out: O wood/mother, wood/mother! How then may we meet again as thou didst promise me, if I die here in this empty waste? O wood/mother, if thou mightest but come hither for my deliverance!

**W**HEN she burned the hairs one after another, and stood waiting, but nought befell a great while, & her heart sickened, and there she stood like a stone.

**B**UT in a while, lo! there came as it were a shadow amidst the mist, or rather lying thereon, faint and colourless, and it was of the shape of the wood/mother, with girt/up gown and bow in hand. Birdalone cried aloud with joy, and hastened toward the semblance, but came to it no nigher, and still she went, & the semblance still escaped her, and she followed on & on; and this lasted long, & faster & faster must she follow lest it vanish, and she gathered her

skirts into her girdle, and fell to running fleet/foot after the fleeing shadow, which she loved dearly even amidst the jaws of death; & all her fleetness of foot had Birdalone to put forth in following up the chase; but even to die in the pain would she not miss that dear shadow.

**B**UT suddenly, as she ran, the mist was all gone from before her, the sun shone hot & cloudless; there was no shadow or shape of Habundia there, nought but the blue lake and the ugly lip of that hideous desert, with the Sending Boat lying a half score yards from her feet; and behind her stood up, as it were a wall, the mist from out of which she had come.

**F**OR SOOTH Birdalone was too breathless to cry out her joy, but her heart went nigh to breaking therewith, & lovely indeed to her was the rippled water and the blue sky; & she knew that her wood/mother had sped a sending to her help, & she fell a/weeping where she stood, for love of her wise mother, and for longing to behold her: she stretched out her arms to the north quarter, and said blessings on her in a voice faint for weariness. Then she laid her down on the desert, and rested her with sleep, despite the



hot sun, and when she awoke, some three hours thereafter, all was as before, save that the sky had now some light flying clouds, and still was the wall of mist behind her. Wherefore she deemed she had yet time, & the blue rippling water wooed her much, besweated limbs; so she did off her raiment & took

the water, and became happy and unweary therein. Then she landed and stood in the sun to dry her, and so, strengthened with that refreshing, clad her, and went aboard and did the due rites, & sped over the waters, and had soon lost sight of that ugly blotch on the fair face of the Great Water.

Part II. Of  
the Wondrous Isles

Here ends the Second Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the Wondrous Isles, and begins the Third Part of the said tale, which is called Of the Castle of the Quest. ❀❀



THE WATER OF THE WONDROUS ISLES  
THE THIRD PART: OF THE CASTLE OF THE QUEST.

Chapter I. Birdalone comes  
to the Castle of the Quest.



WAS THE day to Birdalone  
save for her thoughts, and she  
slept not a good while of the  
night. When she awoke in the  
morning there was no land be-  
fore her, and she began to fear  
somewhat that so it might be  
many days, and that she might  
have to fare the water landless,  
& perchance till she starved for  
hunger; for now was there but  
little victual left of that which  
the kind Viridis had given her.  
So she wore the day somewhat  
uneasily, and by then night fell  
had eaten but little; yet was  
that little the last crumb and  
gobbet of her store. Where-  
fore it is no wonder though  
she were dismayed when she  
awoke early on the morrow, &  
beheld nought before her save

the landless water.

**B**UT ABOUT noon she  
deemed she saw a little  
cloud in the offing that  
moved not as the other clouds,  
and she watched it closely at  
first, and it changed not any  
the more, and she grew weary  
of watching it and strove to  
sleep, turning her head to the  
after part of her ferry; & thus  
betwixt sleeping and waking  
she wore away three hours:  
then she stood up and looked  
ahead, and lo, the white cloud  
had taken shape, & was a white  
castle far away (for the day  
was exceeding clear), sitting,  
as it seemed, on the very face  
of the water. The boat sped on  
swiftly thitherward, so that  
it was not right long ere Bird-  
alone beheld the green shore  
on either side of the said cas-  
tle, and at last, three hours be-  
fore sunset, she was drawing  
nigh thereto, and beheld it all  
clearly, what it was.

**I**T was brand new, and  
was fair enough, build-  
ed part of stone & lime,  
part of framed work, but was  
but middling big. As she drew  
nigher yet, she saw that there  
were folk on the walls of it, &  
they seemed to see her, for a  
horn was winded from the bat-  
tlement, & folk were running  
together to somewhither.



or mine errand will come to nought after all.

**W**HEREWITH came another man down the stair, and stood by the old knight and plucked his sleeve, & fell to talk with him softly. This man was by his habit a religious, and was a younger man than the others, it might be of five and thirty winters, and he was fair of favour. While they spake together Birdalone sat her down again, & was well nigh spent.

**L**ast the old man spake: Damsel, he said, we deem we may suffer thee to enter the castle since thy need is so great, and have a meal's meat at our hands, & yet save our oath, if thou depart thence by the landward gate before sunset. Will this serve thee? fair sir, said Birdalone, it will save my life and mine errand; I may say no more words for my faintness, else would I thank thee.

**S**HE stood up on her feet, and the old man at arms reached out his hand to her, and she took it & came her ways up the stair, but found herself but feeble. But the priest (forsooth he was chaplain of the castle) helped her on the other side. But when she stood on the level stones by the water gate, she turned

to the old man and said: One thing I will ask of thee, Is this place one of the Wondrous Isles? The elder shook his head. We know not the Wondrous Isles, said he; this castle is builded on the mainland. Her face flushed for joy at the word, and she said: One thing I will crave of thee, to wit, that thou wilt leave my barge lying here untouched till thy masters come back, & wilt give command that none meddle therewith.

**H**E would have answered, but the priest brake in, and said: This will he do, lady, & he is the castellan, and moreover he will swear to obey thee herein. And therewith he drew forth a cross with God nailed thereon, & the castellan swore on it with a good will.

**W**HEN the priest drew Birdalone on, & between them they brought her into the great hall, and set her down in a chair and propped her with cushions. And when she was thus at rest, she began to weep somewhat, & the castellan and the priest stood by and comforted her; for them seemed, despite her grief, that she had brought the sun into their house.





**N**EXT WERE victual brought unto her of broth and venison, and good wine and cates & strawberries; & she was not so famished but she might eat and drink with a good will. But when she was done, & had rested a little, the castellan stood up and said: Lady, the sun is gone off the western windows now, & I must save mine oath; but ere thou depart, I were fain to hear thy voice giving me pardon for my evil cheer and the thrusting of thee forth. And therewith he put one knee to the ground, & took her hand and kissed it. But Birdalone was grown merry again, & she laughed & said: What pardon thou canst have of me, kind knight, thou hast; but now methinks thou makest overmuch of me, because I am the only woman who hath come into thy castle. I am but a simple maiden, though mine errand be not little.

**F**OR SOOTH she wondered that the stark & gruff old man was so changed to her in little space; for nought she knew as yet how the sight of her cast a hot gleed of love into the hearts of them who beheld her.

**N**OW Birdalone arose; but the castellan knelt at her feet, & kissed her hand

again, & again, and yet again. Then he said: Thou art gracious indeed. But methinks the father here will lead thee out a gates; for he may show thee a lair, wherein thou shalt be safe enough to night; and to morrow may bring new tidings.

**S**O the priest made obeisance to her and led her down the hall, & the castellan's eyes were following them till the screen hid them. The priest left her in the hall-porch a while, & went into the buttery, and came back with a basket of meat and drink, and they went forth at the great gate together, & there was the last of the sun before them.

**Chapter II. Of Birdalone, and how she rested the night through in a bower without the Castle of the Quest.**

**I**N a fair smooth road went they a midst of a goodly meadow land, wherein were little copses here & there. When they were fairly out of the gate, the priest reached for Birdalone's hand, and she let him take it and lead her along thereby, thinking no evil; but he might scarce speak for a while, so great was the stir in his heart at the touch of her bare flesh. But Birdalone

**Part III. Of the Castle of the Quest**





spake and said: Thou art kind, father, to lead me on my way thus.

**H**E answered in a husky voice with his eyes cast down, and forsooth set on the feet of her: It is not far that I am leading thee; there is a broken cot by the copse at the turn of the road yonder, where thou mayst abide to-night; it is better lodging than none, evil as it is for such an one as thou. Birdalone laughed: Worse have I had, said she, than would be the copse without the cot. And she thought withal of the prison in the Isle of Increase Unsought.

**H**ER voice seemed so cheery & friendly to the priest, that he shook off somewhat the moodiness of his desire, and looked up & said: I shall tell thee, lady, that I suppose thou hast more errand with my lords than to crave lodging of them despite the custom of the castle. Nay, I have an inkling of what thine errand may be, whereof more anon; but now shall I tell thee what is best for thee to do so as to have speech of them the soonest. They have gone forth with some of our lads to gather venison, or it may be beeves and muttons for our victualing, and somewhat of battle may they have had on the way,

for ill neighbours have we. But if they come back unfoughten they will be wending this road, and must needs pass by thy copse-side; & if thou be sleeping the noise of them will full surely awaken thee. Then all thou hast to do is to come forth and stand in the way before them, that they may see thee; and when once they have seen thee, how may they pass thee by unspoken with?

**T**HANK thee heartily for thy rede, said Birdalone; but I would ask thee two things: first, what is the name of the castle behind us? & second, why have ye the custom of shutting the door upon women? Said the priest: The castle is called in this country-side, the White Ward by the Water; but within there we call it the Castle of the Quest; and thus is it called because my lords are seeking their loves whom they have lost; and they have sworn an oath that no woman shall enter therein till their own loves have trodden its floors.

**R**OSE the heart of Birdalone at that word, and she deemed indeed that she was come thither whereas her she-friends would have had her. The priest beheld her and saw how her beauty was eked by that gladness, & he scarce



knew how to contain himself, & might speak no word awhile; then he said: Hearken further concerning thy matter; if my lords be tarried, and come not by matin-song, then I doubt not but the castellan will send folk to see to thee. He looked down therewith and said: I will come to thee myself, and will bring the men-at-arms, if need be. But sometime to-morrow morning my lords will come, save mischief hath betid, which God forbid. And he crossed himself; then he looked up & full in her face, and said: But keep thine heart up; for whatsoever may betide, thou shalt not be left uncared for.

**S**HELD Birdalone: I see of thee that thou art become my good friend, and it rejoiceth my heart; I shall be well at ease to-night in thy cot, and to-morrow morn I shall be valiant to do thy bidding.

**T**HE sweetness of her speech so overcame him, that he but looked confusedly on her, as if he scarce heard her; & they went on together without more words, till he said: Here are we at the cot, and I will show thee thy chamber. So he led her to a little thatched bower, built with walls of wattle-work daubed with clay, which stood without the remnant of the cot: it was

clean and dry, for the roof was weather-tight; but there was nought in it at all save a heap of bracken in a corner.

**H**ERE stood the priest, still holding Birdalone's hand, and spake not, but looked about, yet always covertly on Birdalone; but in a while he let go her hand, and seemed to wake up, and said: This it is; a sorry place enough, were it even for a gangrel body. Even so am I, quoth she laughing; & thou mayest look to it, that herein I shall rest full happily. Then he gave her a horn, drawing it from out of the basket of victual, which he now set down on the ground; and he said: If thou shouldst deem thee hard bestead, then wind this horn, and we shall know its voice up there & come to help thee. Now I give thee good-night.

**S**HE thanked him sweetly, and he went slowly out of the bower, but was scarce gone ere he came back again, & said: One thing I may perchance tell thee without drawing thine anger on my head; to wit, that I it was who said to the castellan that he should take thee in. Wilt thou say aught to this? She said: I will thank thee again & again; for it was the saving of my life and mine errand. And clearer



Part III. Of  
the Castle of  
the Quest

is it now than ever that thou art a good friend unto me.

**S**he looked on him and caressed him with kind eyes, she saw that his brow was knit, and his face troubled, and she said to him: What ails thee? art thou wroth with me in any wise? **O** no, said he; how should I be wroth with thee! But there is a thing I would ask of thee. **Y**ea, and what? said she. **H**e said: Nay, I may not, I may not. It shall be for to-morrow, or another day. **H**e spake it looking down, and in a broken voice; and she wondered somewhat at him, but not much, deeming that he was troubled by something which had nought to do with her, & which he might refrain from thinking of, even before a stranger.

**A**t presently he caught her hand and kissed it, & bade her good-night again, & then went hastily out of the bower; and when he was well without, he muttered, but not so as she might hear him: Durst I have asked her, she would have suffered me to kiss her cheek. Alas! fool that I was!

**B**IRDALONE turned then to her bracken bed, and found it sweet and clean; and she was at rest and peace in her mind, albeit her body was exceeding weary. She

felt happy in the little lonely cot, and her heart had gone out to the sweet meadow-land, & she loved it after all the trouble of the water; and her seemed that even now, in the dusk a-growing into dark, it loved and caressed her. So she laid her down, nor unclad herself at all, lest she should have to arise on a sudden, and show those tokens of the three damsels on her body.

**A**LITTLE while she lay there happily, hearkening the voices of the nightingales in the brake, and then she fell into a dreamless sleep, unbroken till the short night passed into day.

Chapter III. How Birdalone dight her for meeting the Champions of the Quest.

**I**T was the birds beginning their first song once more that awakened Birdalone before the sun was up; but she had no will to stir a while, whereas she felt so happy and restful; & that all the more when she remembered where she was, and told herself that her errand was now like to be accomplished; & she thought of her friends whom she had left on the Isle of Increase Unsought, and blessed them for their kindness, and





the love of them was sweet to her heart, and amidst such thoughts she fell asleep again.

**W**HEN she awoke there, after there was a flood of sunshine lying on the meadows, and she sprang up in haste lest she had overslept herself, but when she was come out of the bower, she soon saw that the sunbeams lay low on the land, and that it was yet the first hour of the sun; so she turned about, and went through the copse to the other side, and lo! a little clear stream running before her. So she spake to herself softly & said: fie on it! I was weary with the boat and my hunger last night, and I went to bed unwashen; and this morn I am weary for the foulness of my unwashen body. Unseemly it were to me to show myself sluttish before these lords; let me find time for a bath at least.

**W**HEREWITH she went swiftly down to the water, undoing her girdle & laces by the way. She came to the stream & found it running between blue/flowering mouse/ear & rushes, into a pool which deepened from a sandy shallow: so anon her borrowed raiment was lying on the grassy lip of the water, and she was swimming and disporting her

h1

in the pool, with her hair loose & wavering over her white back like some tress of the water-weed. Therein she durst not tarry long, but came hurrying out on to the grass, and clad herself in haste. But she covered not her shoulders with the golden gown, nor laced it over her bosom, so that Viridis' smock might be the plainer to see: which smock was noteworthy, for the breast thereof was broidered with green boughs, whence brake forth little flames of fire, & all so daintily wrought as if the faery had done it.

**W**ITHAL she gathered up the gown in- to her girdle, and let the skirt/hem clear her ankles, so that Htra's shoon might be seen at once; & they were daintily dight with window/work and broiderery of gold & green stones, & blue. And forsooth it was little likely that any man should stand before her a minute ere his eyes would seek to her feet and ankles, so clean & kindly as they were fashioned.

**W**HEREWITH she set her hands to her head & trussed up her hair, & bound it closely to her head, so that it might hide no whit of her borrowed attire.



**W**HERE SHE stood, with Hurea's collar lying on her dear neck, & Viridis' girdle about her shapen loins, and Atra's ring on her lovesome finger. And she hearkened a while & heard no sound of coming men; & there came in to her heart a gentle fear, which grieved her not. Over the water before her hung an eglantine bush, with its many roses either budding or but just out. Birdalone stole thither softly, and said, smiling: Nay, if I have nothing that is mine on my body, I will take this of the maiden's bath & make it mine.

And therewith she plucked a spray of the bush & turned it into a garland for her head; & then when she had stood shyly a while in that same place, she turned and went swiftly to her place beside her night/harbour, & stood there hearkening with that sweet fear growing upon her, her colour coming & going, & her heart beating fast.

**N**OW THE thought of that kind priest who had led her to the bower last night came into her mind, and she wondered why he had been so troubled. And she thought, would those others be so kind to her, or would they deem her an impudent wench or a foolish, or pass her by?

**F**OR SOOTH if any had passed her by it had been not that he should miss seeing her beauty, but that he should fear it, and deem her some goddess of the Gentiles of old time come before him for his ensnaring.

Chapter IV. And now she meets the Champions.

**N**OW, as she stood hearkening, she deemed she heard something that was not so loud as the song of the blackbird in the brake, but further off and longer voiced: and again she hearkened heedfully, and the sound came again, & she deemed now that it was the voice of an horn. But the third time of her hearing it she knew that it was nought less; and at last it grew nigher, and there was mingled with it the sound of men shouting & the lowing of neat.

**W**HEN SHE stepped down to the very edge of the way, & now she saw the riding/reek go up into the clear air, and she said: Now are they coming without fail, and I must pluck up a heart; for surely these dear friends of my friends shall neither harm a poor maiden nor scorn her.



**S**OON came the leading  
beasts from out of the  
dust / cloud, & behind  
them was the glitter of spear/  
heads; & then presently was  
a herd of neat shambling and  
jostling along the road, and af/  
ter them a score or so of spear/  
men in jack and sallet, who, for/  
sooth, turned to look on Bird/  
alone as they passed by, and  
spake here and there a word or  
two, laughing and pointing to  
her, but stayed not; & all went  
on straight to the castle.

**T**HEREAFTER was a  
void, & then came rid-  
ing leisurely another  
score of weaponed men, where/  
of some in white armour; and  
amongst them were five sump/  
ter horses laden with carcasses  
of venison. And all these also  
went by & stayed not, though  
the most of them gazed on  
Birdalone hard enough.

**L**AST OF ALL came  
three knights riding,  
one with a gold surcoat  
over his armour, and thereon a  
cleft heart of red; the second  
with a green surcoat, & on the  
same a chief of silver with green  
boughs thereon, their ends a-  
flaming; but the third bore a  
black surcoat besprinkled with  
silver tears. And all these  
three rode bare-headed, save  
that the Black Knight bore an  
oak-wreath on the head.

h 2

**N**OW did Birdalone take  
to her valiancy, and she  
stepped out into the  
road till she was but a ten pa-  
ces from those men, who rein-  
ed up when they beheld her; &  
she said in a clear voice: Abide,  
warriors! for if ye be what I  
deem you, I have an errand un/  
to you.

**S**CARCE were the words  
out of her mouth, ere all  
three had leapt off their  
horses, & the Golden Knight  
came up to her, & laid his hand  
upon her side, & spake eagerly  
and said: Where is she, whence  
thou gattest this gown of  
good web? And thou, said  
she, art thou Baudoin the Gol-  
den Knight? But he set his  
hand to the collar on her neck,  
and touched her skin withal,  
and said: This, was she alive  
when thou camest by it? She  
said: If thou be Baudoin  
the Golden Knight, I have an  
errand to thee. I am he, said  
the knight; O tell me, tell me,  
is she dead? Said Birdalone:  
Aurea was alive when last I  
saw her, & mine errand is from  
her to thee, if thou be verily her  
lover. Now with this word I  
pray thee to be content a while,  
said she, smiling kindly upon  
him, for needs must I domine  
errand in such wise as I was  
bidden. And thou seest also  
that thy friends would have a



word of me.

**H**ORSOOTH, they were thrusting in on her, and the Green Knight gat a hold of her left wrist in his left hand, and his right was on her shoulder, and his bright face close to her bosom whereon lay Viridis' smock; & thereat she shrank aback somewhat, but said: Sir, it is sooth that the smock is for thee when thou hast answered me a question or two. Meanwhile I pray thee forbear a little; for, as I trow, all is well, & thou shalt see my dear friend Viridis again.

**H**E withdrew him a little, flushed & shamefaced. He was a young man exceeding beauteous, clear skinned and grey-eyed, with curly golden hair, and he bore his armour as though it were silken cloth. Birdalone looked upon him kindly though shyly, and was glad to the heart's root that Viridis had so lovely a man to her darling. As for the Golden Knight, as Birdalone might see now, he stood a little aloof; he was a very goodly man of some five and thirty winters; tall he was, broad-shouldered and thin-flanked, black-haired, with somewhat heavy eyebrows, & fierce hawk-eyes; a man terrible of aspect, when one first beheld him.

**N**OW WHEN the Black Squire had hearkened Birdalone's word concerning Viridis, he threw himself down on the ground before her, and fell to kissing her feet; or, if you will, Atra's shoon which covered them. When she drew back a little, he rose on one knee and looked up at her with an eager face, & she said: To thee also I have an errand from Atra, thy speech-friend, if thou be Arthur the Black Squire. He spake not, but still gazed on her till she reddened. She knew not whether to deem him less goodly than the other twain. He also was a young man of not over five and twenty years, slim and lithe, with much brown hair; his face tanned so dark that his eyes gleamed light from amidst it; his chin was round and cloven, his mouth & nose excellently fashioned; little hair he had upon his face, his cheeks were somewhat more hollow than round. Birdalone noted of his bare hands, which were as brown as his face, that they were very trim and shapely.

**N**OW he rose to his feet, and the three stood together and gazed on her; as how might they do otherwise? Birdalone hung her head, and knew not what next to do or say. But she thought within



herself, would these threemen have been as kind to her as her three friends of the Isle, had she happened on them in like case as she was that time? And she settled with herself that they would have been no less kind.

**N**OW spake the Golden Knight, and said: Will the kind maiden do her errand to us here and now? for we be eager & worn with trouble. Birdalone looked adown and was somewhat confused. fair sirs, said she, I will do your will herein.

**B**UT the Black Squire looked on her and saw that she was troubled, and he said: Your pardon, fair fellows, but is it not so that we have an house somewhat anigh, not ill purveyed of many things? By your leave I would entreat this kind and dear lady to honour us so much as to enter the Castle of the Quest with us, & abide there so long as she will; & therein may she tell us all her errand at her leisure; and already we may see and know, that it may not be aught save a joyous one.

**W**HEN spake the Golden Knight, and said: I will ask the lady to pardon me, and will now join my prayer to thine, brother, that she come home with us. Lady, he

h 3

said, wilt thou not pardon me, that in the eager desire to hear tidings of my speech, friend I forgot all else?

**A**ND therewithal he knelt before her, and took her hand and kissed it; and for all his fierce eyes & his warrior's mien, she deemed him kind & friendly. Then needs must the Green Knight kneel and kiss also, though he had no pardon to crave; but a fair sweet lad she thought him, & again her heart swelled with joy to think that her friend Viridis had so dear a speech-friend to long for her.

**T**HEN came the turn of the Black Squire, and by then were the two others turned away a little toward their horses; & he knelt down on both knees before Birdalone and took her right arm above the wrist, & looked at the hand and kissed it as if it were a relic, but stood not up; & she stood bending over him, and a new sweetness entered into her, the like of which she had never felt. But as for the Black Squire, it seemed that one hand would not suffice him, and he took her left hand and fell to kissing it, and then both the hands together all over the backs of them, and then the palms thereof, and he buried his face in the two



Part III. Of  
the Castle of  
the Quest

palms, and held them to his cheeks; & the dear hands suffered it all, and consented to the embracing of his cheeks. But Birdalone deemed that this was the kindest & sweetest of the three kind warriors, and sorry she was when he let go her hands and stood up.

**H**IS face was flushed, but his speech calm, as he spake so that the other knights might hear him: Now will we straight to the castle, lady, & we will ask thee which of us three thou wilt honour by riding his horse there; shall it be Baudoin's bright bay, or Hugh's dapple-grey, or my red roan? And therewith he took her by the hand and led her toward the horses. But she laughed, & turning a little, pointed to the castle, and said: Nay, sweet lords, but I will fare afoot, such a little way as it is, and I all unwont to the saddle.

**S**PAKE the Green Knight: If that be so, lady, then shall we three walk afoot with thee. Nay, nay, she said; I have nought to carry but myself, but ye have your byrnie and your other armour, which were heavy for you to drag on afoot, even a little way. Moreover, I were fain to see you mount your horses, and ride and run about the meadow with tossing manes & flashing swords,

while I trudge quietly toward the gate; for such things, and so beauteous, are all new unto me, as ye shall learn presently when I tell you my story. Do so much to pleasure me, kind knights.

**T**HE tall Baudoin nodded to her, smiling kindly, as much as to say that he thought well of her desire. But the Green Knight ran to his horse with a glad shout, & anon was in the saddle with his bright sword in his fist; then he spurred, and went a gallop hither & thither over the mead, making his horse turn short & bound, & playing many tricks of the tilt-yard, and crying, A Hugh, A Hugh, for the Green Gown! The Golden Knight was slower & more staid, but in manywise he showed his wardeness, riding after Hugh as if he would fall on him, & staying his way just as it became perilous; & he cried, Baudoin, Baudoin, for Gold-sleeves! And all this seemed to Birdalone both terrible and lovely.

**B**UT FOR THE Black Squire, he was slow to let loose Birdalone's hand; but thereafter he was speedy to vault into his saddle, & he made courses over the meadow, but ever came back to Birdalone as she went her ways, riding round and round



her, & tossing his sword into the air the while and catching it as it fell. And no less lovely did this seem to Birdalone, & she smiled on him and waved her hand to him.

**G**OING slowly in this wise, she came at last to the castle gate; & now had all those three out-gone her & stood afoot in the wicket to welcome her, & the Golden Knight, who was the oldest of the three, was the speaker of the welcome.

**O**VER the threshold of the Castle of the Quest went Birdalone's feet then, & she was grown so happy as she had never deemed she should be all her life long.

**Chapter V. Birdalone has true tokens from the Champions of the Quest.**

**W**HEN they brought Birdalone into a very fair chamber, where was presently every thing she might need, save a tiring woman, which, forsooth, was no lack unto her, since never had she had any to help her array her body. So she did what she might to make herself the trimmer; and in a while came two fair swains of service, who brought her in all honour into the great hall, where were the three lords a-

biding her. There were they served well & plenteously, and fair was the converse between them; and in especial was the talk of Arthur the Black Squire goodly and wise and cheery, & well-measured; and the Green Knight's speech merry & kind, as of an happy child; and the Golden Knight spake ever free & kindly, though not of many words was he. And who was happy if Birdalone were not?

**B**UT when they had eaten and washed their hands, then spake the Golden Knight: Dear maiden, now are we ready to hear the innermost of thine errand, all we together, if thou wilt.

**B**IRDALONE smiled & reddened withal, as she said: fair lords, I doubt not but ye are even they unto whom I was sent, but they who sent me, & who saved me from death & worse, bade me do mine errand in such a way, that I should speak with each one of you privily, & that for a token each should tell me a thing known but to him and his love, and to me unto whom she hath told it. Now am I all ready to do mine errand thus, and no other wise.

**L**AUGHED they now, and were merry, & the Green Knight blushed like a maiden; forsooth like to



his very speech, friend Viridis. But the Black Squire said: fair fellows, get we all into the pleasance this fair morn, & sit there on the grass, & our sweet lady shall take us one after other into the plashed alley, & have the tokens of us.

**G**VEN so they did, and went into the pleasance, which was a goodly little garth south of the castle, grassed, & set thick with roses and lilies and gillyflowers, and other fragrant flowers. There then they sat on the daisied greensward, the three lords together, and Birdalone over against them, and they three watched her beauty and loveliness and wondered thereat.

**B**UT she said: Now it comes to the very point of mine errand; wherefore I bid thee, Baudoin the Golden Knight, to come apart with me & answer to my questions, so that I may know surely that I am doing mine errand aright.

**T**HERewith she arose to her feet, and he also, and he led her into the plashed alley, out of earshot of the other twain, who lay up on the grass biding their turn with but little patience.

**B**UT WHEN those two were in the deep shade of the alley, Birdalone

said: Thou must know, Sir Golden Knight, that the three lovers of you three were good to me in my need, and clad my nakedness from their very bodies, but this raiment they lent me, and gave it not; for they bade me give it up piece by piece each unto the one who had given it to his love, whom I should know by the token that he should tell truly the tale of its giving. Now, fair sir, I know well, for I have been told, what was the tale of thy giving this golden gown to Hurea, & that same tale shalt thou now tell me, and if thou tell it aright, then is the gown thine. Begin, then, without more tarrying.

**H**ADY, SAID the knight, thus it was: Hurea, my sweetling, abode with an ancient dame, a kinswoman of hers, who was but scantily kind to her; and on a day when we had met privily, and were talking together, my love lamented the niggard ways of her said kinswoman, and told how she had no goodly gown to make her fair when feasts were toward; but I laughed at her, and told her that so clad as she was (and her attire was verily but simple) she was fairer than any other; and then, as



ye may wot, there was kissing & clipping between us; but at last, as from the first I meant it, I promised her I would purvey her such a gown as no lady should go with a better in all the country-side; but I said that in return I must have the gown she went in then, which had so long embraced her body and been strained so close to her body and her sides, & was as it were a part of her. That she promised me with kisses, and I went away as merry as a bird. Straightway thereafter I did do make this very gown, which thou bearest, dear maiden, and on the appointed day she came out to me unto the same place clad as she was before; but the new gown I had with me. Hard by our trysting-place was a hazel-copse thick enow, for it was midsummer, & she said she would go there into & shift gowns, & bear me out thence the gift of the old clout (so she called it, laughing merrily). But I said: Nay, I would go into the copse with her to guard her from evil things, beasts or men; & withal to see her do off the old gown, that I might know before I wedded her whatlike stuffing and padding went to make the grace of her flanks & her hips. And again was she merry, and she said: Come, then, thou

Thomas unbelieving, and see the side of me. So we went into that cover together, and she did off her gown before mine eyes, and stood there in her white coat with her arms bare, & her shoulders & bosom little covered, and she was as lovely as a woman of the faery. Then I made no prayer unto her for leave, but took my arms about her, and kissed her arms & shoulders & bosom all she would suffer me, for I was mad with love of her naked flesh. Then she did on this golden gown, and departed when she had given me the old clout aforesaid, and I went away with it, scarce feeling the ground beneath my feet; and I set the dear gown in a fair little coffer, and here in this castle I have it now, and many times I take it forth & kiss it and lay my head upon it. Now this is a simple tale, lady, and I am ashamed that I have made it so long for thee. And yet I know not; for thou seemest to me so kind and loving and true, that I am fain that thou shouldest know how sorely I love thy friend & mine.

**B**IRDALONE deemed Baudoin a good man indeed, and the tears came into her eyes as she answered & said: True is thy tale, dear friend, and I have deemed



it rather short than long. I see well that thou art Hurea's very lover; and it joys me to think that thou, O terrible champion, art yet so tender and true. Now is the golden gown thine, but I will pray thee to lend it me a little longer. But this jewel shalt thou have from my neck here and now; and thou knowest whence it came, thine Hurea's neck forsooth.

**TH**EREWITH she be- took it him, & he held it in his hand doubtfully a while, and then he said: Dear maiden, I thank thee, but I will take this collar, and lay it in my casket, & be glad thereof; and that the more, as, now I look on thee, I see nought missing from the loveliness of thine own neck.

**W**O to thy fellows now, said Birdalone, & send me the Green Knight, the goodly lad. So went he, & presently came Hugh thither merry and smiling, and said: Thou hast been long about the first token, sweet mistress; I fear me I shall make no such goodly story as hath Baudoin. And yet, said she, Viridis' tale was the longest of all. I doubt thou mayst fail in the token. And she laughed; & he no less, and took her by the shoulders, & kissed her cheek frankly, and in such wise that

she feared him nought, & said: Now that is to pay thee for thy gibe; what wouldst thou have of me? Said Birdalone: I would have thee tell me how it was that Viridis came by the smock with the green boughs aflame, which now I bear upon me.

**L**ISTEN, darling lady, said he: On a day Viridis and I were alone in the meadow, & so happy, that we might find nought to do save to fall into strife together; and I said it to her, that she loved me not as well as I loved her; which, by the way, was no less than a lie, for of all things living she is the most loving, and when we be together she knoweth not how to make enough of me. Well, we fell to wrangling after the manner of lovers, till I, having nothing else to say, bade her remember that since we had first come to love each other, I had given her many things, & she had given me nothing. Lo, then my dear, what an ill-conditioned lad was I. But, little as I meant it, she took it all amiss, and leapt up, and fell to running back home over the meadow; thou mayst think how easily I caught up with her, & how little loth she was to be dragged back by the



shoulders. So when we were sitting again under the thorn-bush, we had well-nigh done our wrangle; but she unlaced her gown & drew down a corner thereof, to show me her shoulder, how I had hurt it e'en now; and forsooth some little mark there was on the rose-leaf skin; and that made good time for kissing again, as ye may well wot. Then she said unto me: And how may I, a poor damsel, give thee gifts, & my kindred all greedy about me? Yet would I give thee a gift, such as I may, if I but knew what thou wouldst take. Now my heart was afire with that kissing of her shoulder, and I said that I would have that very same smock from her body, which then she bore, and that thereof I should deem that I had a rich gift indeed. What! said she, and wouldst thou have it here and now? And indeed I think she would have done it off her that minute had I pressed her, but I lacked the boldness thereto; and I said: Nay, but would she bring it unto me the next time we met; and forsooth she brought it folded in a piece of green silk, and dearly have I loved it & kissed it sithence. But as for thy smock, I had it fairly wrought & embroidered with the flaming green branches, as thou seest it, and

I gave it to her; but not on the day when she gave me the gift; for the new one was long about doing. Now this is all the tale, & how Viridis might eke it into a long one, I wot not. But let it be, and tell me, have I won thy smock, or lost it?

**B**IRDALONE laughed on him and said: Well, at least thou shalt have it as a gift; & thou mayst call it given either by Viridis or me, which thou wilt. But with it goes another gift, which thou mayst have at once since thou must lend me the smock a little longer. And therewith she betook him her girdle, and he kissed it, but said: Nay, fair lady, this befitteth well the loveliness of thy body that thou shouldst wear it; & well it befitteth the truth & love of thy soul to ward it for me; I pray thee to keep it. Nevertheless, she said, I will not have it, for it goeth with mine errand that thou take it of me. Now I bid thee depart, and send hither thy fellow, the Black Squire.

**W**ENT he then, & anon comes the Black Squire, & now that he was alone with Birdalone this first time, he seemed moody and downcast, all unlike the two others. He stood a little aloof



from Birdalone, & said: What wouldst thou ask of me? Her heart was somewhat chilled by his moodiness, for erst had she deemed him the kindest of the three; but she said: It is of mine errand to ask of thee concerning this foot-gear which Atra lent me until I give it unto thee, if thou be verily her lover. Said he: I was verily her lover. Birdalone said: Then canst thou tell me the manner of thy giving these fair shoon unto Atra?

**H**E said: Even so; we were walking together in this country-side and came to a ford of the river, and it was somewhat deep and took me to over the knee, so I bore her over in my arms; then we went on a little further till we must cross the river back again in another place, & there the ford was shallower, and, the day being hot, Atra must needs wade it on her own feet. So she did off hosen and shoon, and I led her by the hand, and it took her but up to mid-leg. But when we came up out of the water and were on the grass again, I craved the gift of her foot-gear for the love of her, & she gave it straightway, and fared home barefoot, for it was over the meads we were wending in early summer, and the grass was thick and soft. But there

after I did do make the fair shoon which thou hast on thy feet, & gave them to her. And, for a further token that my tale is true, I shall tell thee that the name of the first ford we waded that day is the Grey-nag's Wade, and the second is called Goat ford. This is all my tale, lady; is the token true?

**T**RUE it is, squire, said Birdalone, and was silent awhile, and he also.

Then she looked on him friendly, & said: Thou art out of heart as now, my friend. fear not, for thou shalt without doubt see thy speech-friend again. Moreover here is a ring which she set upon my finger, bidding me give it thee. And she held it out unto him.

**H**E took the ring, & said: Yea, it is best that I have it of thee, lest unluck come thereof. She saw trouble in his face, but knew not what to say to cheer him, and they stood silently facing one another for a while. Then he said: Let us back to our fellows, and talk it over, what is now to be done.

**S**O they went their ways to where lay the other two upon the green grass, & the Black Squire lay down beside them; but Birdalone stood before them & spake unto the three.



Chapter VI. How the Champions would do Birdalone to be clad anew in the Castle of the Quest.

**L**ORDS, she said, now is it clear by the tokens that mine errand is to you & none other; now therefore am I to tell you what to do to come unto your speech/friends and deliver them & bring them back hither. for this is their case, that they are in captivity in a wonder/isle of this great water, and it is called the Isle of Increase Unsought.

**S**PAKE THE Golden Knight: fair lady, we have heard before that our friends fared hence, or rather were taken hence over the water. And that is the cause why we builded this castle on the water's edge, on the very stead where was raised the pavilion, the house made for the ladies to abide therein the battle of the Champions. Since that time, moreover, many a barge & keel have we thrust out into the water, that we might accomplish the Quest whereunto we were vowed; but ever one way went our seafaring, that when we were come so far out into the water as to lose sight of land, came upon us mist, rose against us dusk &

darkness; and then a fierce driving wind that drave us back to this shore. It is but six days ago since we tried this adventure for the last time, and be-like the same shall befall us the next time we try it. Wherefore I must ask thee, lady, dost thou know any way whereby we may come to the said isle? for if thou dost, full surely we will try it, whatsoever may be the risk thereby to our bodies or our souls.

**F**ULL SURELY I do, said Birdalone; else how had I come from thence hither mine own self? And therewith she told them of the Sending Boat, what it was, and how she had come all the way by means thereof from the Isle of Increase Unsought; & they all hearkened her heedfully, & wondered both at the sorcery, and the valiant heart of her who had driven it as she would in despite of the evil. But in the end she spake and said: Lords, ye have now heard some deal of my story, even that which concerns you thereof, & which must needs be told at once: wherefore doubtless ye shall fare unto your speech/friends by this ferry in the very wise that I shall show you; unless perchance ye deem that I have been lying and making light tales to you, as, sooth to

Part III. Of the Castle of the Quest



say, I deem ye think it not.

**S**PAKE THE Golden Knight: Damsel, in all wise we trow in thee & thy tale. And God forbid that we should tarry! Go we hence this very day.

**N**EH, but hearken, said the Black Squire: Is it not a part of this damsel's errand that she should deliver to us the raiment of our friends, which now she beareth on her own body, that we may bear it back unto them?

**S**OOTH is that, said Birdalone, and ye may well wot that this may be nought but needful, whereas the said ladies be all beset by sorceries.

**S**EE ye then, fellows, said the Black Squire, it may not be to-day nor yet to-morrow that we may take the road. for ye wot that there is no woman's gear in all the castle, and we must needs send elsewhere to seek it.

**L**OOK thou, maiden, said the Golden Knight laughing, how duly this young knight thinketh of thee; whereas I, who am his elder, and should be wiser than he, am but heedless of thee. I pray thy pardon.

**M**OREOVER, said the Black Squire, there may well be wisdom in abiding; for it is to be thought


that our dear loves considered this, & knew what the time of tarrying should be, & have so dight their matter as to fit in therewith; & I may not deem it of them that they would have us array this our dear sister & theirs in unseemly wise. Nay, for that would be an ill beginning of this deal of the Quest.

**N**OW all ye said this gladly; & the Green Knight said: It were not so ill done that we should see more of our sister here ere we depart, and hear more of her tale; for meseemeth she began it ere-while but half-way. And he turned to Birdalone, and took her hand and caressed it.

**B**IRDALONE smiled on them somewhat shyly, and thanked them; but bade them spend as little time as might be on her arrayal. for, said she, though those ladies may well have reckoned on the time of the arrayal of my body, yet surely also they shall have reckoned with the eager fire of love in the hearts of you, and the haste it shall breed therein.

**A**LL pleased were they with that word of hers, but none the less sent two sergeants and a squire with led horses unto the cheaping town, a goodly and great town hight Greenford, which was some twenty





miles thence, with the errand to bring back with them a good shaper and embroideress, and sewing women, and cloth and silk and linen, and all things needful.


**A**S for jewels, each one of them was fain to give her something which he prized, and fair and rich were the gifts, though they had not been made for women. As a fair SS collar of gold, which the Golden Knight gave her, and a girdle of broad golden plates, wrought beauteously, which was the gift of the Black Squire. Albeit he did not offer to clasp it round her loins, as she deemed he would; for when the Green Knight brought his gift, a great gold ring, very ancient of fashion, he would have her turn back the sleeve from her fore-arm, that he might set his dwarf-wrought gold upon the bare flesh; neither did he refrain him from kissing it withal.

**B**UT THE messengers came back with their workwomen & stuffs early on the morrow; and now was changed all the manner of the womanless castle, & men were full merry therein.

✱Chapter VII. Of Birdalone, how she told the Champions all her tale.✱

Part III. Of the Castle of the Quest

**I**T was a matter of eight days, the making of all Birdalone's raiment, & meanwhile she was ever with the three Champions, either all three together, or one or other of them. And as to their manners with her, ever was the Golden Knight of somewhat sober demeanour, as if he were an older man than he verily was. The Green Knight was forever praising Birdalone's beauty to her face, and seemed to find it no easy matter to keep his eyes off her, and somewhat he wearied her with kisses and caresses; but a gay & sportive lad he was; and when she rebuked him for his overmuch fondness, as now & again she did, he would laugh at himself along with her; & in sooth she deemed him heart-whole, and of all truth to Viridis, and oft he would talk of her to Birdalone, and praise her darling beauty to her, and tell of his longing for his love aloof. Only, quoth he, here art thou, my sister, dwelling amongst us, & shedding thy fragrance on us, and showing to us, wilt thou, wilt thou not, as do the flowers, all the grace & loveliness of thee; & thou so tender





Part III. Of  
the Castle of  
the Quest

of heart withal, that thou must not blame me overmuch if whiles I forget that thou art my sister, and that my love is, woe's me! far away. So thou wilt pardon me, wilt thou not?

Yea, verily, said she, with a whole heart. Yet thou needest not reach out for my hand; thou hast had enough of it this morning. And she hid it, laughing, in the folds of her gown; & he laughed also, and said: Of a truth thou art good in all wise, and a young fool am I; but Viridis shall make me wiser, when we come together again. Sawest thou ever so fair a damsel? Never, she said, and surely there is none fairer in all the world. So hold thee aloof now for a while, & think of her.

As for the Black Squire, hight Arthur, Birdalone was troubled for him, & he made her somewhat sad. True it is that he came not before her again so moody and downcast as when he was giving her the token; yet she deemed that he enforced himself to seem of good cheer. Furthermore, though he sought her company ever, & that lonely with him, & would talk with her almost as one man with another, though with a certain tenderness in his voice, & looking earnestly on her the while,

yet never would he take her hand, or touch her in any wise. And true it is that she longed for the touch of his hand.

On the third day of her sojourn in the Castle of the Quest, Birdalone took heart at the much egging of her friends, as they sat all together in the meadow without the castle, to tell them all the story of her; she hid none, save concerning the wood-mother, for she deemed that her sweet friend would love her the better if she babbled not of her.

So the Champions hearkened her telling the tale in her clear lovely voice, and great was their love & pity for the poor lonely maiden. And in especial clear it was to see that they were sore moved when she told how she first came on the Sending Boat, and how the witch-wife tormented her innocent body for that guilt. Then Baudoin laid his hand upon her head, & spake: Poor child, much indeed hast thou suffered! and now I will say it, that it was for us & our loves that thou hast borne all this anguish of captivity and toil and stripes.

But Hugh leaned over to her, as she sat with her head hanging down, and kissed her cheek and said:



Yea! and I was not there to smite the head off that accursed one; and I knew nought of thee and thine anguish, as I took my light pleasure about these freemeadows. And he turned very red, and went nigh to weep.

**A**RTHUR sat still with his eyes bent down on the ground, and he said nothing; & Birdalone glanced on him wistfully ere she went on with her tale. And she went on and told closely all that had happened unto her in the crossing of the water & on the Isle of Increase Unsought, & the other Wonder Isles; and she deemed it not too much that she should tell it twice over, nor they that twice over they should hearken it.

**T**HAT same evening as Birdalone walked by herself in the castle pleasure, she saw Arthur peering about as if he were seeking someone; so she stood forth, and asked him was he seeking aught; and he said: Thee was I seeking. But she durst not ask him what he would, but stood silent & trembling before him, till he took her hand, & spake not loud but eagerly.

**A**FTER what thou hast told us to-day, I seem to know thee what thou art; and I tell thee that it is a

pain and grief to me to leave thee, yea to leave thee were it but for a minute. O I pray thee pity me for the sundering. And therewith he turned about and hastened into the castle. But Birdalone stood there with her heart beating fast & her flesh quivering, & a strange sweetness of joy took hold of her. But she said to herself that it was no wonder though she felt so happy, seeing that she had found out that, despite her fears, this one of her friends loved her no less well than the others. And then she spake it in a soft voice that she would indeed pity him for the sundering, yea, & herself also.

**N**EVERTHELESS, when they met thereafter, his demeanour to her was none otherwise than it had been; but she no longer heeded this since now she trowed in him.

**Chapter VIII. In the meanwhile of the departing of the Champions, they would pleasure Birdalone with feats of arms and games of prowess.**

**P**ASSED the days now speedily, & the three Champions did what they might for the solace of Birdalone. for they & their household showed her of arms, and



Part III. Of  
the Castle of  
the Quest

they tilted together courteously; and the sergeants stood forth, and shot in the bow before her, till she herself by their bidding took the bow in hand, and shot straighter and well-nigh as hard as the best man there, whereat they marvelled, and praised her much.

**W**HEN the young men ran afoot before her for the prize of a belt and knife, and forsooth she wotted well that were she to run against them with trussed up skirts she would bear off the prize; but she had no heart thereto, for amidst them all, & her new friendships, she had grown shamefast, & might play the wood-maiden no longer.

**Y**ET twice the Champions fared further afield with her to show her some woodcraft; yet were not very free to go far, because of the ill neighbours whereof the chaplain had told her that first night of her coming.

**A**ND in all these pastimes, whatso they were, Bird-alone bore herself well and merrily, and put from her the sorrow of the sundering, & the peril of her dear friends which grew now so near at hand.

**T**HE chaplain aforesaid, who hight Leonard, she fell in with not seldom; and he was ever meek & humble

before her; and ever withal was sorrow easy to be seen in his countenance, & trouble withal; and she knew not how to help him, save by being courteous & kind with him whenso they met; but none the more might he pluck up cheerful countenance in answer to her kindness.

**W**ITH Sir Hymeris, the grizzle-haired castellan, she foregathered also oft enough, and could not forbear some merry gibes with him concerning their first meeting, and how that she had been a burden and a terror to him; & these mocks she made him because she saw it liked him not ill to be mocked in friendly fashion; though forsooth betwixt the laughter he looked on her somewhat ruefully. And ever, ere he parted from her, he made occasion to kiss her hands; and she suffered it smiling, and was debonair to him; whereas she saw that he was of good will to her. In such wise then wore the hours and the days.

**Chapter IX.** Bird-alone cometh before the Champions in her new array.

**N**OW the time was come when Bird-alone had all her gear ready, and the women were to abide in the



castle as her serving/damsels while the Champions were away.

**S**O now in the summer eve, an hour before sun/set, Birdalone did on the richest of her new raiment, and came into the hall where sat the Three together, & Sir Hymeris with them. She was so clad, that she had on a green gown with broidered sleeves, & thereover a white cote/hardie welted with gold, and gold-embroidered; on her feet were gold shoon of window/work, pearled and gemmed; and on her head a rose garland; on her neck she bore the Golden Knight's collar; her loins were girt with the Black Squire's girdle; & on her wrist was the Green Knight's ancient gold ring; & she carried in her arms Aurea's gown & Viridis' shift and Htra's shoon.

**R**ATHER sunrise than sunset it seemed, as verily birdalone she came into the hall with bright eager eyes, & flushed cheeks, and countenance smiling with love. The men stood up all, & would come down from the dais to meet her; but she bade them go back, and sit each in his place till she stood before them.

**A**P the hall then she walked, and every step of hers seemed lovelier than the last, till she came to them and gave unto each his keepsake, & said: Champions, now is mine errand all done, save that to-morrow I must show you the manner of the Sending Boat. Now there is nought save the darkness of the coming night to hinder you from this last deal of your Quest; and it is I that have brought you to this, and have done this good unto you, if no more good I do in the world. Wherefore I pray you to love me ever, & bear me ever in your minds.

**T**HEY gazed on her, & were overcome by her loveliness and grace, and by the kindness & valiancy of her heart. Next arose the Golden Knight, Baudoin to wit, & took a cross from his breast, and held it up, and spake: Maiden, thou sayest well, & never shall we forget thee, or cease to love thee; and here I swear by God upon the Tree, that it shall be a light thing for me to die for thee, if in any need I find thee. Brethren, will ye not swear the same? And this is but thy due, maiden, for I declare unto thee, that when thou didst enter the hall e'en now, it was as if the very sun of heaven was com-

Part III. Of  
the Castle of  
the Quest



ing in unto us.

**T**HEREON the other two took the Rood and swore upon it; & Hugh was hushed and meek and sadfaced after he had sworn; but Arthur the Black Squire bowed down his head and wept, & his fellows marvelled nought thereat, neither did Birdalone; and all her body yearned toward him to solace him.

**N**OW turned Sir Baudoin to the castellan & said: Sir Hymeris, I will now swear thee to guard this lady as the apple of thine eye whiles we three be away, and therein to spare neither thyself nor others. for thou seest well what grief it would be to us if she came to any harm.

**A**ND to me also, said the castellan. And therewith he swore upon the Rood, & then came round the table, and knelt before Birdalone, and kissed her hands.

**T**HEREAFTER were they all silent a space; & then came Birdalone to the inner side of the table & sat betwixt Baudoin & Hugh. But the Black Squire took up the word & spake: Birdalone, sweet child, one thing is to be said, to wit, that it were well that thou keep within walls while we be away; or at least that thou go but a little be-


yond the castle, and never but within a half bowshot, save thou be well accompanied. for there be men of violence dwelling no great way off, reivers and rovers, who would be well pleased to take from us anything which we deem dear; besides others who would think the lifting of such a jewel good hap indeed. Sir Hymeris, have a care of the Red Knight; & if thou mightest come by a few more stout lads, to wage them, it were well.

**B**IRDALONE heeded not what the castellan answered, such a shaft of joy went to her heart when she heard that friend speak her own name in such wise as he had never done erst, and that before them all. She but murmured some yeasay to that which Arthur had spoken unto her, and then she held her peace for the sweetness of that moment.

**S**O there they sat & talked awhile in dear and pleasant converse; & Hugh fell to asking her of her life in the House under the Wood, & she answered all frankly and simply, and the more she told the dearer she seemed to them.

**T**HUS DREW night in, till folk came flock meal into the hall; for needs must be feast and banquet for





triumph of the furtherance of the Quest; & the most of men weremerry; but somewhat sober were all the three Champions, so that whoso ran might read it in their faces. As for Birdalone, she showed cheerful to all that folk which loved her & praised her; but inwardly sorrow had come home to her heart.

**Chapter X. The Champions go their ways in the Sending Boat.**

**W**HEN THE SUN was arisen on the morrow the three Champions went down to the landing place, & there was none with them; for they had given command that no man should pry into their doings. Thither to them cometh Birdalone, clad no more in her gay attire, but in a strait black coat and with unshod feet; and she looked no sorrier than she was.

**B**Y Birdalone's rede the Champions bore down in their own hands the victual & weapons and armour that they needed for the voyage; for she knew not but that the Sending Boat might take it amiss that any should touch her save the senders. And when they had done lading her, then all four stood together by the

water's edge, and Birdalone spake to her friends, & again bade them beware of the wiles of the Isle of Nothing; and again she told them of the woful images of the Isle of Kings and the Isle of Queens, & the strange folk of the Isle of the Young and the Old. Then she said: Now when ye come to the Isle of Increase Unsought, what think ye to do? Said the Green Knight: If I might rule, we should go straight up to the witch sitting in her hall, as thou toldest us, my dear, and then and there smite the head from off her. His eyes flashed and his brow knitted, & so fierce he looked that Birdalone shrank back from him; but the Black Squire smiled & said: It may come to the smiting off of heads in the end; yet must we so fashion our carving, that it avail us for the freeing of our friends; else may the witch die, and the secret of the prison/house die with her. How sayest thou, dear Birdalone?

**S**HE reddened at the carress of his voice, and answered: By my rede ye shall seek & find your speech-friends ere ye make open war upon the witch; else may her malice destroy them ere ye undo her. Her face flushed yet more as she spake again: But

**Part III. Of the Castle of the Quest.**



concerning all things, I deem that Atra may give you the best rede, when ye have met the loves; for that she knoweth more of the isle and its guiles than the others.

**Q**UOTH Baudoin: Here, in is wisdom, sweet maiden, for as guileless as thou mayst be; and so far as we may we shall follow thy rede; but all lieth in the fathom of the coming time. And now this moment is the moment of sundering & farewell.

**C**AME he then to Birdalone and took his two hands about her head, and lifted her face unto him, & kissed it kindly, as a father might kiss a daughter, & said: farewell, dear child, and take heed to the word that Arthur spake yesterday, and go not from the castle even a little way save with good and sure company.

**T**HEN came Hugh to her, & took her hand somewhat timidly; but she put up her face to him in simple wise, and he kissed either cheek of her, and said no more than: farewell, Birdalone!

**H**ASTLY came Arthur, and stood before her a little; & then he knelt down on the stones before her & kissed her feet many times,

and she shuddered and caught her breath as they felt his kisses; but neither he nor she spake a word, and he stood up and turned away at once toward the Sending Boat, & boarded her first of the three; & the others followed straightway.

**T**HEREAFTER THE Champions bared each an arm, and let blood flow thence into a bowl, & reddened stem and stern of their barge, and then all three spake the spell together thus, as Birdalone had taught them:

The red raven/wine now  
Hast thou drunk, stern & bow;  
Wake then, and awake,  
And the northern way take!  
The way of the Senders  
forth over the flood,  
for the will of the Senders  
is blent with the blood.

**W**ENT ALL as before thereafter, that the Sending Boat stirred under them, and then turned about and pointed her bows to the northward, & sped swiftly over the waters. It was a fair sunny day, with no cloud, nought save the summer haze lying on the lake far away. Birdalone stood watching the speeding of the boat, till she could see it no longer, not even as a fleck on the face of the waters. Then she turned away & went



toward her chamber, saying to herself that the sundering was easier to bear than she had deemed it would be, and that she had a many things to do that day. But when she came into her chamber, and shut the door, she looked about her on the things which had grown so familiar to her in these few latter days, and she stood watching the bright sunshine that

streamed across the floor and lay warm upon her feet; then she took three steps toward the window, & saw the lake lying all a-glitter under the sun, and her heart failed her withal, and she had no might so much as to think about her sorrow & caress it, but fell down where she was swooning on to the floor, & lay there, while all the house began to stir about her.

Part III. Of  
the Castle of  
the Quest

Here ends the Third Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the Castle of the Quest, and begins the fourth Part of the said tale, which is called Of the Days of Abiding ❀❀



THE WATER OF THE MONDROUS ISLES  
THE FOURTH PART: OF THE DAYS OF ABIDING.

Chapter I. Of Birdalone's  
grief; & of Leonard the Chap-  
lain.



CAME BIRDALONE to her-  
self, and that was but little joy  
unto her, and she yet lay still  
on the floor for a while, for she  
loathed the hour that was to  
come. Then the life stirred in  
her, and whereas she would not  
that her women should find her  
there, she stood up, & clad her-  
self somewhat more seemly; yet  
she did on her black raiment;  
and determined in her mind  
that nought would she wear  
save black unadorned while her  
friends were away.

SHE betook her now to the  
chamber where her women  
were gathered together,  
and watched them working a-  
while, but spake nought. Then  
she went her ways into the plea-  
sance, and paced the plashed

alley up and down, letting the  
tears run down from her as  
they would. Then she turned  
back into the castle, and went  
out a gates and walked over  
the meadow a little, & might  
well have gone further than  
wisdom would. But the cas-  
tellan espied her from a win-  
dow, and came hurrying out  
after her, & with many pray-  
ers for pardon, brought her  
back again, babbling to her  
by the way; but not a word  
might he get from her; and  
when he came into the hall  
with her, and, after his wont,  
knelt down to kiss her hands,  
she caught them away from  
him peevishly, and was sorry  
for it thereafter.

LONG SHE sat in the  
hall, scarce moving,  
till she heard one en-  
tering from the screen, & lo  
it was Leonard the chaplain.  
He came her way, and showed  
her rueful countenance; & pity  
of him smote her, and she re-  
membered therewith how they  
first went out of gates toge-  
ther; & at the thought thereof  
her tears brake forth again, but  
she made him a sign with her  
hand to sit down beside her, &  
he did so: & when she might  
for her weeping, she looked  
kindly on him, & he fell to talk,  
making as if he noted not her



tears and sorrow; but she answered him little, for she had shame to begin the talk concerning the Champions & their Quest, & their departure; yet might she not bring her tongue to make any speech else. But presently he took up the word, & asked her how long a while she deemed they would be away, & she answered, smiling on him for thanks, and having reckoned the days on her fingers: If all go better than well, they may be back in ten days' time. Said the chaplain: There be longer whiles of waiting in most men's lives. Yea, she said, but this is the delay at the best; it may be far longer; for how may we tell what haps may be?

**Y**EA, said Leonard, shall we then call it twenty days, or thirty? forsooth, that may be long for thee; though there be some who must needs endure hope deferred a deal longer. But it may run out longer than even thirty days, thy waiting/tide.

**S**HE answered not, & he said: Whenso the time hangs heavy on hand with thee, if thou hast will to fare abroad out of the castle, I shall be ever at hand to guide thee. Indeed, I wot that the castellan will be loth to let thee go; but he is old and straitlaced:

& yet withal he wotteth, as do we all, that there is now little peril or none were we to fare a five miles or more, whereas we are as good as at peace for the last five days with all save the Red Knight, & of him we wot that he is gone into another land with as many of his folk as be not needed for the warding of his hold.

**I** THANK THEE, said Birdalone, but it is like to be my will not to fare out/a/gates till the Champions come back home. I was glad e'en now when the castellan fetched me in again: to say sooth, fear of peril had just entered my heart when he came up with me.

**T**HE priest seemed somewhat chapfallen at her answer. He spake little more, and presently he stood up, made his obeisance, & departed.

*Chapter II. Birdalone learneth lore of the Priest. Ten days of waiting wear.*

**M**ORE that day and the next, and Birdalone fell to talking with her women, whereof were five now left; & four of them were young, the eldest scarce of thirty summers, & the fifth was a woman of sixty, both wise and kind.



Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding . . .

All these told her somewhat of their own lives when she asked them; and some withal told of folk whom they had known or heard tell of. And well pleased was Birdalone to hear thereof, and learn more of the ways of the world, & quick-witted she was at the lesson, so that she needed not to ask many questions.

**F**URTHERMORE, she took to her broidering again, & fell to doing a goodly pair of shoon for Atra, since she had worn those borrowed ones somewhat hardly. And the women wondered at her needlework, so marvellous fine as it was, and how that in little space of time were come flowers and trees, and birds and beasts, all lovely; & they said that the faery must have learned her that craft. But she laughed and reddened, and thought of the wood-mother; and, sitting there within the four walls, she longed for the oak-glades, and the wood-lawns, and for the sight of the beasts that dwelt therein.

**A**GAIN she fell in with Leonard the priest, & he asked her could she read in a book, & when she said nay, he offered to teach her that lore, and she yeasaid that joyously; & thenceforth would she have him with her

every day a good while; and an apt scholar she was, and he no ill master, and she learned her A.B.C. speedily.

**N**O it was the ninth day since the Champions were gone, and all that time she had not been out/a/gates; and after the first two days, had enforced herself to fill up her time with her work as aforesaid: but this last day she might do but little, for she could not but take it for sure that the morrow would be the day of return; nay, even she deemed that they might come in the night/tide; so that when she went to bed, though she was weary, she would wake if she might, so that it was nigh dawn ere she fell asleep.

**S**OME three hours after she woke up, and heard a sound of folk stirring in the house, and the clashing of weapons; & the heart leapt in her, and she said: They are come, they are come! Nevertheless she durst not get out of bed, lest her hope had beguiled her; and she lay awake another hour, and no tidings came to her; and then she wept herself to sleep; and when she awoke once more, she found that she must have wept sleeping, for the pillow beside her face was all wet with the tears.



**T**HE sun was high now, & his beams were cast back from the ripple of the lake, and shone wavering on the wall of the chamber, the window whereof gave on to the water. Then came a hand on the latch of the door, & she started, and her heart grieved her; but it was one of the women who opened, and came in, and Birdalone rose up sitting in her bed, and said faintly, for she could scarce speak: Is any tidings toward, Catherine? The maid said: Yes, my lady; for early after sunrise came weaponed men to the gate, and would sell us beeves; and my lord, Sir Hymeris, must needs go forth & chaffer with them, though belike they had been lifting what was neither ours, nor theirs, nor the neighbours'. Maybe Sir Hymeris looked to buy tidings from them as well as beef. Anyhow they departed when they had gotten their money & drunk a cup. And now it is said that the Red Knight hath been hurt in some fray, and keepeth his bed; wherefore the land shall have peace of him awhile. Said Birdalone: I thank thee, good Catherine; I shall lie a little longer; depart now.

**T**HE woman went her ways; & when she was gone, Birdalone wept

and sobbed, and writhed upon her bed, and found no solace to her grief. But she arose and paced the chamber, & sithence looked out of the window over the empty water, & wept again. Then she said: Yet they may come ere noon, or it may be ere evening, or perchance to-morrow morning. And she stayed her weeping, and was calmer. But still she walked the floor, and whiles looked out of window, and whiles she looked on her limbs, & felt the sleekness of her sides, and she said: O my body! how thou longest!

**B**UT AT LAST she clad herself in haste, & went stealthily from the chamber, as if she feared to meet anyone; & she stole up to the tower-top that was nighest, & looked through the door on to the leads, & saw no one there; so she went out, and stood by the battlement, & gazed long over the water, but saw neither boat nor burning mountain coming towards her.

Chapter III. Now would Birdalone ride abroad.

**A**FTER a while she came down again, and went to the women, and sat working with them a while, and so wore away two hours. Then she sent for the priest and had



Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding

her lesson of him; and when she had been at it another two hours, she bade him begin and learn her writing; and nought loth he was thereto; forsooth he had been longing to pray her to suffer him learn her, but durst not. for in such teaching needs must he sit full nigh to her, and watch her hands, & her fingers striving to shape the letters; nay, whiles must he touch her hand with his, and hold it. Wherefore now he promised himself a taste of Paradise. Withal he was full meet to learn her, whereas he was one of the best of scribes, and a fair writer full handy.

**S**O they fell to the lesson, & she became eager thereover, and learned fast, & clave to the work, while his soul was tormented with longing for her. And thus wore a three hours, and then suddenly she looked up wearily from her work, & her trouble was awake, & the longing for her speech/friend, & she gave the priest leave for that day, but suffered him to kiss her hand for wages.

**W**HEN she hurried up to the tower/top, when the afternoon was wearing into evening; and abode there a long while looking over the waters, till it began to dusk, and then came down miserably

and went to her women.

**T**HE next day was like unto this; nought betid, and she wore the hours whiles going up to the tower/top & looking over the lake, whiles broïdering amidst her maids, whiles learning her clerk's work with Sir Leonard, but ever eating her heart out with her longing.

**O**N THE third of these days she called the cassellan to her for a talk, & asked him what he thought of it, this delay of his lords' return. Quoth the greyhead: My lady, we may not wonder if they be tarried for a few days; for this is an adventure on which they have gone, & many haps betide in such tales. Now I beseech thee torment not thyself; for the time is not yet come for thee even to doubt that they have miscarried.

**H**IS WORDS solaced her much for that time, where-as she saw that he spake but the sooth; so she thanked him, & smiled upon him kindly; and he was ravished thereat, and was for kneeling before her at once & kissing her hands after his wont; but she smiled again and refrained him, and said: Nay, not yet, fair friend; that is for the departure, and I have yet a word to say unto thee: to wit, that I long to go



out/a/gates, and it will solace me and give me patience to abide the coming of my friends. for thou must know, Sir Hymeris, that I was reared amidst the woods and the meadows, with the burning of the sun, and the buffets of the wind; & now for lack of some deal of that am I waxing white & faint. And thou wouldst not have me falling sick on thine hands now, wouldst thou?

**N**HY, surely, lady, said Sir Hymeris; this very day I will ride out with thee; and two score or more of weaponed men shall ride with us for fear of mishaps. Said Birdalone, knitting her brows: Nay, knight, I need not thymen/ at/arms; I would fain go free and alone. for hast thou not heard how that the Red Knight is hurt & keepeth his bed? So what peril is there? Said Sir Hymeris: Yea, lady; but the Red Knight is not the only foe, though he be the worst: but it may well be that the story is but feigned, for the said enemy hath many wiles. And look you, kind lady, it is most like that by now he hath heard how in my poor castle is kept a jewel, a pearl of great price, that hath not its like in the world, and will encompass the stealing of it if he may.

**L**HUGHED Birdalone, and said: But how if the said jewel hath a will, and legs and feet thereto, and is ready to take the peril on her, & will wend out/a/gates if she will? What wilt thou do then, lord? Then, said the castellan, I shall fetch thee back, and, though it be a grief to me, shall have thee borne back perforce if nought else may do. for so the oath sworn to my lords compelleth me.

**A**GAIN laughed Birdalone, and said: Heark/en, whereto cometh all this kneeling & hand/kissing! But bear in mind, fair lord, how once on a time thou wouldst have me out/a/gates, would I, would I not, & now, will I, will I not, thou wouldst keep me within; so have times changed, and may happen they may change yet again. But tell me, am I mistress over my women to bid them what I will? Certes, said he, & over all of us. Said she: If then I bade them, some two or three, come with me into the meadows & woods a half day's journey for our disport, how then? for that once, said Sir Hymeris, I should bid them disobey their lady. Said Birdalone: And how if they disobeyed thee, & obeyed me? Quoth Sir Hymeris: If they bring thee back safe, they

Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding



Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding

may chance to sing to the twig/  
gen fiddle / bow, that they may  
be warned from such folly; but  
if they come back without thee,  
by All Hallows the wind of  
wrath shall sweep their heads  
off them!

**B**IRDALONE flushed  
red at his word, & was  
silent a while; then she  
said, making cheerful coun-  
tenance again: Thou art a hard  
master, lord castellan; but I  
must needs obey thee. There-  
fore I will take thy bidding, &  
ride abroad in such wise that I  
shall scare the land with an ar-  
my, since no otherwise may I  
look on the summer land. But  
to-day I will not go, nor to-  
morrow belike; but some day  
soon. And in good sooth I  
thank thee for thy heedful care  
of me, and wish I were better  
worth it. Nay, nay, thou shalt  
not kneel to me, but I to thee;  
for thou art verily the master.

**T**HERewith she rose  
from beside him, and  
knelt down before him  
& took his hand and kissed it,  
and went her ways, leaving him  
ravished with love of her. But  
now she had no scorn of him,  
but deemed, as was true, that  
he was both valiant and trusty  
and kind, and she thanked him  
in her heart as well as in words.

Chapter IV. Of Birdalone's  
faring abroad.

**I**NDEED Birda-  
lone longed on  
any terms to be  
out / a gates & to  
have some joy of  
the summer; for  
now she began to see that  
she might have to abide some  
while ere her friends should  
come to her in the Castle of  
the Quest; and she was angry  
with herself that her longing  
was thus wasting her, and she  
rebuked herself & said: Where  
is now that Birdalone who let  
but few days go by without  
some joyance of the earth and  
its creatures? she who bore  
lightly the toil of a thrall, and  
gibes and mocking & stripes?  
Surely this is grievous folly,  
that I should be worsened  
since I have come to be the  
friend of gentle ladies, & noble  
champions, and mighty war-  
riors. Had it not been better to  
have abided under the witch/  
wife's hand? for not every day  
nor most days did she tor-  
ment me. But now for many  
days there has been pain and  
grief and heart / sickness hour  
by hour; and every hour have  
I dreaded the coming of the  
next hour, till I know not how  
to bear it.



**S**O she strove with herself, & became of better heart, and set herself strongly to the learning of the clerkly lore; she gathered her wits together, and no longer looked for every day and every hour to bring about the return of the Champions, nor blamed the day and the hour because they failed therein, & in all wise she strove to get through the day unworn by vain longing.

**T**HEREFORE, on a day when three whole weeks were gone since the day of departure, she was glad when the castellan came to her and said: Lady, these two days I have had men out to spy the land, and their word goes that nought is stirring which a score of us well-armed might have cause to fear; wherefore to-morrow, if it be thy will, we shall bring thee out a gates, & so please thee, shall be in no haste to come back, but may lie out in the wild-wood one night, & come back at our leisure on the morrow of to-morrow. How sayest thou of thy pleasure herein?

**S**HE thanked him, & yeasaid it eagerly, and next morning they set forth; and Birdalone had with her three of the women, & they had sumpter/beasts with them, & tents for Birdalone and her


maids.

**S**O they rode by pleasant ways & fair meadows, and the weather was good, for it was now the first days of July, and all was as lovely as might be; & for that while Birdalone cast off all her cares, and was merry, and of many words and sweet; and all the folk rejoiced thereat, for all loved her in the Castle of the Quest, besides those one or two that loved her overmuch.

**R**ODE they thus a twelve miles or more, and then they came, as their purpose was, to the beginning of a woodland plenteous of venison, and they hunted here, and Birdalone took her part therein, and all praised her woodcraft; albeit because of her went a head or two free that had fallen else, whereas of the carle hunters were some who deemed the body of her better worth looking on than the quarry.

**N**OWSOEVER, they slew of hind and roe and other wood/cattle what they would, some deal for their supper in the wilderness, some to bear home to the castle. But when night was nigh at hand they made stay in a fair wood/lawn about which ran a clear stream, whereby they pitched the ladies' tent; and Birdalone





and hers went down into the water & washed the weariness off them; and her ladies wondered at the deftness of Birdalone's swimming; for they bathed in a pool somewhat great into which the stream widened, so that there was space enough for her therein.

**B**Y then they were washed & clad goodly in raiment which they had brought on the sumpters, the men had lighted fires and were cooking the venison, & anon there was supper & banquet in the wildwood, with drinking of wine and pleasant talk & the telling of tales and singing of minstrelsy; and so at last, when night was well worn, & out in the open meadows the eastern sky was waxing grey, then Birdalone and her ladies went to bed in their fair tents, and the men at arms lay down on the greensward under the bare heaven.

**Chapter V. Sir Hymeris sheweth Birdalone the mountains afar off.**

**W**HEN IT WAS morning & they arose, the day was as fair as yesterday, and folk were even as joyous as they had been then, all but Birdalone, and she was silent & downcast, even when

she came forth from the fresh water into the sweetness of the midsummer wood. She had dreamed in the night that she was all alone in the Castle of the Quest, & that her old mistress came to her from out of the Sending Boat to fetch her away, and brought her aboard, and stripped her of her rich garments and sat facing her, drawing ugly grimaces at her; and she thought she knew that her friends were all dead and gone, and she had none to pity or defend her. Then somehow were they two, the witch and she, amidmost of the Isle of Nothing, & the witch drew close anigh her, and was just going to whisper into her ear something of measureless horror, when she awoke; and the sun was bright outside the shaded whiteness of her tent; the shadows of the leaves were dancing on the ground of it; the morning wind was rustling the tree boughs, and the ripple of the stream was tinkling hard by. At first was Birdalone joyous that what she had awakened from was but a dream; but presently she felt the burden of her longing, & she said to herself that when they came back to the castle they should find tidings, & that she should know either that her friends were indeed dead, or that they



were come back again alive and well. And then she thought within herself, suppose the three Champions & their loves were dead & gone, how would she do with those that were left her, as Sir Hymeris, and Leonard the priest, & her women? and her soul turned with loathing from a life so empty as that would be; and yet she blamed herself that she was so little friendly to these lesser friends, whom forsooth she loved because of her love for the greater ones. So, as above said, she was troubled and silent amongst the joy of the others.

**W**HAT saw Sir Hymeris the castellan; & when they had broken fast and were getting to horse, he came to her & said: Lady, the day is yet young, & if we fetch a compass by a way that I wot of, we shall see places new to thee, and may happen somewhat wonderful, and yet come home timely to the castle. Wilt thou?

**B**IRDALONE was still somewhat distraught, but she knew not how to naysay him, though at heart she would liefer have gone back to the castle by the shortest way. So folk brought her her palfrey, & they rode their ways, the castellan ever by her side.

k 1

And by fair ways indeed they went, & so joyous was all about them, that little by little Birdalone's gladness came back to her, and she made the most of it to be as merry of seeming as she might be.

**N**OW they rode fair and softly by thicket and copse and glade of the wood/land, following up the stream aforesaid for the more part, till at last the trees failed them suddenly, and they came forth on to a wide green plain, all unbuilt, so far as their eyes could see, and beyond it the ridges of the hills and blue mountains rising high beyond them.

**W**HEN Birdalone's eyes beheld this new thing, of a sudden all care left her, and she dropped her rein, and smote her palms together, and cried out: Oh! but thou art beautiful, O earth, thou art beautiful! Then she sat gazing on it, while the greyhead turned & smiled on her, well pleased of her pleasure.

**A**FTER a while she said: And might we go nigher? Yea, certes, said he, yet I doubt if thou wilt like it the better, the nigher thou art. Ah! she said, but if I were only amidst it, & a part of it, as once I was of the woodland!



**S**O thitherward they rode over the unharvested mead, and saw hart and hind thereon, and wild kine, & of smaller deer great plenty, but of tame beasts none; and the hills were before them like a wall. But as they drew nigher, they saw where the said wall of the hills was cloven by a valley narrow & steep-sided, that went right athwart the lie of the hills; the said valley was but little grassed, and the bare rocks were crow-black. When they had gone a little further, they could see that the ground near the foot of the hills rose in little knolls and ridges, but these were lower & fewer about the entry into that valley. Also presently they came upon a stream which ran out of the said valley, & Sir Hymeris said that this was the water whereby they had lain last night; albeit here it was little indeed.


**N**OW when they had ridden some five miles over the plain, they came amongst those knolls at the mouth of the valley, & Sir Hymeris led Birdalone up to the top of one of the highest of them, & thence they could look into that dale & see how it winded away up toward the mountains, like to a dismal street; for not only was it but little grassed, but withal there was

neither tree nor bush therein. Moreover, scattered all about the bottom of the dale were great stones, which looked as if they had once been set in some kind of order; & that the more whereas they were not black like the rocks of the dale-side, but pale grey of hue, so that they looked even as huge sheep of the giants feeding down the dale.

**T**HEN spake Birdalone: Verily, sir knight, thou saidst but sooth that I should see things new and strange. But shall we go a little way into this valley to-day? Nay, lady, said Sir Hymeris, nor to-morrow, nor any day un-compelled; neither shall we go nigher unto it than now we be. Wherefore not? said Birdalone, for meseemeth it is as the gate of the mountains; & fain were I in the mountains.

**L**ADY, said the castellan, overmuch perilous it were to ride the valley, which, as thou sayest, is the very gate of the mountains. for the said dale, which hight the Black Valley of the Greywethers, hath a bad name for the haunting of unmanlike wights, against which even our men-at-arms might make no defence. And if any might escape them, and win through the gates and up into the mountains, I wot





not if suchlike devils & things unkent be there in the mountain/land, but of a sooth there be fierce & wild men, like enough to devils, who know no peace, and slay whatsoever cometh unto them, but if they themselves be slain of them.

**W**ELL, said Birdalone, then to day, at least, we gonot into the dale; but knowest thou any tales of these wild places? Many have I heard, said he, but I am an ill minstrel & should spoil them in the telling. Ask them of Sir Leonard our priest, he knoweth of them better than others, and hath a tongue duly shapen for telling them.

**B**IRDALONE answered nought thereto; she but turned her horse's head and rode down the knoll; and so they came unto their company, & all went their ways toward the Castle of the Quest.

**N**OUGHT befell them on their way home; but the nigher they came to the castle the more pensive waxed Birdalone, and, though she hid it, when they were come to the gate she scarce had her wit; for it was as if she thought to have one rushing out & crying: Tidings, tidings! they are come.

**N**OWISE it so befell; they were no more come than was the Day of Doom.

And a little after they were within gates; it was night, and Birdalone crept wearily up to her chamber, and gat to bed, and so tired was she that she fell asleep at once and dreamed not.

**Chapter VI. Birdalone hearth tell tales of the Black Valley of the Greywethers**

**O**N THE morrow was Birdalone heavier of heart than ever yet, & wearier for tidings; & she wondered how she could have been so joyous that day in the wildwood. Yet she thought much of the Valley of the Greywethers, & that solaced her somewhat after a while, so sore she longed to go thither; and, as 'tis said, one nail knocks out the other. So that morning, when she had had her lesson of priest Leonard, she spake thereof to him, and told him what Sir Hymers had said concerning his knowledge thereof; and she asked him what he knew.

**I**HAVE been there, said he. She started at that word & said: Did aught of evil befall thee?

**N**AY, said he, but a great fear & dread hung about me; & 'tis said that they try their luck overmuch who

**Part IV. Of the Days of Abiding**



go thither twice.

**B**IRDALONE said: Tell me now of the tales that be told of that valley.


**Q**UOTH Leonard: They be many; but the main of them is this: that those Greywethers begiants of yore ago, or landwights, carles, & queans, who have been turned into stone by I wot not what deed; but that whiles they come alive again, and can walk and talk as erst they did; and that if any man may be so bold as to abide the time of their awakening, and in the first moment of their change may frame words that crave the fulfilment of his desire, & if therewith he be both wise and constant, then shall he have his desire fulfilled of these wights, and bear his life back again from out the dale. And thus must he speak & no otherwise: O Earth, thou and thy first children, I crave of you such and such a thing, whatsoever it may be. And if he speak more than this, then is he undone. He shall answer no question of them; & if they threaten him he shall not pray them mercy, nor quail before their uplifted weapons; nor, to be short, shall he heed them more than if they still were stones unchanged. Moreover, when he hath said his say, then shall these wights throng about him

and offer him gold and gems, and all the wealth of the earth; and if that be not enough, they shall bring him the goodliest of women, with nought lacking in her shape, but lacking all raiment, so that he shall see her as she is verily shapen. But whoso shall take any one of all these gifts is lost forever, and shall become one of that Stony People; and whoso naysayeth them all until the cock crow, & abideth steady by his one craving, shall win fulfilment thereof, and, as some say, all those gifts aforesaid; for that the Stony People may not abide the day to take them back again.

**H**E was silent therewith, and nought spake Birdalone, but looked down on the ground, and longing encompassed her soul. Then the priest spake again: This were a fair adventure, lady, for a hapless one, but for the happy it were a fool's errand. She answered not, and they parted for that time.

**B**UT the next week, there being yet no tidings come to hand, Birdalone prayed the castellan to take her out again, that she might once more behold the mountains, and the gates thereof; and he yeasaid her asking, and went with her, well accompa-





nied, as before; but this time, by Birdalone's will, they rode straight to the plain aforesaid, and again she looked into that dale of the Greywethers from the knoll. Somewhat belated they were, so that they might not get back to the castle before dusk, wherefore again they lay out in the wildwood, but there lacked somewhat of the triumph and joyance which they had had that other day. They came back to the castle on the morrow somewhat after noon, & found no news there; nor, to say sooth, did Birdalone look for any; & her heart was heavy.


**Chapter VII. Birdalone beguileth the Priest to help her to outgoing.**

**W**HAT had the time so worn that the season was in the first days of August, and weariness and heart-sickness increased on Birdalone again, & she began to look pined and pale. Yet when she spake of the tarrying of the Champions both to the castellan and Sir Leonard the priest (who was the wiser man of the two), each said the same thing, to wit, that it was no marvel if they were not yet come, seeing what like the adventure was; & neither of those two seemed in anywise to have lost hope.

**T**HREE in these last days did Birdalone go out a gates with Sir Hymeris and his company; & the last of the three times the journey was to the knoll that looked into the Black Valley; but now was Birdalone's pleasure of the sight of it afar off marred by her longing to be amidst thereof; yet she did not show that she was irked by the refraining of her desire to enter therein, and they turned, & came home safely to the castle.

**O**N the morrow she sat with Sir Leonard the priest over the writing lesson, and she let it be long, and oft he touched her hand, so that the sweetness of unfulfilled desire went deep to his heart.

**A**T last Birdalone looked up & said: friend, I would ask thee if thou seest any peril in my entering the Black Valley of the Greywethers by daylight, if I leave it by daylight? Alone? quoth he. Yea, she said, alone. He pondered a little, and then said: Sooth to say I deem the peril little in the valley itself, if thou be not overcome by terror there. Yea, for my part I am not all so sure that thou shalt see the wonder of the Stony folk coming alive; for 'tis not said that they quicken save on





Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding

certain nights, and chiefly on Midsummer Night; unless it be that the trier of the adventure is some one fated above others thereto; as forsooth thou mayst be. And as for peril of evil men, there are few who be like to be as venturesome as thou or I. They durst not enter that black street, save sore need compel them. But forsooth, going thither, and coming back again, some peril there may be therein. And yet for weeks past there has been no word of any unpeace; and the Red Knight it is said for certain is not riding.

**B**IRDLONE was silent a while; then she said: fair & kind friend, I am eating my heart out in longing for the coming back of my friends, & it is like, that unless I take to some remedy, I shall fall sick thereby, & then when they come back there shall be in me but sorry cheer for them. Now the remedy I know, & it is that I betake me alone to this adventure of the Black Valley; for meseemeth that I shall gain health & strength by my going thither. Wherefore, to be short, if thou wilt help me, I will go to-morrow. What sayest thou, wilt thou help me?

**H**E turned very red & spake: Lady, why shouldest thou go, as thy name is, birda-

lone? Thou hast called me just now thy kind friend, so kind as it was of thee; now therefore why should not thy friend go with thee?

**K**INDLY indeed she smiled on him, but shook her head: I call thee trusty and dear friend again, said she; but what I would do I must do myself. Moreover to what end shouldst thou go? If I fall in with ghosts, a score of men would help me nought; & if I happen on weaponed men who would do me scathe, of what avail were one man against them? And look thou, Sir Leonard, there is this avail in thine abiding behind; if I come not back in two days' space, or three at the most, thou wilt wot that I have fared amiss, & then mayst thou let it be known whither I went, & men will seek me and deliver me maybe.

**T**HEREWITH she stayed her words suddenly, and turned very pale, and laid her hand on her bosom, & said faintly: But O my heart, my heart! If they should come while I am away! And she seemed like to swoon.

**L**EONARD was afraid thereat, and knew not what to do; but presently the colour came into her face again, and in a little while





she smiled, & said: Seest thou not, friend, how weak I am gotten to be, and that I must now beyond doubt have the remedy? Wilt thou not help me to it?

**N**E verily, said he; but in what wise wilt thou have it? He spake as a man distraught & redeless; but she smiled on him pleasantly, and said: Now by this time shouldst thou have devised what was to do, & spared me the pain thereof. Two things I need of thee: the first and most, to be put out of the castle privily betimes in the morning when nought is stirring; the second, to have my palfrey awaiting me somewhat anigh the gate, so that I may not have to go afoot; for I am become soft & feeble with all this house-life.

**L**EONARD seemed to wake up with that word, & said: I have the key of the priest's door of the chapel, & the postern beyond it; that shall be thine out-gate, lady. I will come and scratch at thy chamber-door much betimes, & I will see to it that thy palfrey is bestowed in the bower wherein thou didst rest the first night thou camest amongst us. She said: I trust thee, friend. And she thanked him sweetly, and then rose

up and fell to pacing the hall up and down. Leonard hung about watching her awhile, she nought forbidding him, for her thoughts were elsewhere, and she had forgotten him; and at last he went his ways to set about doing what she would.

Chapter VIII. Birdalone fares on her adventure.

**D**AWN WAS but just beginning when Birdalone awoke, & though she had not heard Leonard at the door, she sprang out of bed & clad herself, doing on her black gown; and she had a scrip with some bread therein, & a sharp knife at her girdle. Then even as she had done she heard the priest's nail on the door, and she turned thereto; but as she went, her eye caught her bow & quiver of arrows where they hung on the wall, so she took the bow in her hand and slung the quiver over her shoulder ere she opened the door and found Leonard standing there. Neither of them spake aught, but they stole downstairs, and so to the chapel and out by the priest's door and the postern in the wall nook, and were presently out in the fresh morning air; and Birdalone was joyous and lightfoot, and scarce





felt the earth beneath her soles for pleasure of her hope, where, as she deemed she had a thing to crave of the Stony folk, if they should come alive before her. fain were she, if she might withal, to give a joy to some other; so that when they were gone but a little way from the castle she reached out her hand to Leonard & took his, & said: Hand in hand we walked when first I went this way, & I deemed thee kind and friendly then, & even so hast thou been sithence.

**H**E was dumbfounded at first for joy of the touch of her hand & the sweetness of her words; but presently he spake to her confused & stammering, & praised her that she had thought to take her bow and arrows; for, said he, that they might stand her in stead for defence or for getting of food, or for an excuse for wending the woods. She nodded yeasay unto him, & bade him again to bide three days for her, and if she came not again in that time, to make a clean breast of it to Sir Hymeris.

**Y**EH, said the priest, and then... Why, what then? He can but shoveme out by the shoulders, and then I can seek to the little house of canons that is at Gate Cross

on the road to Greenford.

**H**Y, my friend! said Birdalone, how we women think of nothing at all but ourselves! And wilt thou be thrust out of thine home for helping me herein? Why did I not look to my palfrey myself? And the keys I might have stolen from thee, always with thy good will. But now I see that I have done thee a hurt.

**S**AYD Sir Leonard: Lady, a priest hath a home wheresoever is an house of religion. There is no harm done, save Sir Hymeris bethink him of hanging me over the battlements; as I doubt he will not with a priest. Moreover, I pray thee believe, that wert thou gone from the castle, house & home were none for me there. And he looked upon her piteously, as if he were beseeching.

**B**UT she knew not what to say, & hunger her head adown; and presently they were come to the bower in the copse, which this time was a stable for Birdalone's palfrey instead of a chamber for herself. So Leonard went in & fetched out the comely beast; and Birdalone stood with him just in the cover of the copse waiting to put her foot in the stirrup; but she might not but abide to look upon the priest, who stood there as if he were



striving with his words.

**S**o she said: Now is need of haste to be gone. Yet one word, my friend: Is there aught betwixt us wherein I have done thee wrong? If so it be, I pray thee to say out what it is; for it may be (though I think it not) thou shalt not see me again from henceforth.

**H**e caught his breath, as if he had much ado to refrain the sobbing; but he mastered it, and said: Lady & dear friend, if I see thee not again, I heed not what shall befall me. Thou hast done me no wrong. There is this only betwixt us, that I love thee, and thou lovest not me.

**S**he looked on him sweetly and pitifully, and said: I may not choose but understand thy word, to wit, that thy love for me is the desire of a man toward a woman; & that is unhappy; for I love thee indeed, but not as a woman loveth a man. It is best to say thus much to thee downright. But I feel in my heart that when I have said it, it is as much as to say that I cannot help thee, and therefore am I sorry indeed.

**H**e stood before her abashed, but he said at last: Now art thou so sweet, and so kind, & so true, that I must perforce love thee yet more; and this maketh me

bold to say that thou mayst help me a little, or so meseemeth. How so? said Birdalone.

**Q**uoth he: If thou wouldst suffer me to kiss thy face this once. She shook her head, & spake: How may it avail thee, when it is for once, & once only, as forsooth it must be? Yet it is thy choice, not mine, & I will not naysay thee.

**A**ND therewith she put up her face to him, & he kissed her cheek without touching her otherwise, & then he kissed her mouth; and she knew that he was both timorous and sad, and she was ashamed to look on him, or to speak to him any more, lest she should behold him ashamed; so she but said: farewell, friend, till to-morrow at least.

**A**nd therewith her foot was in the stirrup, & anon she sat in the saddle, and her palfrey was ambling briskly on the way she would.

**Chapter IX. Birdalone comes to the Black Valley.**

**L**ITTLE is to tell of Birdalone's journey unto the knoll above the Black Valley of the Greywethers.

It was about noon when she came there, and had met but few folk on the way, and those few were husbandmen, or car-

**Part IV. Of the Days of Abiding**





lines, or maidens wending a-field betimes not far from the Castle of the Quest.

**N**OW she sat on her horse & looked down into the dale & its stony people once more, & saw nought stirring save three ravens who, not far off, were flapping about from stone to stone of the Greywethers, & croaking loud to each other as if some tidings were toward. She watched their play for a little, and then gat off her horse, and sat down on the grass of the knoll, & drew forth her victual, and ate and drank; for she deemed it happier to eat and drink there than in the very jaws of the Black Valley.

**S**OON was her dinner done, and then she got to her saddle again, and rode slowly down to the little stream, & along it toward the valley & the gates of the mountains, which she had been fain to pass through; but now, as had happed with her that morning when she was boun for the Sending Boat, somewhat she hung back from the adventure, and when she lacked but some five score yards from the very dale itself, she lighted down again, & let her way-beast bite the grass, while she sat down & watched the rippling water.

**I**N a while she drew off shoon and hosen, and stood in the shallow ripple, and bathed her hands and face withal, and stooped up stream and drank from the hollow of her hands, and so stepped ashore and was waxen hardier; then she strung her bow and looked to the shafts in her quiver, & did on her foot-gear, and mounted once more, & so rode a brisk amble right on into the dale, and was soon come amongst the Greywethers; & she saw that they were a many, & that all the bottom of the dale was besprinkled with them on either side of the stream, and some stood in the very stream itself, the ground whereof was black even as the rest of the valley, although the water ran over it as clear as glass.

**A**S for the dale, now she was fairly within it, she could see but a little way up it, for it winded much, & at first away from her left hand, and the sides of it went up in somewhat steep screes on either side, which were topped with mere upright staves and burgs of black rock; and these were specially big and out-thrusting on the right hand of her; and but a furlong ahead of where she was, one of these burgs thrust out past the scree



and came down sheer into the dale, & straitened it so much that there was but little way save by the stream itself, which ran swift indeed, but not deep, even there where it was straitened by the sheer rocks.

**B**UT up the dale would she go, whatever was before her; & now she told herself her very purpose, as forsooth she scarce had heretofore; to wit, that she would abide in the dale the night over and see what should betide, and if those wights should chance to come alive, then she looked to have valiance enough to face them and crave the fulfilment of her desire.

**S**o she took the water and rode the stream till she was past the said sheer rock, & then the valley widened again, and presently was wider than it was in the beginning; and here again were the Greywethers grown many more and closer together, & as she deemed, were set in rings round about one very big one, which, forsooth, was somewhat in the shape of a man sitting down with his hands laid on his knees.

**B**IRDALONE reined up for a minute, and looked about her, and then went up on to the grass, and rode straight to the said big stone,

and there lighted down from off her horse again, and stood by the stone & pondered. Presently she deemed that she saw something dark moving just beyond the stone, but if it were so, it was gone in a twinkling; nevertheless she stood affrighted, and stared before her long, and saw no more, but yet for a while durst not move hand nor foot.

**A**T last her courage came again, and she thought: Yet how if this great chieftain be inwardly stirring & will come awake? Shall I say the word now, lest hereafter it be of no avail? Therewith she stretched out her right hand and laid it on the stone, & spake aloud: O Earth, thou and thy first children, I crave of you that he may come back now at once and loving me. And her voice sounded strange and unken to her in that solitude, and she rued it that she had spoken.

**Chapter X. How Birdalone fell in with a Man in the Black Valley of the Greywethers.**

**C**AME new tidings therewithal; for the moment after she had spoken, a tall man drew out from behind the big stone, & stood before her; and at first it was in her



mind that this was the very chieftain come alive for her, and for terror she was like to swoon this time; but he spake nought a while, but looked on her eagerly and curiously.

**S**HE came to herself presently, so much that she could see him clearly, & was now growing more shamefast than afraid, when she saw beyond doubt that the man was of the sons of Adam; but what with her shame that was now, & her fear that had been, she yet had no might to move, but stood there pale and trembling like a leaf, & might scarce keep her feet.

**N**OW the new-comer bowed before her smiling, & said: I ask thy pardon, fair damsel (or indeed I should say fairest damsel), that I have scared thee. But sooth to say I beheld thee coming riding, and even from a little aloof I could see that nought which might befall could ever make it up to me for not seeing thee close at hand and hearing thee speak. Wherefore I hid myself behind the king's stone here; & no harm is done thereby I trow; for now I see that the colour is coming into thy cheeks again, and thy fear is gone. And as for me, thou hast not fled away from me, as thou wouldst have done had I not

hidden & come on thee suddenly; and then thou being horsed and I unhorsed, thou wouldst have escaped me, whereas now thou art within reach of my hand. Then he smiled, and said: furthermore, thou hast told so little of thy secret to this stony king here, that I am little the wiser for thy word, & thou the little more betrayed. Only this I will say, that if He loveth thee not, He is more of a fool than I be.

**H**E reached out his hand to hers, but she drew it aback, & grew yet more ashamed, & could find no word for him. His voice was soft & full, and he spake deftly, but she was not content with it for its kindness, as she had been with all the other men whom she had met since she left the House under the Wood, & she durst not trust her hand to him.

**A**S for his aspect, she saw that he was tall and well-knit, and goodly of fashion; dark-haired, with long hazel eyes, smooth-cheeked and bright-skinned; his nose long, and a little bent over at the end, & coming down close to his lips, which were full and red; his face was hairless save for a little lip-beard. He was so clad, that he had no helm on his head, but a little hat with a



broad gold piece in the front thereof; he was girt to a long sword, & had an anlace also in his belt, and Birdalone saw the rings of a fine hauberk at his collar and knees; otherwise he was not armed. Over his hauberk he wore a black surcoat, without device of any kind, & his foot and leg gear were of the same hue; wherefore may we call him the Black Knight. Sooth to say, for all his soft speech, she feared him & rued the meeting of him.

**N**OW he spake to her again: I see that thou art wroth with me, lady; but may happen it is not so ill that I have happened on thee; for this dale hath a bad name for more than one thing, and is scarce meet for damsels to wander in. But now since thou hast armed man with thee, and thou, by Allhallows! not utterly unarmed, thou mayst well go up the valley and see something more thereof. So come now, mount thine horse again, and I will lead him for thee.

**N**OW Birdalone found speech & said: Knight, for such thou seemest to me, I deem now that I have no need to fare further in this dale, but I will get me into the saddle & turn my horse's head outward again, giving thee

good day first and thanking thee for thy courtesy. And therewith she turned to get to her palfrey, but sore trembling the while; but he followed her & said, with browsome, what knitted: Nay, lady, I have left my horse somewhat further up, and I must go back to fetch him, that we may wend out of the dale together. for I will not suffer thee to flee from me and fall into the hands of evil wights, be they ghosts or living men, and that the less since I have heard the speech in thy mouth, as of honey and cream and roses. Therefore if thou go out of the dale, I shall go with thee afoot, leading thine horse. And look to it if it be courteous to unhorse a knight, who is ready to be thy servant. Moreover, since thou hast come to this dale of wonder, & mayst leave it safely, pity it were that thou shouldst see nought thereof, for strange is it forsooth, and belike thou shalt never seek thither again. Wherefore I crave of thee, once more, to mount thine horse & let me lead thee up the dale.

**H**E spake these last words rather as one giving a command than making a prayer, & Birdalone feared him now sorely. forsooth she had her bended bow in hand; but let alone that the knight was



over/near to her that she might get a shaft out of her quiver & nock it, ere he should run in on her, & let alone also that he was byrned, she scarce deemed that it behoved her to slay or wound the man because she would be quit of him. Wherefore angrily, and with a flushed face, she answered him: So shall it be then, Sir Knight; or rather so must it be, since thou compellest me.

**N**E laughed & said: Nay, now thou art angry. I compel thee not, I but say that it will not do for thee to compel me to leave thee. Go which way thou wilt, up the dale, or down it and out of it; it is all one unto me, so long as I am with thee. forsooth, damsel, I have said harder words to ladies who have done my pleasure & not deemed themselves compelled.

**S**HE paled but answered nought; then she mounted her palfrey, and the knight went to her bridle/rein without more words, & so led her on up the valley by the easiest way amongst the Greywethers.

Chapter XI. Birdalone is led  
up the Black Valley.

**A**S they went, the knight fell a talking to Birdalone, and that without any of the covert jeering which he had used erewhile; & he showed her places in the dale, as caverns under the burgs, & little eyots in the stream, and certain stones amongst the Greywethers whereof stories ran; and how this and the other one had fared in dealings with the land/wights, and how one had perished, & another had been made happy, & so forth. Withal he told of the mountain/folk, and in especial how they of the plains, when he was scarce more than a boy, had met them in battle in that same dale, & how fierce the fight was; whereas the mountain men were fighting for a life of desires accomplished, which hitherto had been but a dream unto them; & the men of the plain fought for dear life itself, and for all that made it aught save death in life. Wherefore up and down the dale they fought, at first in ordered ranks and then in knots, and lastly sword to sword & man to man, till there was no foot of grass or black sand there which had not its shower of blood; and the stream was choked with



the dead, and ran red out of the dale; till at last well/nigh all the host of the mountain/men was fallen, & scarce less of the folk of the plains, but these men held the field and had the victory.

**A**Ll this he told her deftly and well, and though he said not so right out, yet let her wot that, youth as he was, he was of the battle; & his voice was clear and good, and Birdalone's wrath ran off her, & she hearkened his tale, and even asked him a question here and there; & so courteous was this Black Knight now become, that Birdalone began to think that she had fallen short of courtesy to him, because of her fear and the weariness of the waiting which so oppressed her; and that shamed and irked her, for she would fain be of all courtesy. Wherefore now she deemed that perchance she had erred in deeming him an evil man; & she looked on him from time to time, and deemed him goodly of fashion; she thought his eyes were deep, & his face sober and fair of aspect, but that his nose turned down at the end, and was over thin at the bridge, and moreover his lips looked over/sweet and licorous.

**N**Ow when the knight was silent of his tales, Birdalone fell to asking him questions sweetly concerning this Stony People which was all about them; and he told her all he knew, soberly enough at first, yet indeed ended by mocking them somewhat, but mocked not at her any more. At last he said: fair lady, that thou hast not come here all for nought I partly know by those words which I heard come from thy mouth at the King's Stone; wherefore I marvelled indeed when I heard thee say that thou wouldst go straight out of the dale; for I had deemed thee desirous of trying the adventure of waking this Stony People a night/tide. forsooth was this thy mind when thou soughtest hither to the dale?

**S**HE reddened at his word, and yeasaid him shortly. Then said he: Is it not thy mind still? Sir, said she, as now I have got to fear it. Yea? & that is strange, said he, for thou wouldst have waked the dale alone; & now thou art no longer alone, but hast me to watch and ward thy waking, thou art more afeard.

**S**HE looked on his face steadily, to wot if there were no half/hidden smile therein; but herseemed that he spake in all soberness;

Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding



Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding

and she had nought to say to him save this: Sir, I am now become afraid of the waking. And he said no more thereof.

**N**OW they went thus, & Birdalone not without pleasure, since her fear of the knight was minished, some three hours up the dale, and still were the Greywethers everywhere about them, so that there were well nigh as many hours as miles in their wending.

**A**T last they seemed to be drawing nigh to the head of the dale, and the burgs & the rocks were before them all round it as a wall, though yet about a mile aloof at the further end; & this end it was wider than elsewhere.

**C**AME they then to a level space of greensward clear of the grey stones, which were drawn all around it in ordered rings, so that it was as some doom ring of an ancient people; and within the said space Birdalone beheld a great black horse tethered and cropping the grass. The knight led her into the ring, & said: Now are we come home for the present, my lady, & if it please thee to light down we shall presently eat and drink, & sit hence talk a little. And he drew nigh to help her off her horse, but she suffered him not, and lighted

down of herself; but if she suffered not his hand, his eyes she must needs suffer, as he gazed greedily on the trimness of her feet and legs in her sliding from her horse.

**N**OW SOEVER, he took her hand, and led her to a little mound on the other side of the ring, & bade her sit down there, and so did she, & from under the highest of the stones he drew forth a pair of saddle bags, and took victual and wine thence, and they ate & drank together like old companions. And now Birdalone told herself that the knight was frank & friendly; yet forsooth she wotted that her heart scarce trowed what it feigned, & that she yet feared him.

Chapter XII. How those twain  
get them from out of the Black  
Valley of the Greywethers.

**W**HEN they had dined, and had sat a while talking, the knight said: I will ask thee once more wherefore thou must needs depart from this dale leaving the Greywethers unwaked? Yet this must I tell thee first, that this ring at the dale's end is the only one due place where the Greywethers can be right ly waked, and that there be few



who wot this. Wilt thou not tell me then what is in thy mind?

**B**IRDALONE gazed down on the ground a while; then she lifted up her head and looked on the Black Knight, and said: Sir Knight, we have been brought so close together to day, and as meseemeth I am so wholly in thy power, that I will tell thee the very truth as it is. My mind it was to wake the dale here to night, & take what might befall me. And well indeed might I fear the adventure, which few, meseemeth, would not fear. But so strong is my longing for that which I would crave of these wights, that it overmastered my fear, and my purpose held when I entered the dale. Then I met thee; & here again is the truth, take it how thou wilt, that presently I feared thee, and yet I fear thee; for I have noted thee closely all this while, and have seen of thee, that thou art over heedful of my poor body, and wouldst have it for thine own if thou mightest. And there is this in thee also, as I deem, though thou thyself mayst not know it, that thou wouldst have thy pleasure of me whether it please me or grieve me; and this thy pleasure must I needs gain say; for though thou mayest hereafter become my friend,

yet are there other friends of mine, who be such, that my grief would mar any pleasure they might have. Hast thou heard and understood?

**S**HE looked on his face steadily as she spake, and saw that it flushed, and darkened, and scowled, & that his hands were clenched, & his teeth set hard together. And again she spake: Sir, thou shalt know that beside these shot weapons, I have a thing here in my girdle that may serve either against thee or against me, if need drive me thereto; wherefore I will pray thee to forbear. forsooth, thou shalt presently happen on other women, who shall be better unto thee than I can be.

**Y**THEN Birdalone had spoken the word, the knight's face had cleared, & he laughed aloud & said: As to thy last words, therein at least thou liest, my lady. But for the rest, I see that it must all be as thou wilt. Yea, if such be thy will, we shall presently to horse and ride down the dale again, and at the end thereof I shall leave thee to go home alone at thy will. She said: for that I can thee thanks with all my heart. But why hast thou not asked me of whence I am, and whither I would go home?



**A**GAIN he laughed & said: Because I know already. I have had more than two or three tales from them who have seen thee, or spoken unto others who have seen thee, how the gay Champions of the Castle of the Quest had fished up a wondrous pearl of price from out of the Great Water; & when I set eyes on thy beauty, I knew that the said pearl could be nowhere else than under mine eyes.

**L**ET that pass, she said, and blushed not; but now tell me the truth as I have told thee, why thou art so instant with me to wake the Greywethers to night? He kept silence a while, & as she looked on him, she thought she saw confusion in his face; but at last he said: Thou wert wrong in saying that I heeded not thy pleasure, and solace, and welfare. Me seemed, & yet doth, that it might be to thine avail to wake the Greywethers to night; & never again mayst thou have a chance of the waking, as erst I said. I say I wish thee to have fulfilment of thy craving. Nor hast thou aught to fear of them, seeing that it is but dastards and fools that they undo.

**H**E broke off his speech, & Birdalone yet looked on him, and after a lit-

tle he said: Thou drawest the truth out of me; for moreover I would have thee with me longer than thou wouldst be if we but rode together down the water and out of the dale, and thou to fare away alone.

**B**IRDALONE spake in a while, and that while he gazed upon her eagerly; she said: I shall now tell thee that I shall abide the adventure of the waking to night, whatever befall. And I, said he, will so do that thou mayst fear me the less; for I will unarm me when the night cometh, & thou thyself shalt keep mine hauberk and sword and anlace. She said: It is well; I will take that, lest desire overmaster thee.

**T**HEY spake no more of it at that time, and it was now five hours after noon. Birdalone arose, for she found it hard to sit still & abide nightfall: she went without the two first rings of the Greywethers, which were set in more open order beyond that, & she looked all about her, to the black rocks on either side, & to the great black wall at the dale's ending, & the blue mountains aloof beyond it; then down toward the plain of the dale came her eyes, & she looked through the tangle of the grey stones. Now she seem-



ed to be looking more intently upon some one thing; with that she called to her the Black Knight, who was hanging about watching her, & she said to him: fair sir, art thou clear seeing and far seeing? I am not thought to be purblind, quoth he. Then Birdalone reached out her hand & pointed & said: Canst thou see aught which thou didst not look to see, there, up the dale as I point? Said he: All too clear I see the hand and the wrist of thee, & that blinds me to aught else. I pray thee fool not, she said, but look heedfully, and thou mayst see what I see, and then tell me what it means. Though forsooth I am exceeding in far sight.

**H**E LOOKED under the sharp of his hand heedfully, then he turned unto her & said: By Allhallows! there is in thee every excellency! Thou art right; I see a bay horse up there feeding on the bites of grass amongst the Greywethers. Look again! she said; what else canst thou see? Is there aught anigh to the bay horse which is like to the gleam and glitter of metal? Christ! said he, once more thou art right. There be weaponed men in the dale. Tarry not, I beseech thee, but get to horse forthright, and I will do

no less.

**H**ERE goeth the waking of the dale for this time, said Birdalone, laughing. But art thou not in haste, fair sir? may not these be friends?

**T**HE knight laid his hand upon her shoulder, & thrust her on toward her palfrey, and spake fiercely, but not loud: Thee I pray not to fool now! There is not a minute to spare. If thou deemest me evil, as I think thou dost, there are worser than I, I tell thee, there are worser. But we will talk of it when we be in the saddle, & clear of this accursed dale.

**B**IRDALONE knew not what to do save obey him, so she lightly gat into her saddle, and followed him, for he was mounted in a twinkling, & riding on. He led out of the ring, & fell to threading the maze of the Greywethers, keeping ever toward the steep side of the dale, which was on that hand that looked toward the Castle of the Quest, that is to say, the eastern bent. Birdalone wondered at this leading, & when she was come up with the knight she spake to him breathlessly, and said: But, fair sir, why wend we not down the dale? He answered: first, lady, because we must hide us from them straightway;



and next because they be more than we, many more, and their horses be fresh, while thine at least is somewhat spent; and if they were to spur down the dale in chase, they would soon be upon us; for think not that I would escape and leave thee behind.

**S**YD Birdalone: But thou knowest them, then, what they be? since thou wottest of their numbers & their riding. Harken now! Upon thy soul and thy salvation, be they more friends unto thee than unto me?

**N**E said, as he rode on a little slower than erst: Upon my soul and my salvation I swear it, that the men yonder be of the worst unfriends to thee that may be in the world. And now, lady, I promise thee that I will unravel thee the riddle, and tell thee the whole truth of these haps, whatsoever may come of my words, when we be in a safer place than this; and meantime I beseech thee to trust in me thus far, as to believe that I am leading thee out of the very worst peril that might befall thee. Nay, thou must needs trust me; for I tell thee, that though I now love thee better than all the world and all that is in it, I would slay thee here in this dale rather than suffer

thee to fall into the hands of these men.

**B**IRDALONE heard him with a sick heart; but such passion went with his words that she believed what he said; and she spake softly: Sir, I will trust thee thus far; but I beseech thee to have pity upon a poor maiden who hath had but little pity shown unto her until these latter days; & then: O woe's me, to have fallen out of the kindness and love once more!

**T**HE Black Knight spake to her in a little while, & said: What pity I can to thee, that I will. Once more I tell thee, that if thou but knew it thou wouldst thank me indeed for what I have done for thee in this hour; and henceforth I will do & forbear with thee to the uttermost that love will suffer me. But lo thou! here are we safe for this present; but we must nowise tarry.

**B**IRDALONE looked & saw that they were come to the wall of the dale, & that there it went down sheer to the plain thereof, & that before them was a cleft that narrowed speedily, & over which the rocks well nigh met, so that it was indeed almost a cave. They rode into it straightway, and when that they had gone but a little, and because it had





winded somewhat, they could but see the main valley as a star of light behind them, then it narrowed no more, but was as a dismal street of the straitest, whiles lighter & whiles darker, according as the rocks roofed it in overhead or drew away from it. Long they rode, and whiles came trickles of water from out the rocks on one hand or the other; and now & again they met a stream which covered all the ground of the pass from side to side for the depth of a foot or more. Great rocks also were strewn over their path every here and there, so that whiles must they needs dismount and toil afoot over the rugged stones; and in most places the way was toilsome & difficult. The knight spake little to Birdalene, save to tell her of the way, and warn her where it was perilous; & she, for her part, was silent, partly for fear of the strangeman, or, it might be, even for hatred of him, who had thus brought her into such sore trouble, & partly for grief. For, with all torment of sorrow, she kept turning over & over in her mind whether her friends had yet come home to the Castle of the Quest, and whether they would go seek her to deliver her. And such shame took hold of her when she thought of their grief and confusion of

soul when they should come home & find her gone, that she set her mind to asking if it had not been better had she never met them. Yet in good sooth her mind would not shape the thought, howsoever she bade it.

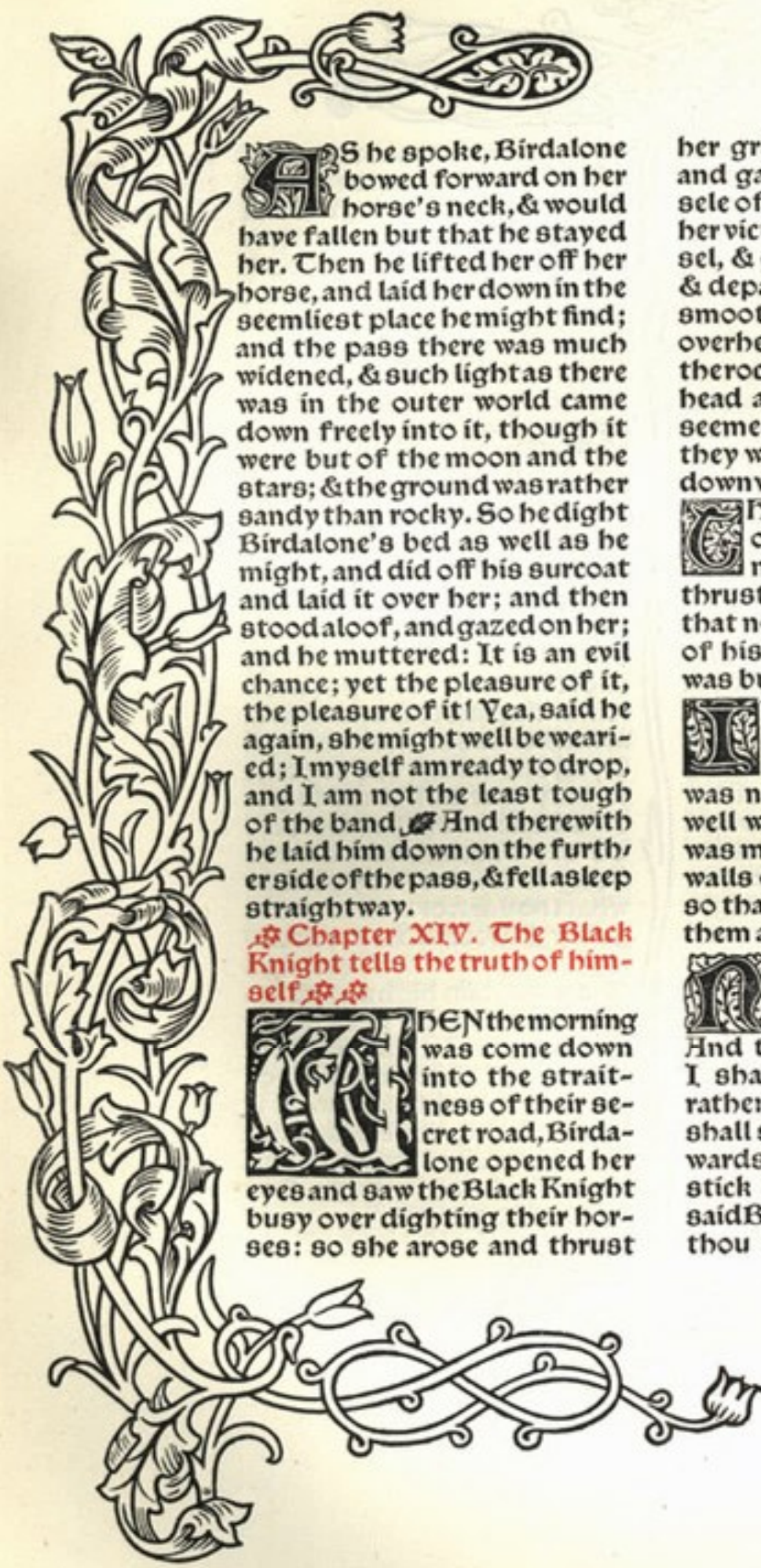
**Chapter XIII. Now they rest for the night in the Strait Pass.**

**A**last, when they had been going a long while, it might be some six hours, and it had long been night in the world without, but moonlit, and they had rested but seldom, and then but for short whiles, the knight drew rein and spake to Birdalene, & asked her was she not weary. O yea, she said; I was at point to pray thee suffer me to get off & lie down on the bare rock. To say sooth, I am now too weary to think of any peril, or what thou art, or whither we be going. He said: By my deem'ing we be now half through this mountain highway, & belike there is little peril in our resting; for I think not that any one of them knoweth of this pass, or would dare it if he did; & they doubtless came into the dale by the upper pass, which is strait enough, but light and open.

**Part IV. Of the Days of Abiding**







**A**S he spoke, Birdalone bowed forward on her horse's neck, & would have fallen but that he stayed her. Then he lifted her off her horse, and laid her down in the seemliest place he might find; and the pass there was much widened, & such light as there was in the outer world came down freely into it, though it were but of the moon and the stars; & the ground was rather sandy than rocky. So he dight Birdalone's bed as well as he might, and did off his surcoat and laid it over her; and then stood aloof, and gazed on her; and he muttered: It is an evil chance; yet the pleasure of it, the pleasure of it! Yea, said he again, she might well be wearied; I myself am ready to drop, and I am not the least tough of the band. And therewith he laid him down on the furth'erside of the pass, & fell asleep straightway.

**Chapter XIV. The Black Knight tells the truth of himself.**

**W**HEN the morning was come down into the straitness of their secret road, Birdalone opened her eyes and saw the Black Knight busy over dighting their horses: so she arose and thrust

her grief back into her heart, and gave her fellow/farer the sele of the day, & he brought her victual, and they ate a morsel, & gat to horse thereafter & departed; & the way became smoother, and it was lighter overhead everywhere now, and the rocks never again met overhead athwart the way; and it seemed to Birdalone that now they were wending somewhat downward.

**T**HE knight was courteous unto Birdalone, and no longer for the present thrust his love upon her, so that now she had some solace of his fellowship, though he was but few/spoken to her.

**I**T WAS betimes when they arose, & they rode all the morning till it was noon, which they might well wot of, because the way was much wider, and the cliff-walls of the pass much lower, so that the sun shone in upon them and cheered them.

**N**OW the Black Knight drew rein & said: Shall we rest, lady, and eat? And thereafter, if thou wilt, I shall tell thee my tale. Or rather, if thou wilt suffer me, I shall speak first and eat afterwards, or else the morsel might stick in my throat. Knight, said Birdalone, smiling, I hope thou hast no lie to swallow



down before the meat. Nay, lady, said he; no lie that is of moment at least.

**S**O they lighted down, and Birdalonesat on the way, side under a birch/bush that came thrusting out from the rock, and the knight stood before her, hanging his head, as though he were one accused who would plead his cause; & he began:

**L**ADY, I must tell thee first of all, that to/day I have done as an unfaithful servant and a traitor to my lord. Said Birdalone simply: Shall I tell thee the truth, & say that from the first I seemed to see in thee that thou wert scarce trusty? He said: Well, that mind I saw in thee, and it went to my heart that thou shouldest think it, and that it should be no less than true. But now I must tell thee, that it is for thysake that I have been untrusty to my lord. How so? said she. Quoth he: Heardest thou ever of the Red Knight? Yea, said Birdalone, I have heard of him ever as a tyrant and oppressor. Then she grew pale, & said: Art thou he? Nay, said the knight, I am but a kinsman of his, and his best/trusted man; nor have I failed him ever till yesterday.

**H**E kept silence a while, and then said: This is the true tale: that we have had tidings of thee & of thy ridings abroad with that old fool, Sir Hymeris, & how thou hadst been twice to look into the Black Valley. This I say hath the Red One heard, & the heart of him was touched by the mere hearsay of thee; & moreover 'tis blessed bread to him the doing of any grief to the knights of Quest Castle; wherefore he hath sent me to hang about the dale, to lay hands on thee if I might; for he knew, being wise, that thou wouldst hanker after it; and moreover he let one of his wise womensit out in spells on thee. So I espied, and happened on thee all alone; and mine errand it was, since I came upon thee thus, to draw thee till I had thee safe at home in the Red Hold. forsooth I began mine errand duly, & fell to beguiling thee, so that thou mayst well have seen the traitor in me. But then, and then my heart failed me, because I fell, not to desiring thee as coveting my master's chattel, but to loving thee & longing for thee as my fellow and speech/friend. And I said to myself: Into the Red Hold she shall not go if I may hinder it.

Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding



**B**IRDALONE was very pale, but she refrained her from grief and fear, and said: But those horsed & weaponed men up the dale, who were they? He said: I will not lie now, not even a little; they came into the dale by that upper pass whereof I told thee; they were of our men; I brought them. I was never all alone in the dale; I was to have fetched thee to them, so that thou mightest not see a rout of folk and flee away; and then would we all have gone home together by the upper pass. But we two must have gone on unto them in the dale's head, whereas for all that I could say I might not bring them down into that doom-ring where we ate and talked yesterday. We two have been valianter than thou mayst have deemed, to have done the deed of dining there; for all men fear it. But as for me, I have been there more than twice or thrice, & thence have I wandered, & found this pass wherein now we be; concerning which I have held my tongue, deeming that it might one day serve my turn; as it hath done now abundantly, since it hath been a refuge unto thee.

**N**EH, but whither are we going now? said Birdalone; is it perchance to

the Red Hold? Nay, never, said the knight, so help me God and Allhallows!

**W**HITHER then? said Birdalone; tell me, that I may at least trust thee, even though I owe thee for all the pain and grief which thou hast wrought me. He reddened & said: Wait a while; I bring thee to no ill place; there shall no harm befall thee. And he fretted and fumed, and was confused of speech and look, and then he said: When we come there I shall belike crave a boon of thee.

**B**UT I crave a boon of thee here and now, said Birdalone. Wipe away thine offence to me & take me back to my friends & the Castle of the Quest! So mayst thou yet be dear unto me, though maybe not wholly as thou wouldst have it. And she reached out her two hands toward him.

**H**IS breast heaved, and he seemed nigh to weeping; but he said: Nay, lady, ask me not here and now, but there & to-morrow. But again I swear to thee by thine hands that to the Red Hold I will not bring thee, nor suffer thee to be brought, if I may hinder it; nay, not though I give my life therefor.



**B**IRDALONE was silent a while; then she said: And what shall befall me if I come to the Red Hold? What is the Red Knight, and what would he do with me? Said he: The Red Knight is terrible & fierce & wise; and I fear him, I. He held his peace, and said: I must needs say it, that to thee he would have been as Death & the Devil. He would have bedded thee first. She broke in: Nay, never! & flushed very red. But the knight went on: And after, I wot not; that were according to his mood. And as to thy never, lady, thou wottest not the like of him or of the folk he hath about him. Such as thou? she said angrily. Nay, he said, far worse than me; men who fare little afield, and are not sweetened by adventures and war/perils; and women worseryet; and far worseryet were they dealing with a woman. She was silent again awhile, and paled once more; then her colour came back to her, and she held out her hand to him and said kindly: Thou being what thou art, I thank thee for thy dealings with me; & now until to-morrow, when I shall ask thee of that again, I am friends with thee; so come now, and let us eat and drink together.

**H**E took her hand & kissed it, and then came and sat down meekly beside her, and they ate and drank in that wild place as though they had been friends of long acquaintance.

**Chapter XV. The Black Knight brings Birdalone to the Bower in the Dale.**

**W**HEN they had made an end of their meal, they gat to horse again & rode on their ways; and every mile now was their road the easier, the pass wider, and its walls lower and now also more broken; till at last they began to go down hill swiftly, and after a little their road seemed to be swallowed in a great thicket of hornbeam and holly; but the knight rode on & entered the said thicket, & ever found some way amidst the branches, though they were presently in the very thick of the trees, and saw no daylight between the trunks for well-nigh an hour, whereas the wood was thick and tangled, & they had to thread their way betwixt its mazes.

**A**T last the wood began to grow thinner before them, & the white light to show between the trunks; & Birdalone deemed that she



Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding

heard the sound of falling water, & presently was sure thereof; and the knight spake to her: Patience, my lady; now are we near home for to day. She nodded kindly to him, and therewith they rode on to open ground, & were on the side of a steep bent, broken on their right hands into a sheer cliff, as Birdalone saw when the knight led her to the edge & bade her look over. Then she saw down into a fair dale lying far below them, through the which ran a little river, clear and swift, but not riotous, after it had fallen over a force at the upper end of the dale, and made the sound of water which she had heard. The said dale was so, that what soever was on the other side thereof was hidden by tall and great trees, that stood close together some twenty yards aloof from the stream, & betwixt them & it was fair greensward with a few bushes and thorn trees thereon.

**Q**UOTH THE knight: Down there shall we rest till to-morrow, if it please thee, lady; and since the sun will set in an hour, we were best on our way at once. It pleases me well, said Birdalone, & I long to tread the turf by the river side, for I am weary as weary may be of the saddle and the pass.

**S**O down the bent they rode, and it was but a little ere they had ridden it to an end, and had met the river as it swept round the cliff wall of the valley; & they rode through it, and came on to the pleasant greensward aforesaid under the trees; and in a bight of the wood was a bower builded of turf & thatched with reed; and there, by the bidding of the knight, they alighted; and the knight said: This is thine house for to-night, my lady; & thou mayest lie there in all safety after thou hast supped, and mayst have my weapons by thy side if thou wilt, while I lie under the trees yonder. And if thou wilt bathe thee in the cool water, to comfort thee after the long ride & the weariness, I swear by thy hand that I will take myself out of eye shot & abide aloof till thou call me.

**S**AID Birdalone, smiling somewhat: fair sir, I will not have my watch and ward unarmed; keep thou thy weapons; & thou wilt not forget, perchance, that I am not wholly unarmed, whereas I have my bow and arrows & my knife here. And as to my bathing, I will take thee at thy word, and bid thee go aloof a while now at once; for I will go down to the water; & if thou spy upon



me, then wilt it be thy shame and not mine.

**T**HE knight went his ways therewith, and Birdalone went down to the water & unclad her; but ere she stepped into the river, she laid her bow and three shafts on the lip thereof. Then she took the water, and disported her merrily therein; & now, forsooth, she was nowise downcast, for she said to herself, this man is not all evil, and he loveth me well, and I look for it that tomorrow he will bring me on my way toward the Castle of the Quest, for mere love of me; & then shall he be a dear friend to me, and I will comfort him what I can for as long as we both live.

**S**o she came out of the water and clad her, and then called aloud for the knight, & he came speedily unto her, as if he had been not exceeding far away, though he swore with a great oath that he had nowise espied her. She answered him nought, & they went side by side to the bower; and there the knight dight the victual, & they sat together & ate their meat like old friends; & Birdalone asked the knight concerning this valley and the bower, if he had known it for long, and he answered: Yea, lady, I was but a stripling when

I first happened on the dale; & I deem that few know thereof save me; at least none of our flock knoweth thereof; & I am fain thereof, and keep them unknowing, for if my lord were to hear of my having a haunt privy unto me he would like it but ill.

**B**IRDALONE turned pale when she heard him speak of his lord; for fear of the Red Knight had entered into her soul, so that now the flesh crept upon her bones. But she enforced her to smile, and said: Yea, & what would he do to thee were he illcontent with thy ways? Forsooth, lady, said he, if he could spare me he would make an end of me in some miserable way; nay, if he were exceeding illcontent, he would do as much for me whether he could spare me or not; otherwise he would watch his occasion, & so grieve me that what he did would go to my very heart. Woe's me! said Birdalone, thou servest an evil master. The knight answered not, and Birdalone went on speaking earnestly: It is a shame to thee to follow this fiend; why dost thou not sunder thee from him, and become wholly an honest man? Said he gruffly: It is of no use talking of this, I may not; to boot, I fear him. Then did

Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding



Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding

Birdalone hold her peace, and the knight said: Thou dost not know; when I part from thee I must needs go straight to him, & then must that befall which will befall. Speak we no more of these matters.

**B**IRDALONE flushed with hope and joy as he spake thus, for she took him to mean that he would lead her, on the morrow, on her way to the Castle of the Quest. But the knight spake in a voice grown cheerful again: As to this bower, lady, the tale thereof is soon told; for with mine own hands I builded it some fifteen years ago; and I have come to this place time and again when my heart was overmuch oppressed with black burdens of evil & turmoil, and have whiles prevailed against the evil, & whiles not. Mayst thou prevail this time, then! said she. He answered her not, but presently fell to talking with her of other matters, & the two were frank & friendly together, till the August night grew dark about them; & then spake Birdalone: Now would I rest, for I can no longer keep mine eyes open. Abide aloof from me to-morrow morning till I call to thee, as thou didst this evening; & then, before we eat together again, thou shalt tell me what thou wilt do with

me. He stood up to depart, and she reached out her hand to him in the glimmer, and he saw it, but said: Nay, if I take thine hand, I shall take thine whole body. And therewith he departed, & she laid her down in her smock alone, and slept anon, and was dreamless and forgetting everything till the sun was up in the morning.

Chapter XVI. Yet a Day and a Night they tarry in the Dale.

**B**IRDALONE awoke when the sun came into the bower to her, & stood up at once, & went down to the river and washed the night off her; and then, when she was clad, called on the knight to come to her; and he came, looking downcast and troubled; so that Birdalone thought within herself: It is well, he will do my will.

**S**HE stood before him, & gave him the sele of the day, and he looked on her sorrowfully. Then she said: Now is come the time when I am to ask thee to take me back to the Castle of the Quest and my own people. He was not hasty to answer her, and she spake again: This must thou do, or else take me to the Red Hold & deliver me to the tyrant there; and I have heard it from



thine own mouth that will be nought else than casting me in to shame and torment & death. And I deem thou canst not do it. Nay, she said, staying the words that were coming from his mouth, I wot that thou canst do it if thine heart can suffer it; for thou art stronger than I, and thou mayst break my bow, & wrest this knife out of mine hand; and thou canst bind me & make me fast to the saddle, and so lead my helpless body into thralldom and death. But thou hast said that thou lovest me, and I believe thee here in. Therefore I know that thou canst not will to do this.

**H**E answered in his surly voice: Thou art right, lady, I cannot. Nay, hearken thou this time. I have been turning over night/long what thou didst say about leaving my lord, that is, betraying him, for it comes to that; and now I have made up my mind to do it, and I will betray him for thy sake. Wherefore there is a third way to take which thou hast not seen; we will ride out of this dale in an hour's time, & I will bring thee to them who are only less the mortal foes of the Red Knight than are thy fellows of the Quest, to wit, to the captain & burgesses of the good town of Greenford by the Water; & I will do them to wit

that I have rescued thee from the hands of the Red Knight, and am become his foe; & will show them all his incomings and outgoings, and every whit of rede, and entrap him, so that he fall into their hands. Now, though were I to be taken in battle by them, I should be speedily brought to the halter, or may be to the bale-fire (for we be wizards all in the Red Hold); yet with this word in my mouth, if they throw in it, I shall be made their captain, & presently their master. Throw in my tale they will, if thou bear me out therein, and they will honour thee, and suffer thee to give thyself to me in marriage; and then I know thee, & myself also, and that ere long we shall be both mighty and wealthy and beloved, and fair will be the days before us.

**H**IS VOICE had grown softer as he spake, and toward the end of his words he faltered, and at last brake out a weeping, and cast himself wordless on the grass before her.

**S**HE was pale, & her brow was knitted, and her face quivered; but she spake coldly to him & said: This way I cannot take; & I wonder at thee that thou hast shown it unto me, for thyself thou knowest that I cannot go with thee.



I will go nowhere hence save to the Castle of the Quest. If thou wilt not lead me thereto, or put me on the road, I ask thee straight, Wilt thou stay me if I go seek the way thither myself?

**H**E ROSE up from the ground with a pale face full of anger as well as grief, & caught her by the wrists and said, scowling the while: Tell me now which of them it is; is it the stupid oaf Baudoin, or the light fool Hugh, or the dull pedant Arthur? But it matters not; for I know, and all the country-side knows, that they be vowed, each man of them, to his own woman; and if they find not the women themselves, such dolts they are, that they will ever be worshipping the mere shadows of them, & turn away from flesh & blood, were it the fairest in the world, as thou art, as thou art.

**S**HE shrank away from him what she might, but he still held her wrists; then she spake in a quivering voice, her very lips pale with fear & wrath: It is well seen that thou art a man of the Red Knight; & belike thou wouldst do with me as he would. But one thing I crave of thee, if there is any grain of mercy in thee, that thou wilt draw thy sword and thrust me through; thou mayst leave thine hold of

me to get at the blade, I will not stir from where I stand. O! to think that I deemed thee well-nigh a true man.

**H**E dropped her hands now & stood aloof from her, staring at her, & presently cast himself on the ground, rolling about & tearing at the grass. She looked on him a moment or two, & then stepped forward & stooped to him, and touched his shoulder and said: Rise up, I bid thee, & be a man and not a wild beast.

**S**O in a while he arose, and stood before her hanging-dog-like; then she looked on him pitifully, and said: fair sir & valiant knight, thou hast gone out of thy mind for a while, & thus hast thou shamed both me and thyself; & now thou wert best forget it, and therewithal my last words to thee.

**HEREWITH** she held out her hand to him, and he went on his knees and took it, sobbing, and kissed it. But she said, and smiled on him: Now I see that thou wilt do what I prayed of thee, and lead me hence & put me on the road to the Castle of the Quest. He said: I will lead thee to the Castle of the Quest.

**S**HEID Birdalone: Then shall it be as I promised, that I will be thy



dear friend while both we live. And now, if thou canst, be a little merrier, & come and sit with me, and let us eat our meat, for I hunger.

**H**E smiled, but woefully, and presently they sat down to their meat; and he strove to be somewhat merry of mood, and to eat as one at a feast; but whiles his heart failed him, and he set his teeth and tore at the grass, & his face was fierce and terrible to look on; but Birdalune made as if she heeded it nought, and was blithe and debonaire with him. And when they had done their meat he sat looking at her a while, & at last he said: Lady, dost thou deem that, when all is said, I have done somewhat for thee since first we met the day before yesterday at the lower end of the Black Valley? Yea, she said, as erst I spake, all things considered I deem that thou hast done much. And now, said he, I am to do more yet; for I am to lead thee to where henceforth I shall have no more part or lot in thee than if thou wert in heaven and I in hell. I pray thee say not so, said Birdalune; have I not said that I will be thy friend? Lady, said the knight, I wot well that according to the sweetness of thine heart wilt thou do what thou canst do. And

therewith he was silent a while and she also.

**W**HEN he said: I would ask thee a grace if I durst. Ask it, said she, and I will grant it if I may; I have gainsaid thee enough meseemeth.

**L**ADY, he said, I will ask this as a reward of the way/leader, to wit, that thou abide with me here in this dale, in all honour holden, till to-morrow morning; & let this place, which has helped me aforetime, be hallowed by thy dwelling here; and I, I shall have had one happy day at least, if never another. Canst thou grant me this? If thou canst not, we will depart in an hour.

**H**ER countenance fell at his word & she was silent a while; for sore she longed to be speedily whereas her friends should find her if they came back to the castle. But she thought within herself how wild & fierce the man was, and doubted if he might not go stark mad on her hands & destroy her if she thwarted overmuch; & moreover, frankly she pitied him, and would do what she might to ease his pain & solace his grief of heart. Wherefore she cleared her face of its trouble and let it be vexed no longer, but smiled upon the knight & said: fair sir, this me/

Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding



Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding

seemeth but a little thing for me to do, & I grant it thee with a good will, and this shall now be the first day of the friendship if so thou wilt take it; and may it solace thee.

**W**HO then was gleeful but the knight, and strange it was to see all his sorrow run off him; and he became glad & gamesome as a youth, and yet withal exceeding courteous & kind with her, as though he were serving a mighty queen.

**S**O then they wore the day together in all good fellowship; and first they went up the dale together and right to the foot of that great force, where the stream came thundering down from the sheer rocks; & long Birdalone stood to look thereon, & much she marvelled at it, for no such thing had she seen before.

**HEREAFTER THEY** went afoot into the wood behind the green bower, and when they had gone some way therein for their pleasure, they fell to seeking venison for their dinner; & the knight took Birdalone's bow & shafts to strike the quarry withal, but he would have her gird his sword to her, that she might not be weaponless. So they gat them a roe and came back therewith to the bower, & the

knight dight it and cooked it, & again they ate in fellowship and kindness; and Birdalone had been to the river & fetched thence store of blue/flowered mouse/ear, and of meadow-sweet, whereof was still some left from the early days of summer, & had made her garlands for her head & her loins; and the knight sat & worshipped her, yet he would not so much as touch her hand, sorely as he hungered for the beauty of her body.

**NEXT**, when dinner was done, & they lay in the shadow of the trees, & hearkened the moor/hen crying from the water, and the moaning of the wood/doves in the high trees, she turned to him & bade him tell her somewhat of the tale of his life & deeds; but he said: Nay, lady, I pray thee pardon me, for little have I to tell thee that is good, and I would not have thee know of me aught worse than thou knowest of me already. Rather be thou kind to me, and tell me of thy days that have been, wherein I know full surely shall be nought but good.

**S**HE smiled and blushed, but without more ado fell to telling him of her life in the House under the Wood, and spared not even to tell him somewhat of the wood/mo-



ther. And he said no word to her thereover, save thanks and praises for the kindness of her story.

**A**T last the day wore to its ending, & then the knight's grief strode over him again, & he was moody and few-spoken; & Birdalone was blithe with him still, and would have solaced his grief; but he said: Let it be; as for thee, thou shalt be happy tomorrow, but this happy day of mine is well-nigh worn, and it is as the wearing of my life. And the dark night came, and he bade her good-night sorrowfully, and departed to his lair in the wood. Birdalone lay in the bower, & might not sleep a long while for her joy of the morrow, which should bring her back to the Castle of the Quest.

**B**UT when morning was, & the sun was but just risen, Birdalone awoke, and stood up and did on her

Here ends the fourth Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the Days of Abiding, & the fifth Part now begins, which is called The Tale of the Quest's Ending.

raiment, and called her servant the knight, and he came at once leading the two horses, and said: Now go we to the Castle of the Quest. And he was sober and sorrowful, but nought fierce or wild.

**S**O Birdalone thanked him kindly and praised him, and he changed countenance no whit therefor.

**T**HEN they mounted & set forth, & the knight led straight into the wood, and by roads that he wotted of, so that they went nowise slowly for wenders through the thick woodland. Thus went they on their way together, he sorry and she glad.

**B**UT now leaves the tale to tell of Birdalone and the knight on whom she happened in the Black Valley of the Greywethers, and turns to the Castle of the Quest and the folk thereof, & what they did in this while & thereafter.

Part IV. Of  
the Days of  
Abiding



THE WATER OF THE WONDROUS ISLES, & THE  
FIFTH PART: THE TALE OF THE QUEST'S ENDING.

Chapter I. Of Sir Leonard's  
Trouble & the Coming of the  
Quest

**T**ELLS THE tale that when the chaplain had departed from Birdalone at the bower in the copse, he went home to the castle sadly enough, because of his love & longing for her, which well he wotted might never be satisfied. Moreover when he was come into the castle again, there fell fear upon him for what might betide her, and he rued it that he had done her will in getting her forth of the castle; and in vain now he set before himself all the reasons for deeming that her peril here in was little or nothing, even as he had laid them before her, & which he then believed in utterly, whereas now him seemed there was an answer to every one of them. So he sighed heavily and went into the chapel, wherein was an altar of St. Leonard; and he knelt thereat, and prayed the saint, as he had erst delivered folk from captivity, now to deliver both him and Birdalone from peril and bonds; but though he was long a praying & made many words, it lightened his heart little or nothing; so that when he rose

up again, that if anything evil happened to this pearl of women, he wished heartily that some one might take his life and he be done with it.

**N**OW was the house astir, and the chaplain came from out the chapel, and thinking all things over, he thought he would go straight to Sir Hymeris & make a clean breast of it, so that weaponed men might be sent at once to seek Birdalone. And he said to himself: What matter if he slay me or cast me into prison, if Birdalone be lost?

**S**O HE went his ways to the highest tower, which looked landward & hight the Open Eye, deeming to find Sir Hymeris; but when he got to the topmost, he found neither captain nor carle there: wherefore he stayed a little & looked forth betwixt the battlements, if perchance there were some wild chance of seeing Birdalone's coming home again; but his keen eyes beheld nothing more than he looked to see, as sheep and neat, and the field-folk of thereabouts. So he turned away & went by the swale toward the next tallest tower, which looked lake-wards, and was called Hearts' Hope; and as he went he fell to framing in his mind the words



which he should say to the castellan.

**T**HUS came he, haggard and hapless, on the leads of the tower, which were nought small; & there gathered together in a knot, & all gazing eagerly out over the lake, he found a dozen of men-at-arms & the castellan amongst them. They took no heed of him as he came up, though he stumbled as he crossed the threshold & came clattering over the lead floor, and he saw at once that there was something unwonted toward; but he had but one thought in his mind, to wit, the rescuing of Birdalone.

**H**E went up now behind where the castellan was leaning over the battlement, and pulled his skirt, and when Sir Hymeris turned round, he said: Lord, I have a word for thine ear. But the old knight did but half turn round, and then spake peevishly: Tush, man! another time! seest thou not I have got no eyes for aught save what we see on the lake? Yea, but what then? said the priest. There cometh a boat, said Sir Hymeris, not looking back at him, and our thought is that therein be our lords.

**W**HEN the priest heard that word, it was to him as if hell had o-

pened underneath his feet; & he had no might to speak for a minute; then he cried out: Sir Hymeris, hearken, I pray thee. But the old knight but thrust him back with his hand, and even therewith one of the men-at-arms cried out: I hear the voice of their horn! Then shouted Sir Hymeris: Where art thou, Noise? Blow, man, blow, if ever thou blewest in all thy life! And therewithal came the blare of the brass, and Sir Hymeris nodded to the trumpeter, who blew blast after blast with all his might, so that the priest might as well have been dumb for any hearing he might get; and all the while to Leonard the minutes seemed hours, and he was well-nigh distraught.

**A**ND then when the knight held up his hand for the Noise to stay his blowing, & Leonard strove to speak, the castellan turned on him & said: Peace, Sir Leonard; dost thou not know that now we would listen with our ears to heed if they answer us? Not a word any one man of you, learned or lewd, or ye shall rue it!

**E**VEN therewith came clearly the sound of the horn from the water, and again & yet again; and no man spake but the chaplain, who cried out: Hearken, knight,

Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

it is of Birdalone. But Sir Hymeris laid his hand on his shoulder and said in an angry whisper: Thou shalt be put downstairs, priest, if thou hold not thy peace.

**L**EOCARD drew aback scowling, and went out of the door, & so slowly down the stair, and withdrew him into the cover of the door of the first chamber down from the tower-top, with the mind to waylay Sir Hymeris as he came down; and meanwhile he cursed him for a fool and a dull-wit, and himself yet more, as was but right, for a fool and a licorous traitor.

**B**UT he had not tarried there more than a score of minutes, ere he heard a great shout from those up above: They are come! they are come! And next thereafter came all the men clattering down the stair past him, scarce refraining them from shoving each his neighbour on to the next one; Leonard followed on them, and presently arose great shouting and tumult through all the house, & all folk, men & women, hurried flock-meal toward the water-gate, & with them went Leonard perforce; and sick of heart he was, calling to mind the first coming thither of Birdalone.

**B**UT now when they came to the water-gate, there verily was the Sending Boat just coming to hand; and in the stern stood the three knights together, all clad in their armour, and before them sat three lovely ladies, clad one in gold, one in green, and one in black: and lo, there was the Quest come home.

Chapter II. Now ask they of Birdalone, and Sir Leonard speaks.

**N**OW THE prow touched the stones of the stair, & folk were busy to lay hold of it that the wayfarers might land, but Sir Baudoin cried out in a great voice: Let none be so hardy as to touch this ferry, either now or hereafter; for there is peril therein. And therewith he took Hurea by the hand, & led her out of the boat and up the stair, & she all joyous & wondering; and thereafter came Hugh and his darling, and last of all Arthur & Htra, and she alone of the three women looked downcast, & her eyes wandered about the throng that was before them there, as though she sought something, yet feared to see it.



**B**UT when they were all standing together on the landing plain, and the folk were all about them in a ring, Sir Baudoin spake to the castellan and said: Sir Hymeris, thee and other folk I see here, the sight of whom doth me great joy; but where, I pray thee, is the lady, our friend Birdalone, by whom it is that all we are come happily hither? And he looked around with an anxious face; but Arthur was as pale as ashes, yet he spake nought, and Atra let her hand fall away from his.

**W**HEN spake the castellan, and said: No harm hath befallen the Lady Birdalone; but whiles she hath been somewhat ailing of late, & it is like that she wotteth not what is toward, & keepeth her chamber now, for it is yet betimes in the morning.


**A**S he spake, came thrusting a man through the throng, eager and pale-faced; who but the chaplain; and he said: He would not let me speak, this fool; I cannot choose my time. Lords, I bear evil tidings & an ugly welcome home. The Lady Birdalone is in peril, & she is not in the castle; I wot not where she is. Ye must send armed men to seek her out.

**T**HEREAT fell the silence of woe upon the throng; but Arthur ran forward on the priest with drawn sword, and cried out: I misdoubt me that thou art a traitor; speak! or I will slay thee here and now. If I be a traitor, quoth Leonard, I shall tell thee in little while what ye must do to undo my treason, if there be yet time thereto; so slay me not till ye have heard, and then do what ye will with me.

**B**UT Baudoin put Arthur aside, and said: Refrain thee a little, fair brother, else shall words tumble over each other and we shall know nothing clear. Sir Hymeris, bring our dear ladies to the fairest chambers, and do all honour & courtesy to them. And ye, sweetlings, ye will not begrudge us that we go to seek your friend. Thou priest, come with us a little apart, and tell thy tale as shortly as thou mayst, & fear nought; we be not God's dastards, as the Red Knight and his men.

**V**IRIDIS wept & kissed her love before all folk, and bade him go & do his best to find her friend, or never come back to her else. Much moved, even to tears, was Aurea withal, and reached her hand to Baudoin, and said: If any man on earth can help us





it is thou. Go thou. But Atra wept not, and but said to Arthur: Go thou, it is meet.

**H**EREWITH were the ladies brought to fair chambers; but the three knights went with the priest and Sir Hymeris into the solar, and set a guard at the door that their talk should be privy.

**Chapter III. How they follow the Slot of Birdalone and the Black Knight.**

**I**T was but five minutes ere the priest had told them all that need was; so they let him abide alone there, though sooth to say there was none of them but had good will to break his neck; & the same rede had all three, that there was nought for it but to go their ways with all speed to the Black Valley of the Greywethers, and follow up the slot of Birdalone if it might yet be found; wherefore they bade saddle their horses straightway; & while that was a-doing they ate a morsel, and bade farewell to their lovelings. And they dight them to go, they three together, with but one squire and a sergeant, who were both of them keen trackers and fell woodsmen. But ere they went, by the rede of Arthur they bade Sir Hymeris to arm a two score of men & ride

toward the Red Hold, and beset the ways 'twixt that & the Castle of the Quest; for one and all they deemed that if any harm befell Birdalone, the Red Knight would be at the bottom of it.

**S**O rode those fellows, and came unto the dale but some four hours after Birdalone had happened on the stranger knight; & they took up the slot of her, but not easily, whereas the ground was hard & stony; howbeit, they found tokens of the knight also, finding here and there what they deemed the foot-prints of a tall man. And this was grievous to those fellows, since now they could not but deem that somewhat untoward had befallen Birdalone. But they went on making out the slot, & they followed it with much toil until they came to the doom-ring in the head of the dale, whereas Birdalone and the stranger had sat down to meat; but by that time, so toilsome had been their going, it was somewhat more than dusk, and there was nought for it but to abide there night-long. So a while they sat talking, all of them, & the squire and the sergeant afore-said were not a little timorous of the adventure of making that stead unkenned their sleeping chamber; and to while away the



time, their lords made them tell tales such as they knew concerning that place; and both they said that they had never erst come into the dale but a very little way, & said that they had done so then but trusting in their lords' bidding and the luck of the Quest. Thereafter turned the talk as to what had befallen Birdalone, & the chances of coming on her; and, as folk will in such a plight, they talked the matter over & over again till they were weary and could say no more.

**W**HEN they went to sleep, & nought befell them till they awoke in the broad daylight; but they had little inkling of what hour it was, for all the dale was full of thick white mist that came rolling down from the mountains, so that they could scarce see their hands before them, and there they had to tarry still, would they, would they not; & the sergeant fell to telling tales of folk who had been lost in that stony maze; and all of them deemed, more or less, that this was the work either of evil wights, or it might be of the wizardry of the Red Knight; and, to be short, they all deemed that he it was who had wielded it, save the sergeant, who said that the mountain wights were the masters and not the servants of

m 4

him of the Red Hold.

**T**HUS, then, it betided; but when the said mist had been hanging upon them for some six hours, it rolled up like a curtain, and lo the blue sky and the sun, and the mountains as clear blue as in a picture; and they saw by the sun that it was but a little after high noon.

**B**UT as they rejoiced herein, and betook them once more to tracking out the slot of Birdalone & the other, the sky became suddenly overcast, and down from the jaws of the mountain came a storm of wind and rain, and thunder & lightning, so great that they might scarce see each other's faces, and when it cleared off, in about an hour and a half, and went down the wind to the south-east, the stream was waxen great, and ran brown and furious down the dale, so that it was fordable only here & there; and as for tracking the slot of those twain, there was no need to talk thereof, for the fury of the driving rain had washed all away.

**T**HUS fared they the whole day betwixt fog and clear weather, & they laid them down to rest at night sore disheartened. When the day broke they talked together as to what was best to do; & the sergeant

167



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

aforesaid spake: Lords, said he, meseemeth I am more at home in the Black Valley than ye be; heed ye not wherefore. Now so it is that if we tarry here till night come we wot not what of evil may betide us, or at the least we do nought. Or if we turn back & go southward out of the dale we shall be safe indeed; but safe should we have been at your house, lords, and should have done no less. But now I shall tell you that, if ye will, lords, I shall guide you to a pass that goeth out of the head of the dale to our right hands, & so turneth the flank of the mountains, and cometh out into the country which lieth about the Red Hold; and meseemeth it is thitherward that we must seek if we would hear any tidings of the lady; for there may we lay in ambush & beset the ways that lead up to the Hold, by which she must have been brought if she hath not been carried through the air. How say ye, lords? Soothly there is peril therein; yet meseemeth peril no more than in our abiding another night in the Black Valley.


**S**HID Arthur: We heed not the peril if there be aught to be done; wherefore let us be stirring straightway. And so said they all. Wherefore they gat to horse, & rode

up to the very head of the valley, and the weather was now calm and bright.

**B**UT the sergeant brought them to the pass whereof the stranger knight had spoken to Birdalone, which led into the Red Knight's country, and without more ado they entered it when it was now about three hours after noon. But the way was both steep & rough, so that they had much toil, and went not very far ere night fell upon them, and the moon was not yet up. So when they had stumbled on another two hours, & their horses were much spent and they themselves not a little weary, they laid them down to sleep, after they had eaten such meat as they had with them, in a place where was a little grass for the horses to bite; for all the road hitherto had been mere grim stones and big rocks, walled on either side by stony screes, above which rose steep & beetling crags.

**I**N the dawn they arose again, and made no ado till they were in the saddle, and rode till they came to the crest of the pass, and came out thence after a while on to the swelling flank of a huge mountain (as it might be the side of the mountain of Plinlimmon in Wales), which was





grassed and nought craggy,  
but utterly treeless.

**N**OW THE sergeant led  
them somewhat athwart  
the said mountain till  
they began to go down, and  
saw below them a country of  
little hills much covered with  
wood, and in a while, and ere it  
was noon, they were among the  
said woods, which were grown  
mostly with big trees, as oak  
here and beech there, and the  
going was good for them.

**Chapter IV. Of the slaying of  
friend and foe.**

**C**AME they, three  
hours after noon,  
to where was a  
clearing in the  
woodland, and a  
long narrow plain  
some furlong over lay before  
them, with a river running a-  
long it, and the wood rose on  
the other side high and thick,  
so that the said plain looked  
even as a wide green highway  
leading from somewhence to  
somewhither.

**A**T the edge hereof their  
way/leader, the sergeant,  
bade draw rein, and said:  
Lords, we are now in the lands  
of the Red Hold, and therein  
is mickle peril and dread to any  
save stout hearts as ye be; but  
meseems we are so steaded,  
that whatever may come out of  
the Black Valley of the Grey-

wethers to the Red Hold, ye  
now may scarce miss. Yonder  
along this plain to the north  
lies the way to the said Hold,  
and any man coming from the  
head of the valley is sure to  
come by the way we have come,  
& will pass us not many yards  
at the worst from where we  
now be. On the other hand, if  
any come to the Hold from  
the mouth of the Black Val-  
ley, then along this green road  
must they needs pass under  
your very eyes. Lastly, if we do  
what we are come to do, to wit,  
to deliver the lady from the  
Red Knight, then, the deed  
done, we have to take the green  
road southward, and ride it for  
a league & then turn east, and  
we shall have our heads turned  
toward the Castle of the Quest,  
and shall speedily fall in with  
Sir Hymeris and our men who  
be guarding the out-gates of  
the Red Knight's country to-  
ward our house. So now, by my  
rede, ye shall lay in covert here  
and abide a while what may be/  
fall; if nought come hereby ere  
two hours be lacking of sun-  
set, then may we seek further.

**T**HEY all ye said this, &  
gat off their horses, &  
lay quiet on the grass,  
not even speaking save soft-  
ly. And when they had abided  
thus scarce an hour's space,  
the squire, who was a man of

**Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending**





Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

very fine ear, held up his hand as though to bid utter silence, and all hearkened eagerly. Presently he said: Hear ye not? Said Arthur: Meseemeth I hear a faint tinkle as of a sheepbell. Said the squire: 'Tis the clashing of swords down the plain to the south, & meseemeth 'tis but of two: ride we thither?

**Q**UOTH Baudoin: Nay, not by my rede; for if we can hear them they can hear us; let us quietly edge along afoot somewhat nigher their way, ever keeping the corner of the wood betwixt us and the open plain. Now then to it; and let each man keep his weapons ready.

**E**VEN so did they, and spread out in a line as they went, in such wise that there was some six paces betwixt each man of them, and they went softly forward; Baudoin went first, Hugh second, then Arthur; then the squire and the sergeant last of all.

**N**OW when they had gone but a quarter of an hour, the squire caught up with Arthur, and spake to him softly, & said: The voice of the swords has been silent now a while, and I heard a voice crying out e'en now, a woman's voice. And now again I could well nigh deem that I hear

horse/hoofs.

**A**RTHUR nodded to him, and they went but a little further ere he said: Lo, lo! 'tis the time of the eyes now! Here come folk. And therewithal they stayed them. for the wood turned somewhat here, so as to hide all but a little of the plain, and round the wood neib the new-comers hove in sight, & were close on them at once, so that they might see them clearly, to wit, a knight weaponed, clad all in red, a very big man, riding on a great bay horse, and behind him a woman going afoot in very piteous plight; for she was tethered to the horse's crupper by a thong that bound her wrists together, so that she had but just room left 'twixt her and the horse that she might walk, and round about her neck was hung a man's head newly hewn off.

**H**IS sight they all saw at once, and were out of the wood in a trice with weapons aloft, for they knew both the man and the woman, that they were the Red Knight and Birdalone.

**S**O swift and sudden had they been, that he had no time either to spur or even to draw his sword; but he had a heavy steel axe in his hand as the first man came up



to him, which was the tall Baudoin; and therewith he smote down on Baudoin so fierce and huge a stroke, that came on him betwixt neck & shoulder, that all gave way before it, and the Golden Knight fell to earth all carven & stark dead: but even therewith fell Hugh, the squire, and the sergeant on the Red Knight; for Arthur had run to Birdalone & sheared her loose from her tether. The sergeant smote him on the right arm with a maul, so that the axe fell to the ground; the squire's sword came on the side of his head, & as it was cast back beneath the stroke, Hugh thrust his sword through the throat of him, and down he fell unto the earth and was dead in less than a minute.

**W**HEN gathered the others round about Baudoin, and saw at once that he was dead; & Birdalone came thrusting through the press of them, and knelt down beside him, and when she saw her friend so piteously dight, she wept and wailed over him as one who might not be comforted; and Hugh stood over her and let his tears fall down upon the dead man; and withal the squire & the sergeant did not refrain their lamentations, for sore beloved was Sir Baudoin the Golden Knight.

**B**UT Arthur spake dry-eyed, though there was grief in his countenance, and he said: fellows, & thou, lady, let us lament afterwards, but now is time for us to get us gone hence as speedily as may be. Yet I will ask, doth any know whose is this head that the slain tyrant here had hung about the lady's neck? May the fiends curse him therefor!

**S**AID the sergeant: Yea, lords, that wot I; this is the head of the Red Knight's captain & head man, Sir Thomas of Esteliffe; one of the hardiest of knights he was while he was alive, as ye surely wot, lords; neither, as I have heard say, was he as cruel a tyrant as his lord that lieth there ready for the ravens.

**N**OW had Birdalone arisen and was standing facing Arthur; her face was pale and full of anguish, and she was dabbled with blood from the dead man's neck; but there was nought of shame in her face as she stood there and spoke: O my living friends, who have but now saved me, ye and my dead friends, from what shame and death I know not, the tale of this woful hap is over long to tell if there be peril at hand, and I scarce alive from dread and sorrow; but shortly thus it is: This man,



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

whose head here lieth, entrap-  
ped me as I foolishly wander-  
ed in the Black Valley, and af-  
terwards delivered me, & was  
leading me to your castle, my  
friends, when this other one,  
his master, the tyrant of the  
Red Hold, came upon him, and  
fell upon him and slew him as  
a traitor, and dighted me as ye  
saw. And, woe's me! I am the  
fool whose folly has slain your  
friend and mine. Wherefore I  
am not worthy of your fellow-  
ship, and ye shall cast me forth  
of it; or to slay me were better.

**S**O she spake, gazing ear-  
nestly on Arthur; and so  
troubled & grieved, that  
she might well have died but  
for her woodland breeding, &  
the toil of the days she had  
won through in the House un-  
der the Wood.

**A**T Hugh spake gently  
to her & said: Keep up  
thine heart yet, maiden;  
for the hand of fate it is that  
led thee, and none doeth griev-  
ously amiss but if he mean  
wrong/doing in his heart; and  
we know thee for true; and  
thou hast been our helper, and  
brought our lovelings unto us  
to make us happy.

**B**UT she brake out weep-  
ing afresh, and said: O  
no, no! it is but woe and  
weariness I have brought unto  
my friends; and to myself woe


and weariness yet more.

**A**ND she looked piteous-  
ly into Arthur's face, &  
hard & stern it seemed  
unto her; and she writhed and  
wrung her hands for anguish.  
But he spake and said: This  
will we look into when we be  
safe behind our walls, and see  
what she hath done amiss and  
what not amiss. But now is  
there but one thing to do, and  
that is to get us speedily on our  
way to the Castle of the Quest,  
and bind our fellow's body on  
his horse that he also may ride  
the horse of the accursed thief

Then they turned to go to-  
ward their horses; but there-  
with Birdalone smote her foot  
against the slain knight's head,  
and shrank aback from it, and  
pointed down toward it and  
spake no word; & Hugh said:  
friends, the lady is right, this  
at least we will cover with earth.  
Do ye go fetch hither our hor-  
ses, since we be on the road, & I  
will do here what need is mean-  
while.

**S**O they went on that er-  
rand, and then Hugh and  
Birdalone between them  
dug a hole with the swords &  
laid the head of the captain of  
the Red Knight therein. And  
forsooth, somewhat would  
Birdalone have wept for him  
had she had a tear to spare.





**W**HEN they fell to & bound the dead Baudoin on the Red Knight's mighty bay steed, so that no time might be wasted; & when that was done, and the others had not come back with their horses, Hugh took Birdalone's hand and led her down to the stream and washed the gore off her bosom, & she washed her face and her hands and let him lead her back again in such wise that now she could hearken to the words of comfort he spake to her, and piteous kind he seemed unto her; so that at last she plucked up heart, and asked him how Viridis did. Quoth he: They be all safe at home in the castle, and Viridis is well & loveth thee well. And Hurea was well, woe worth the while for her now! As for Atra, she has not been so glad as the other twain, I wot not wherefore.


**W**HEN as he spake were the others come up with the horses, and Arthur nodded yeasay when he saw what had been done with Baudoin dead; and so they gat to horse, & Birdalone it was that rode Baudoin's steed. Then they went their ways, crossing the river into the wood; & the sergeant was ever way/leader, but the squire led the horse which bore the sorrowful bur-

den of the dead Knight of the Quest.

**Chapter V. They come Home to the Castle of the Quest.**

**Part V. The Tale of the Quest's Ending**

**N**OW THEY had gone but some three hours, riding dreary & night speechless all of them, ere they began to know the land they were in, and that they were coming to the place where they might look presently to fall in with Sir Hymeris and his company; and even so the meeting betid, that they saw men standing & going about their horses beside a little wood, & knew them presently for their folk, who mounted at once and spurred forward to meet them, spears aloft. Speedily then was the joy of those abiders turned in to sorrow, nor may the grief of Sir Hymeris be told, so great it was; and Birdalone looked on and saw the mourning and lamentation of the warriors, and eked was her anguish of mind; and she beheld Arthur the Black Squire, how he sat still upon his horse with a hard and dreary countenance, and looked on those mourners almost as if he contemned them. But Sir Hymeris came up to Birdalone, & knelt before her and kissed her hand, and said: If my heart might rejoice in





Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

aught, as some day it will, it would rejoice in seeing thee safe and sound, lady; here at least is gain to set beside the loss.

**S**HE thanked him, but looked askance toward Arthur, who said: If that be gain, yet is there more, for the Red Knight lieth in the green plain for a supper to the wolf and the crow. Vengeance there hath been, & belike more yet may come. But now, if ye have lamented as much as ye deem befitteth warriors, let us tarry here no longer; for even yet meseemeth shall we be safer behind walls, now that our chief and captain is slain, I scarce know in what quarrel.

**N**ONE naysaid it, so they all rode forth together, and the sergeant and the squire & Sir Hugh told of their tale what they might to Sir Hymeris and the others; but Arthur held his peace, and rode aloof from Birdalone, whereas Sir Hymeris and Hugh rode on either side of her, and did not spare to comfort her what they might.

**T**HEY rode straight on, & made no stay for nightfall, and thus came home to the Castle of the Quest before the day was full; & woful was their entry as they went in the dawn underneath the gate of the said castle, & soon was

the whole house astir and lamenting.

**A**S for Birdalone, when she got down from her horse in the gateway, and was stiff & weary of body, and all dazed and confused of mind, there was but little life in her; nor could she so much as think of the new day & Aurea's awakening, but crept up unto her own chamber, so long as it seemed since she had left it, though it was but a little while; and she cast herself up on the bed and fell asleep whether she would or not, and so forgot her much sorrow & her little hope.

Chapter VI. Of the Talk betwixt Birdalone and Viridis.

**W**HEN she woke again, she had slept the night away, & it was broad day, and for a moment she lay wondering what was the burden upon her; but presently she called it all to mind, and deemed it were well might she forget it all again. Anon she became aware of someone moving about the chamber, & she looked about unhappily; and lo! a woman, fair & dainty, clad all in green, & it was Viridis that had come there. But when she saw Birdalone stirring, she came up to her & kiss



ed her sweetly and kindly, and wept over her, so that Birdalone might nowise refrain her tears. But when she might cease weeping, she said to Viridis: Tell me, art thou weeping for thy friend who is lost, and who shall be thy friend no more; or thy friend whom thou hast found? Said Viridis: forsooth I have wept for Bau-doin plenteously, & he is worthy of it, for he was valiant and true & kind. Said Birdalone: True is that; but I meant not my question so; but rather I would ask thee if thou weep-est because thine heart must needs cast me away; or because thou hast found me again? Quoth Viridis: Whoso may be dead, or whoso alive, but if it were Hugh, my loving, I were rejoiced beyond measure to find thee, my friend. And again she kissed her as one who was glad and kind. But for new rest of soul and for joy, Birdalone fell a weeping afresh.

**A**GAIN she spake: And what mind have the others about me? for thou art but one, though the dearest, save.... And would they punish me for my fault and folly that has slain the best man in the world? If the punishment be short of putting me forth of their fellowship, I were fain thereof.

**V**IRIDIS laughed: forsooth, she said, they have much to punish thee for! whereas it was by thy doing and thy valiance that we all came together again and the Quest was accomplished. Nay, but tell me, said Birdalone, what do they say of me, each one of them?

**V**IRIDIS reddened; she said: Hugh, my mate, saith all good of thee; though no one of carle folk may be sorrier of the loss of his fellow. Aurea layeth not the death of her man upon thee; and she saith: When the fountain of tears is dried up in me, I will see her and comfort her, as she me. Atra saith: she saith but little, yet she saith: So is it fated. I had done belike no better, but worse than she.

**N**OW turned Birdalone red & then pale again, and she said, but in a quavering voice: And the Black Squire, Arthur, what sayeth he? Said Viridis: He sayeth nought of thee, but that he would hear all the tale of what befell thee in the Black Valley. Sweet friend, said Birdalone, I pray thee of thy kindness and sweetness that thou go unto him presently & bring him in hither, & then I will tell him all; and he and thou and I together.



**V**IRIDIS said: There is this to be said, that when a man loveth a woman he coveteth her, to have her all wholly to himself, and hard and evil he groweth for the time that he misdoubteth her whom he loveth. And I will tell thee that this man is jealous lest thou wert never so little kind to the slain stranger knight whose head the tyrant hung about thee. furthermore, I fear there is no help for it that thou wilt undo the happiness of one of us, that is Atra; yet were it better that that befell later than sooner. And if Sir Arthur come in here to thee, & hath thy tale with none beside save me, meseems the poor Atra will feel a bitter smart because of it. Were it not better that we all meet presently in the solar, and that there thou tell thy tale to us all? & thereafter shall we tell the tale of our deliverance & our coming hither. And thus doing, it will seem less like to the breaking up of our fellowship.

**S**HO Birdalone: It will be hard for me to tell my tale before Atra & before him. Might it not be that thou hearken to it here and now, & tell it to the others hereafter? Nay, nay, said Viridis, I am not a proper minstrel to take the word out of thy mouth. Never shall

I be able to tell it so that they shall trow it as if they had seen it all. Besides, when all is told, then shall we be more bound together again. I pray thee, & I pray thee, sweet, do so much for me as to tell thy tale to the fellowship of us. And if it be hard to thee, look upon it as my share of the punishment which is due to thee for falling into that mishap.

**S**MILED Birdalone ruefully, and said: So be it; & may the share of the others be as light as thine, sister. Yet soothly were I liefer that my body & my skin should pay the forfeit. But now, since I must needs do this, the sooner is the better meseemeth.

**I**N a little half hour, said Viridis, will I bring what is left of our fellowship into the solar to hearken thee. So come thou there unto us when thou art clad. And hear thou be not too meek & humble, and bow thyself to us in fear of our sorrow. for whereas thou didst speak of our punishing thee, there will be one there whom thou mayst easily punish to thy pleasure; forsooth, friend, I rue that so it is; but since it will not better be, what may I do but wish thee happy and him also.



**T**HEREWITH she turned and went out of the chamber, and Birdalone, left to herself, felt a secret joy in her soul that she might not master, despite the sorrow of her friends, whatever it might be.

**Chapter VII. Birdalone telleth the tale of her wandering up the Valley of the Greywethers.**

**N**OW Viridis did as she said, and brought them all into the solar; there was none lacking save Bau-  
doin, and they sat silently in a half ring, till the door opened and Birdalone came in to them, clad all simply in but a black coat; and she made obeisance to them, & stood there with her head bent down as if they were her judges, for so in sooth she deemed them. Then Hugh bade her sit down amongst them; but she said: Nay, I will not sit amongst you till ye have heard my story, and ye have told me that I am yet of your fellowship. None said aught; Atra looked straight before her, & her eyes met not Birdalone's eyes; Arthur looked down on the ground; but Hugh and Viridis looked kindly on Birdalone, and to Viridis' eyes the tears were come.

11

**T**HEN spake Birdalone and said: I am here as one that hath done amiss; but I will tell you, so that ye may not think worse of me than ye should, that when ye were gone, ye champions, and the time wore long that ye came not again, it lay heavy on my heart, and hope waned & fear waxed, and my soul so grieved my body that I thought to fall sick thereof, and I knew that it would be ill for you to come home hither & find me sick; so that I longed sore to do somewhat which should make me whole again. Then weird would that I should hear all the tale of the Black Valley of the Greywethers, and of how therein is whiles granted fulfilment of desire; & methought how well it were if I might seek the adventure there & accomplish it. Thereof, doubtless, hath the chaplain, Sir Leonard, told you; but this furthermore would I say, that his doing herein was nought; all was done by my doing and by my bidding, and he might not choose but do it. Wherefore I do pray you all earnestly that ye keep no grudge against him, but pardon him all. Tell me, then, will ye do thus much?

**S**aid Hugh: Let him be pardoned, if he can take pardon. But Ar-

177



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

thur spake not, and Birdalone looked on him anxiously, and her face was moved, and it was with her throat as if she had swallowed something down. Then she spake again, and fell to tell them all that had betid to her when she went to the Black Valley, even as is hereafore writ, hiding nought that had been done and said; and freely she told it, without fear or shame, and with such clearness and sweetness of words that no one of them doubted her aught; & Arthur lifted up his head, and once & again his eyes met hers, and there was nought of hardness in them, though they turned away at once.

**S**O at last fell Birdalone to telling what betid after they two, the stranger-knight and she, left the valley of the force and fell to riding the wild wood with their heads turned toward the Castle of the Quest; and she said:

**W**HEN we turned into the wood away from the said valley it lacked some four hours of noon; & we rode till noon was, & rested by a stream side and ate, for we knew no cause wherefore we should hasten overmuch; but my fellow the strange knight was downcast and heavy, and some might have called him

sullen. But I strove to make him of better cheer, and spake to him kindly, as to one who of an enemy had become a friend; but he answered me: Lady, it availeth not; I grieve that I am no better company than thou seest me, and I have striven to be merrier; but apart from all that I wot and that thou wotest which should make me of evil cheer, there is now a weight upon my heart which I cannot lift, such as never have I felt erst. So by thy leave we will to horse at once, that we may the speedier come to the Castle of the Quest & Sir Hymeris' prison.

**S**O I arose, but smiled on him and said: Hold up thine heart, friend! for thee shall be no prison at the Castle of the Quest, but the fair welcome of friends. He said nought, and mended not his cheer; and in this plight we gat to horse & rode on for some three hours more, till we came out of the thick forest into a long clearing, which went like a wide highway of greensward between the thicket, & it seemed as if the hand of man had cleared that said green road. Thereto we had come, following a little river which came out on to the clearing with us, and then, turning, ran well nigh amidst it toward the north.



**N**OW when we were come thither, and were betwixt the thicket and the water's edge, we drew rein, and it seemed to me as fair a stead as might be in the woodland, and I looked thereon well pleased & with a happy heart. But the knight said: Lady, art thou not exceeding weary? Nay, said I, not in any wise. Said he: It is strange then, for so weary am I, that I must in any case get off my horse & lay me down on the grass here, or I shall drop from the saddle. And therewith he lighted down and stood by me a little, as to help me off my horse; but I said to him: Knight, I pray thee, even if ye be weary, to struggle forward a little, lest we be in peril here. In peril? quoth he; yea, that might be if the Red Knight knew of our whereabouts; but how should that be? He spoke this heavily, as one scarce awake; and then he said: I pray thee pardon me, lady, but for nought may I hold my head up; suffer me to sleep but a little, & then will I arise & lead thee straight to thy journey's end. There withal he laid him down on the grass & was presently asleep, & I sat down by him all dismayed. At first, indeed, I doubted some treachery in him, for how might I trust him wholly after all that had come and gone?

but when I saw that there was no feigning in his sleep, I set that doubt aside, & knew not what to make of it.

**T**HUS passed an hour, and from time to time I shook him and strove to waken him, but it was all in vain; so I knew none other rede than to abide his awakening; for I knew not the way to take toward this castle; and, moreover, though he were a knight, & armed, yet might it be perilous for him if he were left there alone and unguarded; so I abode.

**B**UT now came new tidings. Methought I heard the sound of the tinkling of weapons and armour; the green highway so turned that a wood neb about an hundred yards to the north hid it from my sight, so that a man might have drawn somewhat near to us without being seen, came he on the hither side of the river. So I stood up hastily, and strung my bow, & took a shaft in my fingers, & no sooner was it done than there came a rider round about the aforesaid wood neb. He was all armed & had a red surcoat, and rode a great shining bay horse. I kept my eye upon him while I stirred the sleeping knight with my foot, and cried to him to wake, but he scarce moved, and but uttered words without sense.



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

**N**OW the new-comer drew rein for a moment when he saw us, and then moved on a little toward me, but I nocked a shaft and pointed it at him, and cried out to him to stay. Then I heard a great rattling laugh come from him, & he shouted: Nay, do thou stay, fair wood-wife, and I will risk thy shafts to come at thee. But why doth not the sluggard at thy feet rise up and stand before me, if he be thy loving? Or is he dead? His voice was harsh and big, & I feared him sore; and it was as much because of fear as of hardihood, that I drew & loosed straightway; and doubtless it was because of fear that I saw my shaft fly an inch or so over his right shoulder. I heard his rattling laugh again, and saw him bend forward as he spurred; I knew that time lacked for drawing another shaft, so I caught up my skirts and ran all I might; but swift-foot as I be, it availed me nought, for I was cumbered with my gown, and moreover I was confused with not knowing whither to run, since I wotted that in the water the horse would do better than I.

**S**o he was up with me in a twinkling, and reached out his hand and caught hold of me by the hair, & tug-

ged me to him as he reined back his horse. Then he laughed again and said: forsooth she will look better when she is no longer reddened & roughened with fleeing; & by Red Peter! what limbs she hath! Then he let me loose and got off his horse, and shoved me on before him till we came to where the Black One lay still sleeping heavily. Then the Red Knight stood over against me, & looked hard into my face; and I saw how huge a man he was, & how a lock of bright red hair came out from under his sallet. His eyes were green & fierce underneath shaggy red eyebrows; terrible he was to look on.

**N**OW he spake fiercely and roughly, & as though he had something against me: Tell me, thou, who thou art and who this is? I answered nought, for fear had frozen my speech. He stamped his foot on the ground and cried: Hah! art thou gone dumb? Speak! thou wert best! I said, all quaking: My name is Birdalene; I belong to no one; I have no kindred: as for this man, I know not his name. He said: Comest thou from the Castle of the Quest? Art thou the whore of those lily and rose champions there? My heart was hot with anger in spite of my dread, but I spake: I came



from the Castle of the Quest.

He said: And this man (therewith he turned about & spurned him in the side), where didst thou happen upon him?

Again I was silent, and he roared out at me: So thou wilt not answer! Beware, or I may see how to compel the speech of thee. Now answer me this: Was it in the Black Valley of the Greywethers that ye two came together? Again I knew not how to answer, lest I might do a wrong to him who had repented him of the wrong he had done me. But the Red Knight burst out a laughing and said: It shall be remembered against thee, first, that thou didst let fly a shaft at me; second, that thou didst run from me; and thirdly, that thou hast been slack in answering my questions. But all this scathes me nought; first, because thy shaft missed me; second, because thy legs failed thee (though they were fair to look on, running); & third, because all thou canst tell me I know without thine answering. Now thee will I tell that this is Friday, and that ye two first met in the Black Valley on Tuesday; now I will ask this last question, and thou mayst answer it or not as thou wilt; for presently I shall wake this brisk and stirring knight, and

n 3

I deem that he will tell me the truth of this if of nought else. Tell me, thou whore of the Questing Champions, where and how many times thou hast lain in this good knight's arms since last Tuesday? No-where & never, quoth I. Thou liest, I doubt me, said the Red Knight; howsoever, let us see what this doughty one will say. Hah! thou deemest he shall be hard to wake up, dost thou not? Well, I shall see to that. He who giveth sleep may take it away again.

**H**EREWITH he went up to the Black One and stooped adown over his head, and spake some words over him, but so softly that I heard not their import; and straightway the sleeper rose up so suddenly that he well-nigh smote against the Red Knight. He stood awhile staggering, & blinking at the other one, but somehow got his sword drawn forth, & the Red Knight hindered him nought therein, but spake anon when the other was come to himself somewhat: The sele of the day to thee, Sir Thomas, True Thomas! fair is thy bed, and most fair thy bedfellow.

**H**E Black Knight drew aback from him and was now come awake, wherefore he stood on his guard, but

181

Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

said nought. Then said the Red Knight: Sir Thomas, I have been asking this fair lady a question, but her memory faileth her, & she may not answer it; perchance thou mayst do better. Tell me where and how many times hast thou bedded her betwixt last Tuesday and this? *N*owhere & never, cried Sir Thomas, knitting his brows & handling his sword. *H*ah, said the Red Knight, an echo of her speech is this. Lo, the tale ye have made up betwixt you. But at least, having done mine errand, though meseemeth somewhat leisurely, & having gotten the woman for me, thou art now bringing her on to the Red Hold, whatever thou hast done with her on the road? *I* am not, said my fellow, I am leading her away from the Red Hold. *P*ity of thee, quoth the other, that thou hast fallen in with me, & thou but half-armed. *A*nd he raised aloft his sword; but presently sank it again, & let the point rest on the earth.

**W**HEN he spoke again, not mockingly as erst: *A* word before we end it, Thomas: thou hast hitherto done well by me, as I by thee. I say thou hast gotten this woman, and I doubt not that at first thou hadst the mind to bring her to me unminished;

but then thou wert overcome by her beauty, as forsooth I know thee woman/mad, & thou hadst meant to keep her for thyself, as forsooth I marvel not. But in thy love/making thou hast not bethought thee that keep her to thyself thou mayst not while I am above ground, save thou bewray me, and join thee to my foemen and thine. Because I am such a man, that what I desire that will I have. for this reason, when I misdoubted me of thee for thy much/tarrying, I cast the sleep over thee, & have caught thee. for what wilt thou do? Doubt it not, that if our swords meet, I shall pay thee for trying to take my bed/thrall from me by taking from thee no more than thy life. But now will I forgive thee all if thou wilt ride home quietly with me and this damsel/errant to the Red Hold, and let her be mine & not thine so long as I will; & then afterwards, if thou wilt, she shall be thine as long as thou wilt. Now behold, both this chance & thy life is a mere gift of me to thee, for otherwise thou shalt have neither damsel nor life.

**Y**EA, yea, said my friend, I know what thou wouldst: I have been no unhandy devil to thee this long while, and thou wouldst fain keep me still; but now I will be



devil no longer, on this earth at least, but will die & take my luck of it. And do thou, God, see to the saving of this damsel, since thou hast taken the matter out of my hands. farewell, dear maiden!

**S**CARCE was the word out of his mouth ere his sword was in the air, and he smote so fierce and straight that he beat down the huge man's blade, and, ere he could master it again, smote the Red Knight so heavily on the crest that he fell to his knees; & the heart rose in me, for I deemed that he might yet prevail; and in as 'twere a flash I bethought me of the knife at my girdlestead, & drew it and ran to the Red Knight, & tore aside his mail hood with one hand and thrust the knife into his shoulder with the other; but so mighty was he that he heeded nought the hurt, but swept his sword back/handed at the Black Knight's unarmed leg, and smote him so sore a wound that down he fell clattering. Then arose the Red Knight, & thrust me from him with the left hand, and strode over my fellow/farer & thrust his sword through his throat. Then he turned to me, & spake in a braying voice as if a harsh horn were blown: Abide thou; if thou takest one step I will

slay thee at once. So he went and sat down on a bank a little way from the dead man, and wiped his sword on the grass and laid it beside him, and so sat pondering a while. Thereafter he called me to him, and bade me stand in face of him with my hands clasped before me. Then he spake to me: Thou art my thrall and my having, since I had thus doomed it no few days ago; & thou art now in my hands for me to do with as I will. Now instead of being meek and obedient to me thou hast rebelled against me, shot an arrow at me, run from me, denied answer to my questions, & thrust a knife into me. To be short, thou hast made thyself my foe. furthermore, it is by thy doing that I have lost a right good servant and a trusty fellow, and one that I loved; it is thou that hast slain him. Now have I been pondering what I shall do with thee. I said: If I have deserved the death, then make an end & slay me presently; but bring me not to thine house, I pray thee. I pray by the mother that bore thee!

**Q**UOTH he: Hold thy peace, it is not what thou deservest that I am looking to, but what shall pleasure me. Now hearken; I say that thou hast made thee

Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

my foe, & I have overcome thee; thou art my runaway thrall, & I have caught thee. As my foe I might slay thee in any evil way it might like me; as my thrall I might well chastise thee as sharply & as bitterly as I would. But it is not my pleasure to slay thee, rather I will bring thee to the Red Hold, & there see what we may make of thee; whereas I cannot but deem that in thee is the making of some what more than a thrall; and if not, then a thrall must thou needs be. Again as to the chastising of thee, that also I forgive thee since I have gotten the hope aforesaid. Yet forsooth some shame must I do thee to pay thee back for the love that was betwixt thee and the slain man. I will ponder what it shall be; but take heed that whatsoever it shall be, it will not avail thee to pray me to forego it, though thy speech be as fair & sweet as thy body.

**W**HEREWITH he was silent a while, and I stood there not daring to move, and my heart was so downcast that all the sweetness of life seemed departed. Yet I withheld lamentations or prayers, thinking within myself, who knows what occasion may be between this & the Red Hold for my escaping; let me keep myself alive for that if it may be.

**P**RESENTLY he arose and took his sword, & went up to the slain man's body & smote the head from off it. Then he went to the two horses of Sir Thomas and of me, & took from them such gear of girths & thongs as he would, and therewith he dight me as ye saw, doing a girth about my middle & making me fast to a line wherewith to hold me in tow. And then he did that other thing which sickens my very soul to tell of, to wit, that he took the slain man's head & tied a lace thereto, and hung it about my neck; and as he did so, he said: This jewel shalt thou thyself bear to mine house; & there belike shall we lay it in earth, since the man was my trusty fellow. Lo now, this is all the ill I shall do thee till it be tried of what avail thou art. This is a shamming to thee and not a torment, for I will ride a foot's pace, & the green way is both soft and smooth; wherefore fear not that I shall throw thee down or drag thee along. And tomorrow thy shame shall be gone and we shall see what is to betide.

**N**O, friends, this is the last word he spake ere he was slain, and the ending of my tale; for we had gone thus but a little way ere



ye brake out of the wood upon us; & then befell the death of one friend, & the doubt, maybe, of the others, and all the grief and sorrow that I shall never be quit of unless ye forgive me where I have done amiss, and help me in the days to come. And she spread out her hands before them, & bowed her head, and the tears fell from her eyes on to the floor.

**V**IRIDIS wept at Birdalone's weeping, and Hurea for her own sorrow, which this other sorrow stirred. Atra wept not, but her face was sadder than weeping.

**B**UT Arthur spake and said: Herein hath been the hand of Weird, and hath been heavy on us; but no blame have we to lay on our sister Birdalone, nor hath she done light-mindedly by us; though maybe she erred in not trusting to the good hap of the Quest to bring us back in due time: and all that she saith do we trow as if it were written in the holy Gospel. They all ye said this, & called on her to come amongst them; but she thought of little at first save the joy of hearing the sweetness of those words as Arthur spake them; wherefore she hung back a little, and thought shame of it that she might not give more heed to the others

of them. Then came Viridis & took her by the hand and led her to Sir Hugh, and Birdalone knelt down before him & took his hand to kiss it, but he put both hands about her face and kissed her kindly and merrily on the lips. Then she knelt before Hurea, and was hapless before her; but Hurea kissed her, and bade her be of better cheer, albeit the words came coldly from her mouth. Next she came to Arthur, and knelt before him and took his hand and kissed it, and thanked him kindly for his kind words, looking into his face meanwhile; & she saw that it was pale and troubled now, and she longed to be alone with him that she might ask him wherefore.

**A**S for Atra, she arose as Birdalone came before her, and cast her arms about her neck, & wept and sobbed upon her bosom, and then went hurrying from out the solar and into the hall, & walked to and fro there a while until the passion that tore her was lulled somewhat, & she might show her face to them calm & friendly once more. And as she entered Arthur was speaking, and he said:

**O** you, ladies, I tell what we of the castle wot better than well, that our dear friend hath escaped so heavy a



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

fate in escaping the Red Hold, that it were unmeet for us to murmur at our loss in our fellow; for a warrior's life, which is ever in peril of death, is nought over heavy a ransom for such a friend, and so dear and lovely, from such a long & evil death. Whereas ye must wot that the said Hold hath this long while been a very treasure-house of woes and a coffer of lamentations; for merciless was the tyrant thereof, & merciless all his folk. Now another time, when ye are stronger in heart than now ye be, I may tell you tales thereof closer and more nicely of those who did his will; as of his innermost band of men-at-arms, called the Millers; and of his fellow-worker in wizardry & venoms, called the Apothecary; and the three hags, called the furies; & the three young women, called the Graces; & his hounds that love man's flesh; & the like tales, as evil as night-mares turned into deeds of the day. But now and here will I say this, that when we have done the obsequies of our dear fellow, it were good that we follow up the battle so valiantly begun by him. I mean that the Quest of our ladies being now accomplished, we should turn what is left of the fellowship into a war against the Red Hold and its evil things; and that so

soon as the relics of Baudoin are laid in earth, we gather force & go thither in arms to live or die in the quarrel, & so sweeten the earth, as did the men of ancient days when they slew the dragons and the giants, & the children of hell, and the sons of Cain.

**H**IS cheek flushed as he spoke, and he looked around till his eyes fell on Birdalone, & he saw that her face also glowed and her eyes gleamed; but Viridis, her heart sank so that she paled, and her lips trembled.

**B**UT Hurea spake & said: I thank thee for thy word, Black Squire, and I know that my man shall rejoice in Paradise when he knoweth of it, and thereof shall I tell him tomorrow when the mass is said for him.

**A**ND ATRH said: Good is the word, & we look to it that the deed shall be better yet. Thus hath the evil arisen that shall destroy the evil, as oft hath been when the valiant have been grieved, & the joy of the true-hearted hath been stolen from them; then the hand doth the doughty deed and the heart hath ease, and solaced is sorrow.

**T**HEY looked on her and wondered, for she spake with her head upraised



and her eyes glittering, as she had been one of the wise women of yore agone. And Birdalone feared her, though she loved her.

**Q**UICKLY spake Hugh, and said: Brother, this is well thought of indeed, & I marvel that I did not prevent thee; and I am thine to live and die with thee. And the adventure is nought unlikely; for if we have lost a captain they have lost their head devil, and their head little devil; moreover, the good men of Greenford shall join them to us, and that shall make us strong, whereas they have men enough, & those stout men at arms; and artificers they have to make us engines, and do other wisdom; & therewithal money to buy or to wage what they will. Wherefore, to my mind, we were best to make no tarrying, but send out the messengers for the hosting straightway.

**S**TRAIGHTWAY, said the Black Squire; and let us go now and find Sir Hymeris. So they arose both and went their ways, and left the women there alone, & were gone a good while.

Chapter VIII. Atra and Birdalone talk together while the Lords sit at the Murder council.

Part V. The Tale of the Quest's Ending

**MEANWHILE** of their absence, Viridis sat sad and silent and downcast, though she wept not, for her gladness, which erst had been so great, seemed now reft from her; and no merrier was Aurea, as might have been looked for. But Atra came quietly unto Birdalone, and said softly: I have a word for thee if thou wilt come forth with me into the hall. Birdalone's heart failed her somewhat, but she suffered Atra to take her hand, and they went into the hall together, and Atra brought her into a shot window, & they sat down together side by side and were silent awhile. Spake Atra then, trembling & reddening: Birdalone, knowest thou what thought, what hope, was in my heart when I spake so proudly and rashly e'en now? Birdalone kept silence, and trembled as the other did. This it was, said Atra: he will go to this battle valiantly, he may fall there, and that were better; for then is life to begin anew: and what is there to do with these dregs of life? Said Birdalone, with flushed face: If he die



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

he shall die goodly, & if he live he shall live goodly. ¶ Yea, yea, said Atra; forsooth thou art a happy woman! ¶ Dost thou hate me? said Birdalone. ¶ Said Atra: Proud is thy word, but I hate thee not. Nay, e'en now, when I spake thus boastfully, I thought: When he hath died as a doughty knight should, then, when life begins again, Birdalone & I shall be friends and sisters, & we two will talk together oft and call him to mind, & the kindness of him, & how he loved us. Woe's me! that was when he was there sitting beside me and I could see him and his kindness; & then it was as if I could give him away; but now he is gone & I may not see him, it is clear to me that I have no part or lot in him, and I call back my thought and my word, and now it is: O that he may live! O thou happy woman, that shall be glad whether he liveth or dieth!

**S**HID Birdalone: And now thou hatest me, dost thou not, and we are foes? ¶ Atra answered not, nor spake for a while; then she said: Hard and bitter is it, and I know not what to turn to. I have seen once & again, on the wall of the Minorites' church at Greenford, a fair picture of the Blessed, & they walking in the meads of Paradise, clad in like

raiment, men and women; their heads flower-crowned, their feet naked in the harmless blossomed grass; hand in hand they walk, with all wrath passed for ever, all desire changed into loving-kindness, all the anguish of forgiveness forgotten. And underneath the picture is it writ:

Bitter winter, burning summer, never more shall waste and wear;

Blossom of the rose undying brings undying springtide there.

O for the hope of it, that I might hope it! O for the days to be and the assuaging of sorrow: I speak the word, and the hope springeth; the word is spoken, and there abideth desire barren of hope! ¶ And she bowed down her head and wept bitterly; and Birdalone called to mind her kindness of the past and wept for her, she also.

**A**FTER a while Atra lifted up her head, and thus she spake: I hate thee not, Birdalone; nor doth one say such things to a foe. Yea, furthermore, I will crave somewhat of thee. If ever there come a time when thou mayst do something for me, thou wilt know it belike without my telling thee. In that day & in that hour I bid thee remember how we stood together erst at the



stair/foot of the Wailing Tow-  
er in the Isle of Increase Un-  
sought, and thou naked and  
fearful and quaking, and what  
I did to thee that tide to com-  
fort thee and help & save thee.  
And then when thou hast call-  
ed it to mind, do thou for me  
what thou canst do. Wilt thou  
promise this? Yea, yea, said  
Birdalone; and with all the bet-  
ter will, that oft and over again  
have I called it to mind. Where-  
fore I behight thee to let me  
serve thee if I may whenso the  
occasion cometh, even if it be  
to my own pain and grief; for  
this I know thou meanest.

**S**EE thou to this then,  
said Atra coldly; & thou  
shalt be the better for it  
in the long run belike: for thou  
art a happy woman.

**S**HE arose as she spake,  
& said: Hist! here come  
the lords from the mur-  
der/council; and lo, now that  
he cometh, my heart groweth  
evil toward thee again, & well-  
nigh biddeth me wish that thou  
wert naked & helpless before  
me again. Lo my unhap! that  
he should mark my face that  
it shows as if I were fain to do  
thee amischief. And nought of  
that would I do; for how should  
it avail me, and thou my fellow  
and the faithful messenger of  
the Quest?

**N**OW LITTLE of her  
last words did Birda-  
lone meet, as into the  
hall came Hugh and Arthur; &  
though she strove to sober her  
mind & think of her she/friend  
and her unhappiness, yet she  
could not choose but to be full  
of joy in her inmost heart now  
she knew without doubt that  
she was so well/beloved of her  
beloved: and she deemed that  
Atra was in the right indeed to  
call her a happy woman.

**S**O now they all went in-  
to the solar together, and  
sat them down with the  
two others; & Hugh did them  
to wit, how they had ordered  
all the matter of the messen-  
gers who were to summon the  
knights and chiefs of there-  
abouts, and the aldermen of  
Greenford, to meet at the Cas-  
tle of the Quest, that they might  
set afoot the hosting to go a-  
gainst the Red Hold.

*Chapter IX. Hugh tells the  
story of the Quest's ending.*

**W**HEN THIS was  
said, and there  
had been silence  
a while, Birda-  
lone took up the  
word, and spake  
meekly & sweetly, saying: Dear  
friends, how it fared with you  
on the isle from the time of my  
leaving you, and how with you,  
true knights, from the time of

*Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending*



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

your departure, I both were fain to know for the tale's sake, and also I would take the telling thereof as a sign of your forgiveness of my transgression; so I would crave the same of you but if it weary you overmuch.

**A**Ll they yeasaid her kindly, & Hugh spake & said: By your leave, fellows, I will tell in few words what betid us on our way to the Isle of Increase Unsought, and then shall Viridis take up the tale from the time that Birdalone left the said isle in the witch's ferry. None said aught against it, and Hugh went on: Short is my tale of the journey: We came to the Isle of Nothing on the morrow's morn of our departure, and being warned of thee, Birdalone, we abode there but a little while to rest us from the boat, and went no whither from the strand, and so went on our way in a three hours' space.

**T**HENCE again we took the water, & came to the Isle of Kings, and that was in the middle of the night: we beheld the dead long and heedfully when the morning came, & departed again before noon, and came to the Isle of Queens a little after nightfall. The next morning we deemed we needs must go see the im-

ages of those ladies, lest aught might have befell since thou wert there which might be of import to the Quest, but all was unchanged, and we came away while the day was yet young.

**M**ade the Isle of the Young and the Old about sunset that day, and the boy and the girl came down to the strand to behold us & wonder at us, & we sported with them merrily a while; & then they brought us to the house of the old man, who received us courteously and gave us to eat and drink. forsooth, when the night was somewhat spent, he brought out strong drink to us, and took it somewhat amiss that we drank not overmuch thereof, as forsooth he did, and so fell asleep. Before he was drunk we asked him many questions about the isle & its customs, but he knew nought to tell us of them. Of thee also we asked, sister, but he had no memory of thee.

**O**N the morrow he fared down with us to our ferry, and made many prayers to us to take him along with us; for here, said he, is neither lordship nor fair lady; and if here I abide, soon shall I come to mine ending day, and sore I yearn for joyance and a long term to my years. Now we durst not take him aboard



lest we should fare amiss with the wight of the Sending Boat; so we naysaid him courteously, thanked him for his guesting, and gave him gifts, to wit, a finger gold ring & an ouch of gold, so he turned away from us somewhat downcast as we deemed; but ere we had given the word to the Sending Boat we heard him singing merrily in a high cracked voice as he went on his way.

**N**OW on this last day betid somewhat of new tidings; for scarce was this isle out of sight behind, ere we saw a boat come sailing toward us from the north/east, and it came on swiftly with a blue ripple of the lake behind it. Thereat we marvelled, and yet more when we saw that its sail was striped of gold and green & black; next then were we betwixt fear and joy when, as it drew nigher, we saw three women in the said boat, clad in gold, green, and black; and it came so nigh unto us at last, that we could see their faces that they were verily those of our lovelings; & each reached out her arms to us & called on us for help, each by our name: and there we were, oarless, sailless, at the mercy of our unkenned ferry. Then would Baudoin & I have leapt overboard to swim to our loves at all ad-

venture; but Sir Arthur here stayed us, and bade us think of it, that we were now nearing the Witch/land, & if we might not look to be beset with guiles & gins to keep us from winning to our journey's end; wherefore we forbore, though in all wretchedness, & the gay boat ran down the wind away from us, and the breeze and the ripple passed away with it, & the lake lay under the hot sun as smooth as glass; and on we went, weary/hearted.

**C**AME again another sail out of the north/east, when the sun was getting low, and speedily it drew nigh, but this time it was no small boat or barge, but a tall ship with great sails, & goodly, towered she was and shield-hung, & the basnets gleamed and the spears glittered from her castle/tops and bulwarks, & the sound of her horns came down the wind as she neared us. We two handled our weapons and did on our basnets, but Arthur there, he sat still, and said: Not over/wise is the witch, that she lets loose on us two sendings in one day so like unto each other. *Hah*, said Baudoin, be we wary though; they are going to shoot. *And* sure enough we saw a line of bowmen in all the castles and even along, and a horn blew, &



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

then forth flew the shafts, but whither we knew not, for none came anywhere anigh us; and Arthur laughed & said: A fair shot into the clouds; but, by our Lady! if none shot better in our country, I would bear no armour for their shafts. But we two were confused & knew not what to think.

**T**HE great ship flew past us on the wind as the barge had done, but when she was about half a mile aloof we saw her canvas fall to shivering & her yards swaying round, & Arthur cried out: St. Nicholas! the play beginneth again! she is coming about!

**E**VEN so it was, and presently she was bearing on us, and was ere long so close aboard that we could see her every spar and rope, & her folk all gathered to the windward, knights, sergeants, archers, and mariners, to gaze at us and mock us; and huge & devilish laughter arose from amongst them as she ploughed the water so close beside us, that one might well nigh have cast a morsel of bread aboard her; for clear it was presently that she had no mind to run us down.

**S**PAKE ARTHUR then: There will be a fresh play presently, my mates, but ye sit fast, for meseemeth this

show is no more perilous than the other, though it be bigger.

**S**CARCE were the words out of his mouth, ere there was a stir amongst the men gathered in the waist, and lo, amidst a knot of big & fierce mariners, three women standing, pale, with flying hair, and their hands bound behind them, and one was clad in gold and another in green and the third in black; and their faces were as the faces of Hurea and Viridis and Atra.

**T**HEN there came forth from that ship a huge cruel roar blent with mocking laughter that shamed our very hearts, and those evil things in the form of mariners took hold of each one of the ladies and cast them overboard into the gulf of the waters, first Hurea, next Viridis, and then Atra; & we two stood up with our useless swords brandished & would have leapt over into the deep, but that Arthur arose also & took hold of an arm of each of us & stayed us, and said: Nay, then, if ye go, take me with you, and let all the Quest sink down into the deep, and let our lovings pine in captivity, and Birdalene lose all her friends in one swoop, and we be known hereafter as the fools of lovers, the unstable.



**S**O we sat us down, but huge shrieking laughter rose up unblended from the keel of the evil thing, & then they let her go down the wind, & she went her way with flashing of arms, and streaming of banners and pennons, and blowing of horns, and the sun was setting over the wide water.

**B**UT Arthur spake: Cheer up, brethren! see ye not how this proud witch is also but an eyeless fool to send us such a show, & the second time in one day to show us the images of our dearlings, who hours ago flitted past us in the stripe-sailed boat? Where, then, did they of the ship meet with them? Nay, lords, let not the anguish of love steal all your wits.

**W**E saw we had been fools to be so overcast by guile, and yet were we exceeding ill at ease, & overlong the time seemed unto us until we should become to the Isle of Increase Unsought, and find our lovelings there.

**N**OON was the night come, and we fell asleep, but belike were not often all asleep at once; & at last it was, when we felt the dawn drawing near, though, the moon being down, it was the darkest of the summer night, that we

were all three awake, when all of a sudden we heard just a stern therushing of the water, as though some keel were cleaving it, and dimly in the dark we saw a sail as of a boat overhauling us. Close at hand there rang out a lamentable cry: O, are ye there, fellows of the Quest? O, help me, friends! save me & deliver me, who am snatched away to be cast into the hands of my mistress that was. Help me, Baudoin, Hugh, Arthur! Help! help!

**W**HEN all we knew the voice of Birdalone, and Arthur leapt up, and would have been overboard in a trice had not we two held him, and he fought and cursed us well-favouredly, there is no nay thereto; & meanwhile the wailing voice of thee, my sister, died out in the distance, & the east grew grey, and dawn was come.

**W**HEN spake Baudoin: Arthur, my brother, dost thou not mark that this also was of the same sort of show as those two others, & thou who wert so wise before? It is but beguilings to bring the Quest to nought; wherefore call to mind thy manhood and thy much wisdom!

**A**ND we admonished him and rebuked him till he became quiet and wise as



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

gain, but was sad and down-  
cast and silent. But the Send-  
ing Boat sped on through the  
dawning, & when it was light  
we saw that we had the Isle of  
Increase close aboard, and we  
ran ashore there just as the  
sun was rising. fain were we  
then to get out of the boat and  
feel earth under our feet. We  
took all our hards out of the  
boat, and hid away under the  
roots of an old thorn a little  
mail, wherein was your rai-  
ment, my ladies, which ye had  
lent to Birdalone; then we did  
on our armour, and advised us  
of whereabout on the isle we  
were, and we saw the orchards  
and gardens before us, and the  
great fair house above all, even  
as ye told us of them, Bird-  
alone.

**N**EXT, then, without more  
ado, we went our ways up  
through the orchard and  
the gardens, and when we were  
well nigh at the end of them,  
& in face of those many steps  
ye spake of, we saw at the foot  
of them a tall woman clad in  
red scarlet, standing as if she  
abode our coming. When we  
drew nigh we saw that she  
was strong looking, well knit,  
white skinned, yellow haired,  
and blue eyed, and might have  
been called a fair woman, as to  
her shaping, save that her face  
was heavy, yet hard looking,

with thin lips and somewhat  
flagging cheeks, a face stupid,  
but proud and cruel.

**S**HE HAILED us as we  
came up, and said: Men/  
at arms, ye be welcome  
to our house, and I bid you to  
eat and drink and abide here.

Then we louted before her,  
and bade her Hail; & Baudoin  
said: Lady, thy bidding will  
we take; yet have we an errand  
to declare ere we break bread  
with thee, lest when it is told  
we be not so welcome as ye tell  
us now. What is it? said she.

Said Baudoin: This man  
here is called the Green Knight,  
and this the Black Squire, and  
I am the Golden Knight; and  
now will we ask thee if this isle  
be called the Isle of Increase  
Unsought? Even so have I  
called it, quoth she, wherefore  
I deem none other will dare call  
it otherwise. It is well, quoth  
Baudoin; but we have heard say  
that hereto had strayed three  
dear friends of ours, threemaids,  
who hight Viridis, the  
friend of the Green Knight, &  
Atra, who is the Black Squire's,  
and Aurea who is mine own  
friend, so we have come to take  
them home with us, since they  
have been so long away from  
their land and their loves. Now  
if they be thy friends thou  
wilt perchance let them go for  
love's sake and the eking of



friendship; but if they be thy captives, then are we well willing to pay thee ransom, not according to their worth, for no treasure heaped up might come nigh it, but according to thy desire, lady.

**L**AUGHED the proud lady scornfully & said: Big are thy words, Sir Knight: if I had these maidens in my keeping I would give them unto you for nothing, & deem that I had the best of the bargain. But here are they not. True it is that I had here three thralls who were hight as thou hast said; but a while ago, not many days, they transgressed against me till I chastised them; and then was I weary of them & would bequit of them; for I need no servants here, whereas I myself am enough for myself. Wherefore I sent them away across the water to my sister, who dwells in a fair place hight the House under the Wood; for she needeth servants, because the earth there yieldeth nought save to the tiller and the herdsman & the hunter, while here all cometh unsought. With her may ye deal, for what I know, and buy the maidens whom ye prize so high; though belike ye may have to give her other servants in their place. for, indeed, a while ago her thrall fled from

her and left her half undone, & it is said that she came hither in her shamelessness: but I know not; if she did, she slipped through my fingers, or else I would have made her rue her impudence. Now meseemeth, Sir Knights, here is enough of so small and foolish a matter; and again I pray you to enter my poor house, and take meat and drink along with me, for ye be none the less welcome because of your errand, though it be a foolish one.

**N**OW would Sir Baudoin have answered wrathfully, but Arthur plucked at his skirt, & he ye said the lady's bidding, though somewhat ungraciously; but that she heeded nought; she took Sir Baudoin by the hand & led him up the stately perron, and thence came we into a pillared hall, as fair as might be. And there on the dais was a table dight with dainty meats and drinks, and the lady bade us thereto, and we sat to it.

**T**HEREAT was the lady buxom and merry: Baudoin scowled across the board; I was wary and silent; but Arthur was as blithe with the lady as she with him; nor did I altogether marvel thereat, since I knew him wise of wit.

Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending



**B**UT when we were done with the meal, the lady stood up & said: Now, Sir Knights, I will give you leave; but this house is as your own to roam through all its chambers & pleasure you with its wonders and goodliness; and when ye are weary of the house, then is the orchard and the garden free to you, and all the isle wheresoever ye will go. And here in this hall is meat & drink for you whenso ye will; but if ye would see me again to-day, then shall ye meet me where ye first happened on me e'en now, at the foot of the great perron.

**W**HEN she laid her hand on Arthur's shoulder, & said: Thy big friend may search out every nook in this house, and every bush in the whole island, & if he find there the maidens he spake of, one or all of them, then are they a gift from me unto him.

**W**HEREWITH she turned, and went out of the hall by a door in the side thereof; and now already meseemed that though the woman was hateful and thick-hearted and cruel, yet she was become fairer, or seemed so, than when we first came on her; and for my part I pondered on what it might grow to, and fear of her came into my soul.

**N**OW spake Baudoin: fellows, let us get out into the garden at least; for this place is evil, and meseems it smells and tastes of tears & blood, & that evil wights that hate the life of men are lurking in the nooks thereof. And lo, our very she/friend that was so kind and simple and dainty with us, there is, as it were, the image of the dear maiden standing trembling and naked before the stupid malice of this lump of flesh. So spake he, Birdalone.

**B**UT I said to Arthur in a soft voice: And when shall we slay her? Said he: Not until we have gotten from her all that may be gotten; & that is the living bodies of our friends. But come we forth.

**S**O did we, and came down to the orchard and did off our helms, and lay down under a big apple-tree which was clear of cover all round about, and so fell to our redes; & I asked Arthur what he deemed of the story of our loves having been carried to the House under the Wood, & if it might not be tried seeking thither; but he laughed and said: Never would she have told us thereof had it been sooth: doubtless our friends are here on this isle, but, as I deem, not in the



house, else had not the witch left all the house free for us to search into. *Yea*, said I, but how if they be in her prison? *Said he*: It is not hard to find out which is the prison of so dainty a house as is yonder; and when we had found it, soon should we have hit upon a way to break it, since we be three, & stout fellows enough. Nay, I deem that the lovelings be stowed away in some corner of the isle without the house, and that may happen we shall find them there; & yet I trow not before we have made guile meet guile, and overcome the sorceress. But come now, let us be doing, and begin to quarter this little land as the kestrel doth the water-meadow; & leave we our armour, lest we weary us, for we shall have no need for hard strokes.

**W**E hung up there on the tree helm & shield and hauberk, and all our defences, & went our ways quartering the isle; & the work was toilsome, but we rested not till the time was come to keep tryst with the lady; and all that while we found no sign of the darling ones: and the isle was everywhere a meadow as fair as a garden, with little copses of sweet-growing trees here and there, and goodly brooks of water, but no tillage anywhere:

wild things, as hart and buck and roe, we came upon, & smaller deer withal, but all unhurtful to man; but of herding was no token.

**C**AME we then back to that lordly perron, and there, at the foot thereof, stood the witch-wife, and received us joyously; clad was she all gloriously in red scarlet broidered and begemmed; her arms bare and her feet sandalled, & her yellow hair hanging down from under its garland; & certainly it was so that she had grown fairer, and was sleek and white and well-shapen, and well-haired; yet by all that, the visage of her was little bettered, and unto me she was loathsome.

**N**OW the feast went much as the earlier meal had done; and Baudoin was surly and Arthur blithe & buxom; & nought befell to tell of, save that dishes and meats, & flasks and cups, and all things came upon the board as if they were borne thereon by folk unseen; and thereat we wondered not much, considering in what wonder-house we were. But the lady-witch looked on us and smiled, and said: Knights, ye marvel at the manner of our service, but call to mind that we told you this morning that we were enough for Ourselves, &



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

we have so dight our days here that whoso is our friend on this Isle of Increase shall lack nothing. fear not, therefore, to see aught ugly in our servants as now unseen, if their shapes were made manifest unto you.

**A**LL things were we heedful to note at this banquet; but when it was over, then came music into the hall from folk unseen, but not as if the musicians were a many, only belike some three or four. And thereat the lady spake, saying: Knights, ye may deem our minstrels but few, but such is our mind that we love not our music over loud, & for the most part only three sing or play unto us at one time.

**A**FTER the lady brought us to fair chambers, and we slept there in all ease, and we arose on the morrow & found the lady still blithe with us; yet I noted this, that she seemed to deal with Arthur as if she saw him now for the first time, and much he seemed to be to her liking.

**A**GAIN we fared forth, and were no less diligent in searching the isle than erst, & found nought; and all went that day as before.

**O**N the morrow (that is, the third day) the witch seemed to have somewhat more memory of Arthur

than erst, & even yet more liking of him, so that she reached out her hand for him to kiss, which needs must he do, despite his loathing of her.

**W**HEN we had lain under the apple-tree a little while, Baudoin spake and said: Yesterday and the day before we searched the open land and found nought; now to-day let us search the house, and if we find nought, then at least it shall lie behind us. We yeasaid it, and presently went back, & from chamber to chamber, and all was fair and goodly as might be, & we marvelled what would betide to it when the witch was undone and her sorcery come to an end.

**T**O the Wailing Tower we came, & up the stairs, and found the door open of the prison-chamber, & all there as thou hast told us, Birdalone; only we opened the great coffer, whence thou didst refrain thee, and found it full of hideous gear truly, as fetters and chains, and whips and rods, and evil tools of the tormentors, and cursed it all and came away; and Arthur said: Lo you, this stupid one! How eager is she to bid us what to do, & to tell us that our ladies are not in this evil house, since she leaveth all open to us.



Yet we went about the house without, and counted the windows heedfully to see that we had missed no chamber, and found nought amiss; and then we went in again and sought as low down as we might, to see if perchance some dungeon there were underground, but found nought save a very goodly undercroft below the great hall, which was little less fair than that which was above it. So came the evening and the banquet, and the end of that day; but the witch-wife led Arthur by the hand to the board, and afterwards to the chamber ere we slept.

**O**N the fourth day & the fifth it was no other-wise than erst; & when I fared to bed I felt confused in my head and sick of heart.

**T**HE night of the next day (the sixth), as we went to our chambers, & the witch-wife and Arthur hand-in-hand, she stayed him a while, & spake eagerly to him in a soft voice; and as he came up to me afterwards he said: To-night I have escaped it, but there will not be escape for long, from what? said I. He said: from bedding her; for now it has come to this, that presently we must slay her at once and have no knowledge of our sweetlings, or I must do her will.

**I**N such wise passed four more days, & it was the twelfth morning of our sojourn there, & we went forth on our search of every mead & every covert of the isle, and all day we found nought to our purpose; but as it grew toward sunset, and there grew great clouds in the eastern ort, piled up & copper-coloured, we came over a bent on to a little green dale watered by a clear brook, & as we looked down into it we saw something shine amongst its trees; so we hastened toward that gleam, & lo, amidst the dale, with the brook running through it, a strange garth we saw. for there was a pavilion done of timber and board, and gaily painted and gilded, and out from that house was, as it were, a great cage of thin gilded bars, both walls and roof, just so wide apart as no one full-grown, carl or quean, could thrust through.

**T**HITHERWARD then ran we, shouting, for we saw at once that in the said cage were three women whose aspect was that of our sweetlings, and presently we were standing by the said herse, reaching our hands out to them to come to us and tell us their tale, and that we would deliver them. But they stood together in the midst of the



said cage, & though they gazed piteously on us thence, and reached out their hands to us, they neither spake nor came to the herse to us; so we deemed that they were bewitched, and our joy was dashed.

**W**HEN we went all about the cage and the pavilion to find ingate, & found it not; & then the three of us together strove with the bars of the herse, & shook and swayed them, but it was all to no purpose.

**M**OREOVER, while we were at this work the sun seemed to go out, & there came a heavy black mist rolling into the dale, & wrapped us about so that we saw not each other's faces, & the bars of the herse were gone from our hands as we stood there. Then came rain & thunder and lightning on to the black night, and by the glare of the lightning we could see the leaves & grass of the dale, but neither herse nor house nor woman. So we abode there in the dark night, & the storm all bewildered us, till the rain and clouds drew off and it was calm fair starlight again, but clean gone was the golden cage & they that stood therein; and we turned sadly, and went our ways toward the witch/house.

**O**N THE way said Arthur: Brethren, this meseemeth is but a going on with the shows which were played us on the water as we came hither; but whether she doth this but for to mock and torment us, or that she would beguile us into deeming that our friends are verily here, I wot not; but to-morrow, meseemeth, I shall can to tell you.

**N**OW came we to the perron of the house, & there stood the witch/wife under the stars to meet us. And when she saw us, she took hold of Arthur by the hand and the arm to caress him, and found that he and we were drenched with the rain and the storm, as might well be deemed; then she bade us up to our chambers to do on raiment which she had dight for us, & we went thither, & found our garments rich & dainty indeed; but when we came down into the hall where the witch abode us, we saw that Arthur's raiment was far the richest and daintiest. But the witch ran to him and cast her arms about him, and clipped & kissed him before the others, and he suffered it. So sped the feast again.

**B**UT when they went to bed, the said witch took Arthur's hand & spake a word unto him, and led him



away, and he went with her as one nought loth; but we twain were afraid lest she should destroy him when she had had her will of him. Wherefore we waked through the more part of the night with our swords ready to hand.

**B**UT when we were clad in the morn he came unto us, he also clad, and was downcast and shamefaced indeed, but safe and sound; and he said: Speak no word about our matter till we be out in the open air, for I fear all things about us.

**S**O WHEN we had gone forth & were under the apple-tree once more, spake Arthuri: Now, lords, am I shamed for ever, for I have become the leman of this evil creature; but I pray ye not to mock me; and that the more as the same lot may happen on you both, or either; for I can see for sure that the wretch will weary of me & desire one of you two. Let it pass. Somewhat have I found out from her, but not much; first, that she has forgotten her first lie, to wit, how she sent our ladies to the sister-witch; for I told her of the golden cage, and how we had missed it in the storm; and she said: Though I deem it a folly that ye should seek these thralls, yet would I help you

if I might, since ye are now become my dear friends. Though, forsooth, when ye meet them I deem that ye will find them sore changed to you. for, as I told you, they fled away from me, after I had chastised them for a treason, into the hidden places of the isle, whereas they had no keel to sail away hence. And I cared not to follow them, as I myself am queen & lady of all things here, and am enough for myself, save when love constraineth me, dear lord. Now, my rede is that ye seek the golden cage again & yet again, because I deem that these thralls have somehow learned some wisdom, & they have enchanted the said cage for a defence against me, from whom they might not hide as they did from you; for of me have they stolen their wizardry, & I am their mistress therein.

**T**HIS, therefore, is the new lie of her, and my rede is that we heed it nought. for my mind is that she it is that hath made the appearance of the cage & the women therein, and that she hath our poor friends somewhere underneath her hand.

**N**O this we deemed most like; yet whereas we had nought to do with the time, which, now that we had searched the isle thoroughly,



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

hung heavy on hand, we deemed it good to go to the dale of the golden cage again, though we looked not to find the cage there any more. But this betid, that we found the little dale easily enough, and there stood the cage as we had seen it yesterday, but nought was there within its bright bars save the grass and the flowers, and the water of the brook a-running.

**W**E loitered about that place a while, & went back to the house in due time; and to shorten the tale, I shall tell that for many days it betid that we went every day to seek the golden cage, but after the first three days we saw it no more.

**N**Ow began sadness and weariness to overcome us as the days & weeks wore, and belike the witch-wife noted it that we were worse company than heretofore.

**A**ND now on a day Arthur bade us note that the said witch was growing weary of him, and he bade me look to it; for, said he, she is turning her face toward thee, brother. My heart burned with rage at that word; I said nought, but made up my mind that I would try to bring the matter to an end.

**W**HAT same night befell what Arthur had threatened; for the feast being done in the evening, the witch drew me aside while the music was a-playing, & caressed my hand and my shoulder, and said: I am yet wondering at you Champions, that ye must needs follow after those three wretched thralls, whom never will ye find, for they need ye not, but will flee from you if ye have sight of them, as they did that other day; & therein they are scarce in the wrong, whereas they may well think that if ye find them they should fall into my hands; for easily may I take them any day that I will, and then I have a case against them, and may lawfully chastise them according to the law that has been given unto me; & then shall they be in grievous plight. Wherefore the rede We give unto you three now is the rede of friendliness that ye make yourselves happy in Our Island, and then will We do everything We may for your pleasure and delight; and if ye will that We make Ourselves even fairer than now We be, that may be done, & shall be a reward unto you for your yielding & obedience. And if ye will women thralls for your pleasure, that also may be gotten for you; for We be not wholly



without power in these waters, though we have no keel or ferry upon them. And now, thou fair lad, we give thee this last word: Ye Champions have been dwelling in Our house a long while, and that while have ever striven to thwart Us. We now counsel you to make an end of it, & it shall be better for you.

**S**HE seemed to my eyes prouder and stupider than ever erst, despite her golden hair and white skin and lovely limbs; and I said to myself that now must we destroy the evil of that house even if we died for it, or else we were all undone; withal I saw somewhat of truth thrusting up through her much lying, and I deemed, even as Arthur did, that she had our friends under her hand somewhere.

**N**OUGHT else betid that night; but on the morrow we went forth and strayed on till we were come into the southernmost quarter of the isle, and not very far from the water we came upon a wood or big thicket which was new to us. So we entered it, and as we went and noted the wild things of the wood going hither & thither, we espied afar off the shape of a man going amidst the thicket; wherefore we went warily towards him, lest he should see

us and flee from us; and when we drew a little nigher we saw it was a woman, though she was clad as a hunter, with legs naked to above the knee. She had a quiver at her back and a bow in her hand, and her coat was black of hue. Belike now she heard our going amongst the dry leaves, for she turned her face to us, & lo! it was the face of Atra.

**W**HEN she saw us, she gave a shrill cry, and fell to running at her swiftest away from us, and we followed all we might, but we could not over-run her, though we kept her in sight ever, till we had run all through the wood, and before us was the sheer side of a rocky hill & the mouth of a cave therein, and by the said mouth who should there be but Aurea and Viridis, as we thought, clad in gold and in green, but the fashion of their raiment not otherwise than Atra's. Their bows were bended and they had shafts in their hands, and as we came out of the thicket into the open lawn before the cave, Viridis nocked a shaft and aimed at us and drew, and the shaft flew over my head; therewith mocking laughter came from them, and they ran into the cave. Speedily we ran up to it, but when we came home thither, there was



the sheer hill-side, but never a cave nor an opening.

**D**ISMAYED were we thereat; but more dismayed had we been but that we deemed that all this was but a cheat and a painted show put upon us by the witch to back up her lying. Nevertheless we fared the next day to seek the wood & the cave in the sheer rock, but nowise might we find either wood or cave.

**N**OW it was the night of the day hereafter, as we went to our chambers, that the witch-wife took me by the hand and led me apart, and said me many soft things of her accursed lust, whereof I will not say one again. But the upshot of it all was that she would bring me to her chamber and her bed. And whereas I was determined what to do, and had my war-sword by my side, I naysaid her not, but made her good countenance. And when we came to her chamber, which was full gloriously dight, and fragrant as with the scent of the roses and lilies of mid-June, she bade me to lie in her bed of gold and ivory and she would be with me anon. So I unclad myself & laid me down, but I drew forth my sword, & laid the ancient naked blade betwixt my side and her place.

**A**NON she cometh back again unclad, and would step into the bed; but she saw the sword, and said: What is this, Champion? Said I: These edges are the token of sundering between us, for there is a spell on me, that with no woman may I deal, save with mine only love, but I shall do her mortal scathe; so beware by the token of the grey edges of battle. She drew aback, and was as a spiteful & angry cat, & there was no loveliness in her; & she said: Thou liest, and thou hatest me; see thou to it, both for thyself and thy loveling. And she turned about and strode out of the chamber; but I arose and clad myself in haste, and took my naked sword in my hand. But before I went, I looked around, & espied an ambry fashioned in the wall of the bed-lane, and the door was half open; & the said ambry was wrought of the daintiest, all of gold and pearl and gems; and I said to myself: Herein is some treasure, and this is a tide of war. So I opened the ambry, and within it was even more gloriously wrought than without; & there was nought therein, save a little flask of crystal done about with bands of gold set with great and goodly gems. So I took the said flask & went my



ways hastily to my own chamber, and there I looked at the said flask & took out the stopple; & there was a liquor therein, white like to water, but of a spicy smell, sweet, fresh, and enheartening. So I yet thought this was some great treasure, and that much hung upon it, could I find out unto what use it might be put. And I said: To-morrow we will put it to the proof. Then I put the said flask under my pillow, and laid my sword by my side & slept, and was not ill-content so far.

**B**UT ON THE morrow, when I met my fellows, they asked me how I had sped, & I told them, Well, & that we would talk the matter over under our tree of counsel. So we went down into the hall, where we met the witch-lady; and I looked for it that she would be angry and fierce with me; but it went far otherwise; for she was blithe and buxom, and abounding in endearments more than I could away with. But this I noted, that her eyes wandered, & her speech faltered at whiles, and ever she seemed to be seeking somewhat; & withal that her caressing hands were seeking if they could aught stowed away in the bosom of my coat. But all was nought, for as we came to the door of the hall

I gave Baudoin the flask to guard until we should come to our apple-tree of rede. Wherefore the she-wolf went red and white by turns, and fumed, and fretted her bedizenments with unrestful hands, and when she should let us go our ways, she lingered and looked back oft, and was loth to depart ere she had gotten what she lacked, & that, forsooth, was the said flasket.

**B**UT when we were without the house, I bade our fellows go with me to another place than the wonted apple-tree of rede, and they understood my word, and I led them to a little grassy plain without the orchard, where was no covert for a wide space about it, nought but the one linden-tree under which now we sat. There I told them all the tale of the last night and of the flasket, & put before them all that was in my mind to do that evening at the banquet, and they both of them yeasaid it. But what it was, that shall ye hear anon when we carried the matter through; but I bade Baudoin still carry the flasket till the evening.

**H**EREAFTER we spake of other matters; but soon we had good cause to rejoice that we had not talked our talk under the apple-



tree (whereas I doubted not that the witch would spy upon us there), for not long had we been at our talk ere, looking that way, we saw the evil creature by the hedge of the orchard and gazing over at us.

**W**E arose then, & came to her as if nought had happened; & she bade us walk the garden with her, and we yeasaid it, and went with her, & paced about amidst the flowers and lay on the blossomed grass. Forsooth, both to her and to us the time hung heavy on hand. And meseemed that the sleekness and fairness of her body was worsened since yesterday, & she was pale and haggard, and her eyes were wandering and afraid.

**N**OW she bade us come a little further into the garden & eat a morsel at noon; and we arose, and she brought us to where were vines trellised all about & overhead, so that it was like a fair green cloister; and there was a board laid & spread with many dainties of meat & drink. And she bade us sit. Verily we had but little stomach to that dinner; and I said to myself, Poison! poison! & even so my fellows deemed, as afterwards they told me. And I saw Baudoin loosen his sword in the sheath, and I knew that his mind was

to smite at once if he saw aught amiss. And I, who sat next to the witch, laid my hand on a little dagger which I wore at my girdle. She also saw this, and turned as pale as death, & sat trembling before us; and whatso we ate or drank at that board under the rustling vine-leaves, she gave unto us with her own hand; & then we wotted full surely that she had meant our deaths there & then, but was cowed by the fierce eyes of Baudoin & the threat of my hand.

**W**ITCHAL it seemed that she might not bear it to sit there long amongst us. She rose up and smiled on us as ghastly as a corpse, & gave us leave, & went hurrying into the house. And right glad we were to be at rest from her. Yet as we ourselves durst not go far away from the house, lest some new thing might happen, neither could she leave us quite alone, but thrice again that afternoon at some turn of the garden, or orchard, or meadow, we came upon her wan face & eyes full of all hate and staring pride, and she enforced her to smile upon us, and turned away with some idle word.

**A**T last the sun began to sink, and we went to the perron of the house, and



found her standing to meet us in her wonted way. But when we came up she gave no hand to any one of us, but went up the stairs before us, & we followed with no word spoken.

**T**HERE was the hall with the lordly service on the board, & the wax/candles lighted all about, and the great vault of stone fair and stately over it. We went to the dais & the board and sat down, the witch/wife in her gold & ivory chair at the board's end, and I at her right hand and looking down the hall, my two fellows facing me, with their backs to the clear of the hall.

**T**HERE we sat, and the meats and drinks were before us as dainty as ever erst; but we put forth no hand to them, but sat staring at each other for some two minutes it might be, and the witch looked from one to the other of us, & quaked that her hands shook like palsy.

**T**HEN I rose up and put my hand to my bosom (for Baudoin had given me the flasket ere we came to the perron): I spake in a loud voice, and it sounded wild and hard in the goodly hall: My lady, I said, thou art looking but pale now, and sick & down/cast. Drink now to me out of this precious flasket, and thou

shalt be whole and well.

**A**ND therewith I held the flasket aloft; but her face changed horribly; she sprang up in her chair & reached out her arm to clutch at the flasket, screaming like an eagle therewith. But I thrust her back into the chair with my left hand; and therewith arose Baudoin & Arthur, and caught her by the shoulders, & bound her fast to the chair with cords that they had gotten thereto. But when she got her breath she yelled out: Ah, now shall all tumble together, my proudful house & I under it! Loose me, traitors! loose me, fools! and give me one draught of the water of might, and then shall I tell you all, and ye shall go free with your thralls if ye will. Ah! ye will not loose me? ye will not? Well then, at least ye, the fools, shall be under it, & they also, the she/traitors, the scourged & tormented fools that might not save themselves from me. O loose me! loose me! thou in whose arms I have lain so many a night, and give me to drink of the proud water of might!

**S**he yelled; & now had all the fairness gone from her body: flaggy & yellow were her limbs, and she looked all over as her face, a lump of



stupid and cruel pride, and her words lost meaning & changed into mere bestial howling. But for me, since she so desired that water, I knew that it was good for us to drink, & I took out the stopple & drank, and it was as if fire ran through all my veins, & I felt my strength threefold straightway, and most wondrous clear was my sight grown therewith; and I raised my eyes now & looked down the hall, & lo, there was Hurea, chained by the ankle to the third pillar from the dais; and over against her, Viridis; and next, to the fourth pillar, Htra. Then I cried in a loud voice that rang through the witch's hall: Lo what I see! And I ran round the head of the board, & thrust & dragged Baudoin & Arthur along with me, crying out: Come, come! they are found! they are here! And I came to my sweetling, & found her clad but in her white smock, which was flecked with blood all about, & her face was wan & pined, and the tears began to run when she saw me, but no word came from her lips though the kissing of them was sweet.


**W**HEN I turned about to my two fellows, & they stood bewildered, not knowing what was toward; and I came to them and made them drink

of the flasket, and their eyes were opened and the strength of giants came to them, and they ran each to his sweetling; but Baudoin, before ever he kissed Hurea, caught hold of the chain that bound her to the pillar, and by main force dragged it out. Wise was that, meseemed, for words were again come into the witch's howls, and I heard her: Ah, long may ye be playing with the chains, long! for now the house rumbleth toward its fall. Ah, the bitches are loose! Woe's me! to die alone! And once more she howled wordless, as both I and Arthur had our loves in our arms, and fell to following Baudoin out on to the perron and down into the fresh fragrant garden wherein now was the moon beginning to cast shadows.

**S**TOOD we then aloof from the house, & the rumbling whereof the evil hag had howled waxed into a thunder, & under our very eyes the great white walls and gold-adorned roofs fell together, & a great cloud of dust rose under the clear moonlit sky.

**W**E looked & wondered, & our loves also, but no word they spake; but ere the other two had time to grieve thereat, I gave Viridis to drink of the water of





might, and she fell to sweet speech straightway, of such sort and such wise as I will not tell you. Then I did the same by Aurea and Atra, and forthwith the speech flowed from them to their friends.

**A**LL HAPPY were we then in the early night-season, for the water of might gave them strength also, as to us, and healed all the stripes and wounds their bodies had suffered of the foul witch, & made their eyes bright, and their cheeks full and firm, & their lips most sweet, & their hands strong and delicious.

**N**OW when we had stood gazing toward the melting of the beauteous palace for a little, we took our darlings in our arms again, where, as the chains would have hindered their walking, and went down to the lip of the water whereas lay the Sending Boat, so that we might be anigh our ferry in case of need; for we knew not what might betide the isle now its mistress had perished. Then we fell to and sawed off the chains from the dear ankles with our swords, and took Birdalone's lendings from the mail. And Aurea had her gown again, and Viridis her smock, and my green surcoat over it, & Atra wore the battle-coat of the Black Squire. As for

their bare feet (for Atra would not have hers dight prouder than her sisters'), we so clad them with kisses that they were not ill-covered belike.

**S**O gat we aboard our ferry, and did blood-offering to the wight thereof, & so sped merrily and lovingly over the wide lake back on our homeward road. And we said: This hath the dear Birdalone done for us.

**A**ND now, my Viridis, I will that thou fill up the tale by telling to Birdalone, as ye told us, how it fared with you three and the evil one from the time that ye sped Birdalone on her way till the moment when mine eyes first beheld you made fast to the pillars of the palace which has crumbled into dust.

*Chapter X. How it fared with the Three Ladies after the Escape of Birdalone.*

**V**IRIDIS took up the word without more ado, & said: I will do my best herein, and ye, sisters, must set me right if I err. When we had seen the last of you, dear Birdalone, that early morning, we turned back again to the house as speedily and as covertly as we might, lest the witch might espy our disarray & question us

*Part V. The Tale of the Quest's Ending*



thereover. Then we went to the wonder/coffer, & gat thereout raiment for that which we had given away, which was easy for us to do, whereas the witch-mistress was so slothful that she had given to us the words of might wherewith to compel the coffer to yield, so that we might do all the service thereof, and she not to move hand or foot in the matter. So when we were clad, and the time was come, we went into the hall, by no means well assured of our mistress.

**W**HEN we came before her, she looked on us in surly wise, as her wont was, and said nought for a while; she stared on us and knit her brows, as if she strove to call to mind something that ran to and fro in her memory; and I noted that, and for my part I trembled before her. But she spake at last: Meseemeth as if there is a woman in the isle besides you three; some misdoer that I was minded to punish. Tell me, you! was there not a naked one who came into this hall a while ago, one whom I threatened with pining? **A**tra, who was the boldest of us, bowed the knee before her, and said: Nay, our lady, since when do stranger women come naked into thine hall, and dare thee there?

**S**AID the witch: Yet have I an image of a naked woman standing down there before me; and if I have it in mine eye, so should ye. Tell me therefore, and beware, for We are not bidden to hold Our hand from you if We take you in misdeeds.

**I**F I quaked before, now much more I quaked, till my legs well-nigh failed me for fear; but Atra said: Great lady, this image will be like be of that one whom a while ago ye had stripped & tied to a pillar here, & tormented while ye feasted.

**T**HE lady looked on her hard, and again seemed striving to gather up the thrums of some memory, & then her face became smooth again, and she spake lightly: All that may well be; so do ye go about your due service, and trouble Our rest here no longer; for We love not to look on folk who be not wholly Our own to pine or to spare, to slay or let live, as We will; & We would that the winds and the waves would send Us some such now; for it is like to living all alone to have but such as you with Us, and none to cower before Us & entreat Us of mercy. So begone, I bid you.



**T**HUS for that time were we saved from the witch's cruelty; but our time came before long. The days wore heavily, nor kept we count of them lest we should lose heart for the weariness of waiting. But on a day as we stood on the steps of the perron & served my lady with dainties, of a hot afternoon, came two great white doves a flying, who pitched down right before our mistress's feet; & each had a gold ring about his neck, & a scroll tied thereto, & the witch bade us take the doves and take off the scrolls and give them unto her; & she looked on the gold rings which the doves bore, & for a moment on the scrolls, and then she said: Take ye the doves & cherish them, lest we have need of them; take also the two scrolls & keep them till to-morrow morning, and then give them into Our hands. And look ye to this, that if ye give them not unto Us it will be treason against Us, and we shall have a case against you, & your bodies will be Ours.

**W**HEN she rose up slowly, and bade me to her that she might lean upon my shoulder & be helped upstairs, so slothful a beast as she was; and as we went up I heard her say softly to herself: Weary on it, now must I drink a sup of

the Water of Might, that I may remember & do and desire. But dear is my sister, and without doubt she hath matters of import to tell me by these doves.

**S**O when we were together alone I told the others hereof, and we talked it over; & they deemed the tidings ill, even as I did; for we might not doubt but that the doves were a sending from the witch's sister who dwelt at the House under the Wood; & sore we misdoubted that they were sped to our mistress to tell her of thee, Birdalone, and may happen of the Quest, so wise as we knew she was. As to the two scrolls, forsooth, they were open, & not sealed; but when we looked on them we could make nought of it; for though they were writ fairly in Latin script, so that we read them, yet of the words no whit might we understand, so we feared the worst. But what might we do? we had but two choices, either to cast ourselves into the water, or abide what should befall; & this last one we chose because of the hope of deliverance.

**N**EXT morning, therefore, we came before our mistress in the hall, & we found her pacing up and down before the dais; though her wont was at that hour to be sitting in her throne of gold



& ivory, lying back on the cushions half asleep.

**S**O Atra went up to her, & knelt before her and gave her the scrolls, & she looked on her grimly, and smiled evilly, and said: Kneel there yet; & ye others kneel also, till I see what befitteth you.

So did we, and indeed I was fain to kneel, for I might scarce stand up for terror; and all of us, our hearts died within us.

**B**UT the witch read those scrolls to herself, sitting in her throne, and spake not a long while; then she said: Come hither, & grovel before Us, and hearken! Even so we did; & she said again: Our sister, who hath been so kind unto you, & saved you from so many pains, here telleth Us, by the message of the two doves, that ye have betrayed Us and her, and have stolen her thrall and her Sending Boat, & sent her an errand for Our destruction; and therewith she delivereth you into Our hands, and ye are Ours henceforward; nor is it to be thought that ye may escape Us. Now, for your treason, some would slay you out right here & now, but We will be merciful, and let you live, & do no more than chastise you sharply now; and thereafter shall ye be Our very thralls to do as We will with: thereafter,

that is to say, when they whom ye have sent Our sister's thrall to fetch have come hither (as belike I may scarce stay them), & I have foiled them and used them, & sent them away empty. Now I tell you, that meanwhile of their coming shall ye suffer such things as We will; & when they be here We will not forbid you to be anigh them; but We shall see that there will be little joy to you in that nigh-ness. Yea, ye shall know now to what market ye have brought your wares, and what the price of treason is therein.

**V**ERILY then we suffered at her hand what she would, whereof it would shame me to tell more as at this present; and thereafter did she chain us to those three pillars of the hall where-as ye found us chained; and we were fed as dogs be, and served as dogs, but we endured all for the sake of hope; and when we durst, & deemed the witch would not hear us, we spake together and enheartened each other.

**B**UT ON the fourth day of our torment came the witch to us, & gave us to drink a certain red water from out of a leaden flasket; & when I drank I deemed it was poison, and was glad, if gladness might be in me at such a tide;



& when I had drunk I felt an icy chill go through all my body, and all things swam before my eyes, & deadly sickness came over me. But that passed away from me presently, and I felt helpless and yet not feeble; all sounds heard I clearer than ever yet in my life; also I saw the hall, every arch and pillar and fret, & the gleam on the pavement from the bright sun that might not enter; and the witch I saw walking up and down the hall by the dais; but my sisters I saw not when I looked across to their pillars. Moreover, I might not see myself when I reached out my hand or my foot, though I saw the chain which made my ankle fast to the pillar; & withal, when I set my hand on my face, or any other part of my body, or what else I might touch, I felt there what I looked to feel, were it flesh or linen, or the cold iron of my fetter, or the polished face of the marble pillar.

**N**OW I knew scarce if I were alive or dead, or if I were but beginning to be dead; but there came upon me the desire of life, & I strove to cry out to the sisters, but though I formed the words in my mouth, and did with my throat as when one cries out aloud, yet no sound of a voice came from me, and more help-

p 3

less did I feel than erst.

**B**UT even therewith I saw the witch come toward me, and therewith all my body felt such fear of her that I knew I was not dead. Then she came before me & said: O shadow of a thrall, whom none can see but them unto whom wisdom hath given eyes to see wonders withal, now have I tidings for thee and thy sisters, to wit, that your lovers & seekers are at hand; and presently I shall bring them into this hall, and they shall be so nigh unto you that ye might touch them if I did not forbid it; but they shall not see you, but shall wonder where I have hidden you, & shall go seeking you to-day and many days, and shall find you not at all. So make ye the most of the sight of them, for in them henceforward ye have no other part or lot.

**T**HEREWITH she spat out at me, & went over to my sisters, and said words of like import to those which she had said unto me. And presently she went out of the hall; and not long afterwards I heard voices speaking on the perron, & knew one for the voice of the witch, and the other for the voice of my lord Baudoin; and then again wore a little while, & I saw the witch come through the great door

213

Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

of the hall leading Sir Arthur by the hand, as if she were his dear friend, and Baudoin and Hugh, my man, following them. And the said witch was clad full fair, and had laid by her sloth & stupid pride, as meseemed; & her limbs were grown round, erand sleeker, & her skin fairer, so that to them that knew her not she might well seem to be a goodly woman.


**N**OW they sat to meat as my man hath told you, & then departed from the hall, & the witch also. But after a while she came back again & loosed us, and grimly bade us go with her, & needs must we, though we could not so much as see our own feet upon the floor. And she set us to tasks about the house, and stood by while we toiled for her, & mocked us not without stripes, and in all ways was as rough & cruel and hard with us as she had been smooth and debonair to our lords; but after noon she brought us back & chained us to our pillars again. And when the evening came & the banquet was, it was we who were the unseen players of the string-play; & we might play no other melody than what the witch bade us; else belike, could we have held converse, we might have played such tunes as would have smitten the hearts of our

loves, & told them that we were anigh. To make a short story of it, thus did she day by day, & no comfort or converse might we sisters have of each other, or of aught else save the sight of our beloved ones, & a glimmer of hope therewith. And, forsooth, for as grievously as my heart was wrung by the yearning of me for my love, yet was it a joy unto me to think that he went there desiring me, & that I whom he desired was not the poor wretched creature chained there in her nakedness, with her body spoiled by torment and misery, but the glad maiden whom he had so often called fair and lovesome.

**S**O passed the days, & at last hope had grown so pale & wan, that she was no more to be seen by us than we were by our lords; and now it seemed to me that death was coming, so feeble & wretched as I grew. But the witch would not let us die, but sustained us from time to time with some little draughts of a witch-drink that revived us.

**S**O wore the time till that evening, when came hope together with the fulfilment of hope, so that one minute we durst hope for deliverance, and the next we were delivered.





**N**OR is there more to tell, Birdalone, my dear, save that we came safely to the Isle of the Young and the Old in the full morning tide; and as our ferry drew nigh the green shore, there were the two younglings whereof thou didst tell us awaiting our landing, and when we stepped ashore they came to us bearing cakes and fruit in a fair basket, and they made much of us and we of them. And so we came to the old man, who was exceeding fain of us, and grand and courteous, till he became a little drunk, and then he was somewhat overkind to us women. Nevertheless, there in that pleasant isle we rested us for three days, that we might somewhat calm and refresh our spirits with what was small & of little account. And when we departed, the old man followed us down to the strand, & lamented our departure, as he had done with our lords erewhile; only this time yet greater was his lamentation, & needs must we kiss him, each one of us, or never had he been done. So he turned up landward, bewailing the miss of us, but presently, before we had seen the last of him, was cheerful again & singing.

**S**O we went on our way; & we also, we maidens, in our turn, saw those

woful images of the Isle of Queens and the Isle of Kings; and we came to the Isle of No-thing, and abode warily by our ferry, and so came away safe, & thus, as thou wottest, home to the castle to hear evil tidings of thee. Now is this all my tale.

**B**IRDALONE sat shyly and hushed when all was done; & then all they did somewhat to comfort her, each after their own fashion; & now sorrow for the slain man was made softer and sweeter for them, whereas they had to lose not two fellows, but one only. Yet, despite of all, trouble and care was on Birdalone's soul betwixt the joy of loving & being beloved, and the pain and fear of robbing a friend of her love. for Htra's face, which she might not hate, & scarce might love, was a threat to her day by day.

**Chapter XL. Birdalone and the Black Squire talk together in the Hall of the Castle.**

**N**O within a few days was the body of Baudoin laid in earth in the chapel of the castle; and in the solemnest of fashions was the burial done. When it was over, the two knights and Sir Hymeris turned them heartily

**Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending**





Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

to dighting the war against the Red Hold, and less than a month thereafter was the host/ing at the Castle of the Quest, and if the host were not very many (for it went not above sixteen hundreds of men all told), yet the men were of the choicest, both of knights and sergeants and archers. There then they held a mote without the castle, whereas Arthur the Black Squire was chosen for captain, and in three days they were to depart for the Red Hold.

**N**OW THIS while Bird-alone had seen but little of Arthur, who was ever busy about many matters, & never had she had any privy talk with him, though sore she longed for it; yet indeed it was more by her will than his that so it was. But when it was come to the very last day before the departure, she said that she must needs see him before he went, and he perchance never to come back again. So when men were quiet after dinner she went into the hall & found him there, pacing up and down the floor. for indeed she had sent a word to him by Leonard the priest that he should be there.

**S**o she went up to him, and all simply she took him by the hand and led him

into a shot/window & set him down by her; and he, all trembling for love and fear of her, might not forbear, but kissed her face and her mouth many times; and she grew as hot as fire, and somewhat she wept.

**W**HEN she spake after a while: Dear friend, I had it in my mind to say to thee many things that me-seems were sage, but now neither will the thought of them come into my mind, nor the words into my mouth. And this is a short hour. And therewith she fell to kissing him, till he was well nigh beside himself betwixt desire and joy and the grief of departure, and the hardness of the case.

**B**UT at last she forbore and said: Will it not be when thou art gone to-morrow as it was when ye were away upon the Quest, & I knew not how to bear myself, so heavy lay all the world and its doings and its fashion upon me? It will be hard to me, he said; evil and grim will be the days. She said: And yet, even now in these last days, when I see thee oft, every day my soul is worn with grief, and I know not what to do with myself. I shall come back, he said, and bear my love with me, & then belike we shall seek some remedy. She was silent



a while, & then she said: Mean-  
while of thy coming, and I see  
thee not at all for many days,  
how will it be with my grief  
then? Quoth he: More than  
enough of grief no soul may  
bear; for either death comes,  
or else some dullness of the  
pain, and then by little & little  
the pain weareth. Then she  
said: And how would it be if  
thou come not back and I see  
thee never again, or if when  
thou come back thou find me  
not, for that I be either dead  
or gone away out of thy reach?

He said: I know not how it  
would be. When thou sayest  
thou shalt die, dost thou whol-  
ly believe it in thy sense or  
thy body otherwise than Holy  
Church would? I will tell  
thee, she said, that now I am  
sitting by thee and seeing thy  
face & hearing thy voice, it is  
that only which I believe in; for  
I may think of nought else of  
either grief or joy. Yea, when I  
wept e'en now, it was not for  
sorrow that I wept, but for I  
cannot rightly tell what. And  
she took his hand & look-  
ed fondly upon him.

**B**UT presently she look-  
ed on his hand, & said:  
And now meseemeth  
that we twain are grown to be  
such close friends that I may  
ask thee what I will, and thou  
be neither angry, nor wonder

thereat. I see on thy finger here  
the ring that I brought with  
me from the Isle of Increase,  
& which thereafter thou hadst  
of me when I gave thee back  
also the shoon which were lent  
unto me. Tell me how thou  
hadst it back from Htra, as I  
suppose thou gavest it unto  
her. But how now! art thou  
angry? for I see the blood come  
up in thy face. Nay, beloved,  
said he, I am not angry, but  
when so I hear of Htra, or think  
of her closely, shame comes  
on me and confusion, & may-  
be fear. But now will I answer  
thee. for even in those hours  
which we wore on the Isle of  
the Young & the Old, when all  
we should have been so happy  
together, she divined some-  
what of my case, or indeed, why  
do I not say it out, all there-  
of. And she spake to me such  
words (for she is both tender  
and wise and strong of heart)  
that I cowered before her and  
her grief and pain; & she gave  
me back the said ring, which  
forsooth I gave to her in the  
Sending Boat in the first hour  
that the Isle of Increase lay a-  
stern of us. And I wear it now  
as a token of my grief for her  
grief. See now, love, since I  
have answered thee this ques-  
tion without anger or amaze,  
thou needest not fear to ask  
me any other; for this of all



things lies closest to my heart.

**B**IRDALONE drooped her head, and she spake in a low voice: Lo now! the shadow of parting and the shadow of death could not come between our present joy; but this shadow of the third one cometh between us and is present between us. Woe's me! how little did I think of this when thou wert away and I was sick of longing for the sight of thee, and deemed that that would heal it all.

**S**HE spake not, but took her hand and held it; and presently she looked up again and said: Thou art good, and wilt not be angry if I ask thee something else; this it is: Why wert thou so grim with me that other day when ye found me in that evil plight in tow of the Red Tyrant, so that I deemed that thou of all others hadst cast me off? That was worse to me than the witch's stripes, & I kept thinking to myself: How simple was my trouble once, and now how tangled and weary!

**W**HEN HE MIGHT not refrain him, but threw himself upon her, and clipped her and kissed her all he might, and she felt all the sweetness of love, and lacked nought of kindness and love to him. And thereafter they

sat still awhile, and he said, as if her question had but that moment left her lips: This, forsooth, was the cause that I looked grim on thee: first, that from the time I first saw thee and heard thy tale, and of thy deeds, I had deemed thee wise above the wisdom of women. But this going forth of thee to the Black Valley, whereof came the slaying of Baudoin, seemed unto me a mere folly, till again I had heard thy tale of that also; and then the tale and thy speech overcame me. But again, though I was grieved and disappointed hereat, belike that had passed from me speedily, but then there was this also which would not let my soul rest, to wit, that I feared concerning that slain knight whose head the Red One had hung about thy neck; for how else, methought, might he have been so wroth with him and thee; & meseemed, moreover, that thou wert kind in thine heart to the dead man, even when we were come to thee; and then, seest thou, my desire for thee & the trouble of Baudoin's slaying, & the black trouble aforesaid. Lo now, I have told thee this. When wilt thou cease to be angry with me?

**S**HE said: I ceased to be grieved with thine anger when thine anger died;



yet strange, meseemeth, that thou shouldst trust me so little when thou lovest me so much!

**A**ND she leaned against him and caressed him gently, and again was he at point to take her in his arms, when lo! the sound of men coming unto the screen of the hall; so then those two stood up and went to meet them, and there was the speech of their sundering done. Yet belike for a little while both those twain were happy.

**Chapter XII. The Knights and their fellows betake them to the assaulting of the Red Hold.**

**I**N THE morrow, when the day was yet young, the knights were ready for departure, & in the very gate they bade farewell to the ladies, who kissed them kindly one and all, and Viridis wept sore; and Htra constrained herself to do even as the others did; but pale she was and quaking when she kissed Arthur and watched him get a horseback.

**B**UT the knights bade their ladies be of good cheer, for that they would send them tidings of how they sped every seven days at least, whereas it was

no long way thence to the Red Hold, save there were battle on the road, & they deemed their host which should beset the Hold would be enough to clear all the ways behind it. for that same cause withal they had Sir Hymeris with them, nor left a many men behind them, & they under the rule of three squires, whereof two were but young, and the third, who was made the captain of the castle, was an old & wise man of war, who had to name Geoffrey of Lea. There, withal, was the priest Sir Leonard, who went about now much hushed & abashed, & seemed to fear to give a word to Birdalone; albeit she deemed of him that his thoughts of her were the same as erst they had been.

**S**O now when the knights were departed, & all the host was gone out of sight, it was heavy time indeed in the Castle of the Quest till they should hear tidings of them again. Both Hurea and Htra kept much to themselves, & did I know not what to wear away the time; for now it was not to be looked for that they should venture out a gates. But as for Viridis, she waxed of better cheer after a while, but whatever betid she would not sunder herself from Birdalone; nay, not for an hour; &

**Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending**



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

Birdalone took all her kindness kindly, though forsooth it was somewhat of a pain unto her; it shall be told wherefore ere long.

**W**ITHAL, as if to wear the time, Birdalone betook her diligently to her needlework, and fell to the cunningest of broidery; so that Viridis & the others wondered at her, for when they were done it seemed indeed that the flowers and creatures & knots had grown of themselves upon the cloth, such wondrous work it was.

**M**OREOVER, to his great joy, the very first day of the departure of the host she called Sir Leonard unto her, and prayed to go on again with the learning her fair scribe/craft; and therein also was she diligent hours of every day; and Viridis would sit beside her wondering at the deftness of her fingers, and crying out for joy as the page grew fair & well/learned under them.

**T**HUS wore a week, and at the end thereof came a messenger from the host and told how they had come before the Red Hold and had summoned them thereof to yield, which they had utterly denied to do, but defied the host; wherefore the host had

now beset the Hold, and more folk were daily flocking unto them; but that the said Hold would be hard to win by plain assault, whereas it was both strong and well/manned; but few of the host had been slain or hurt as yet, and of the chieftains not one.

**R**IGHT glad were they of the castle because of these tidings; though, forsooth, the men/at/arms knew well enough that the time would soon come when some fierce assault would be made, and then, forsooth, would be sore peril of life and limb unto the chieftains.

**Chapter XIII.** Birdalone be-thinks hertofulfil the Promise made unto Atra.

**A**GHIN MORE A week, & once more came the messenger, and did them of the castle to wit that there had been nought more done at the Red Hold, save skirmishing at the barriers, wherein few were hurt on either side; and also that the engines for battering the walls were now well/nigh alldight, and they would begin to play upon the Hold, and in especial one which hight Wall/wolf, which had been set up by the crafts of Greenford.



**T**HIS TIDINGS also was deemed good by all, save it might be by Atra, who, as Birdalone deemed, pined & fretted herself at the delay, and would fain that, one way or other, all were over. Atra spake but little to Birdalone, but watched her closely now; oft would she gaze on her wistfully, as if she would that Birdalone would speak unto her; and Birdalone noted that, but she might not pluck up heart thereto.

**M**ORE a third week, & again came the messenger, and told how three days ago, whenas Wallwolf had sorely battered one of the great towers which hight the Poison-jar, & overthrown a pan of the wall there beside, they had tried an assault on the breach, and hard had been the battle there, and in the end, after fierce give & take, they of the Hold had done so valiantly that they had thrust back the assailants, and that in the hottest brunt the Black Squire had been hurt in the shoulder by a spear-thrust, but not very grievously; but withal that he sent, in so many words, forbidding the ladies to make any account of so small a matter. And, quoth the sergeant, most like my lord will wear his armour in four days' time; al-

so now we have reared another great slinger, which we call Stone-fretter, and soon, without doubt, we shall be standing victorious within that den of thieves.

**N**O though these tidings were not so altogether ill, yet were those ladies sore troubled thereby, & especially Atra, who swooned outright when she had heard the last word thereof.

**A**S FOR Birdalone, she made as little semblance of her trouble as she might, but when all was quiet again she went to find Viridis, and brought her to her chamber and spake to her, saying: Viridis, my sister, thou hast been piteous kind unto me from the first minute that thou sawest me naked & helpless, and fleeing from evil unto worse evil; nowise mightest thou have done better by me hadst thou been verily my sister of blood; & I know it that thou wouldst be loth to part from me.

**V**IRIDIS wept and said: Why dost thou speak of parting from me, when thou knowest it would break my heart?

**S**HID Birdalone: To say it as short as may be, because the parting must now come to pass. Viridis



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

waxed pale and then red, & she stamped her foot and said: It is unkind of thee to grieve me thus, and thou doest wrong herein.

**H**ARKEN, dear sister, said Birdalone: thou knowest, for thou thyself wast the first to tell me thereof, that I am the supplanter in our fellowship, and that I have undone Atra's hope. This I did not of mine own will, but it came unto me; yet of mine own will I can do the best I may to amend it; & this is the best, that I depart hence before the Red Hold is taken and my lords come back; for if they come back and I see my lord Arthur, so fair and beauteous as he is, before me, never shall I be able to go away from him. And lo thou, I have promised Atra by all the kindness she did me when we were come to the Wailing Tower, & I naked and quaking & half-dead with terror, that if occasion served I would do my utmost to help her, even if it were to my own grief. Now behold this that now is, is the occasion, & there will not be another; for when my love comes home hither & beholdeth me, think thou how all the desire which has been gathering in his heart this while will blossom & break forth toward me; & may happen he will

make but little semblance of it before other folk, for proud & high of heart is he; but he will seek occasion to find me alone, and then shall I be with him as the lark in the talons of the sparrow-hawk, and he will do his pleasure of me, and that with all the good-will of my heart. And then shall I be forsworn to Atra, & she will hate me, as now she doth not, and then is all the fellowship riven, and that by my deed.

**Y**ET was Viridis wrath, & she said: Meseemeth this is fool's talk. Will not the fellowship be all the more riven if thou depart and we see thee no more?

**W**HAY, said Birdalone; for when I am gone thy love shall be no less for me, though as now thou art angry; and Atra will love me for that I shall have held to my promise to mine own scathe; and thy man and Hurea will lay it to me that I have done valiantly and knightly. And Arthur, how can he choose but love me; and maybe we shall yet meet again.

**A**ND therewithal she did at last bow down her head and fall to weeping, & Viridis was moved by her tears and fell to kissing and caressing her.



**A**FTER a little Birdal-  
lone lifted up her head  
& spake again: More-  
over, how can I dare to abide  
him? didst thou not see how  
grim he was to me when they  
delivered me and brought me  
back? and he with his own lips  
told me so much, that it was  
because he doubted that I had  
done amiss; and now if I do a-  
miss again, even if it be at his  
bidding, will it not be so that  
he will speedily weary of me, &  
curse me & cast me off? What  
sayest thou, Viridis mine?

**W**HAT is to say, said Vi-  
ridis, save that thou  
hast broken my heart?  
But thou mayst heal it if thou  
wilt take thy words back, and  
tell me that thou wilt not sun-  
der thee from us.

**B**UT Birdalone brake out  
weeping and lamenting  
aloud, and she cried out:  
Nay, nay, it may not be; I must  
depart, and Atra hath smitten  
me amidst of my friends. And  
Viridis knew not what to  
say or to do.

**A**T last came Birdalone to  
herself again, and she  
looked sweetly on Viri-  
dis and smiled on her from out  
her tears, & said: Thou seest,  
sister, how little a loss thou  
wilt have of me, a mere wild wo-  
man. And now nought availeth  
either me or thee but I must be-

gone, & that speedily. Let it be  
to-morrow then. And when the  
messenger comes at the end  
of this week, send word by him  
of what I have done; and look  
thou to it but both our lords  
will praise me for the deed.

**S**HID Viridis: But whith-  
er wilt thou, or what wilt  
thou do? To Green-  
ford first, said Birdalone, and  
after whither the Good Lord  
shall lead me; and as for what  
I will do, I am now deft in two  
crafts, script and broidery to  
wit; and, wheresoever I be, folk  
shall pay me to work herein for  
them, whereby I shall earn my  
bread. Hearken also, my sister,  
canst thou give me any deal of  
money? for though I wot lit-  
tle of such matters, yet I wot  
that I shall need the same. And  
I ask this whereas, as e'en now  
I said, I deem our lords shall  
praise my deed, & that, there-  
fore, they would not that I  
should depart hence as an out-  
cast, wherefore they shall not  
begrudge it to me. Moreover,  
for the same cause I would thee  
speak to the old squire Geof-  
frey of Lea, and tell him that  
I have an errand to Greenford,  
and crave of him that he lend  
me one of the two younglings,  
Arnold or Anselm, and two or  
threemen at arms to bring me  
safely thither; since now, for-  
sooth, I need no more adven-



Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending

tures on the road.

**S**HE smiled as she spake;  
& now all the passion of  
anguish seemed to have  
left her for that while; but Vi-  
ridis cast her arms about her  
neck & wept upon her bosom,  
and said: Woe's me! for I see  
that thou wilt go whatsoever  
I may say or do; I strove to be  
angry with thee, but I might  
not, & now I see that thou con-  
strainest me as thou dost all  
else. I will go now straightway  
and do thine errand.

**T**HUS then they part-  
ed for that time; but it  
was not till the day af-  
ter the morrow that Birdalone  
was alboun. Viridis told of her  
departure both to Hurea and  
Htra; & Hurea lamented it, but  
would not do aught to stay her;  
for she was waxen weary and  
listless since the death of her  
man. As for Htra, she spake but  
little concerning it, but to Vi-  
ridis praised Birdalone's vali-  
ance & kindness. Yet unto her-  
self she said: Verily she under-  
stood my word that I spake to  
her about the occasion of her  
helping. Yet woe's me! for she  
shall carry his love with her  
whithersoever she wendeth; &  
a happy woman is she.

**B**UT when Geoffrey the  
squire knew that the la-  
dies, all three, were at  
one with Birdalone as to her

departure, he doubted noth-  
ing, but bade Arnold, his mate,  
take four good men with him,  
and bring the Lady Birdalone  
unto Greenford & do her bid-  
ding there. Albeit, he deemed  
no less but they would bring  
her back again.

Chapter XIV. Birdalone leaves  
the Castle of the Quest

**I**N THE morrow  
morn then, Bird-  
alonespake fare-  
well both to Hu-  
rea & Htra; but  
as for Viridis,  
she sent her word that she had  
no heart thereto, and yet she  
sent her a word of comfort, to  
wit, that she deemed that they  
would one day meet again. Hu-  
rea, in her parting words, part  
praised her, part chid her; say-  
ing that she did well and kind-  
ly and valiantly, as her wont  
was. Yet, said she, when all is  
said, thou mightest have abid-  
ed this tangle & trouble, which  
at the worst had not been so  
evil as death between us.  
Yea, sister, said Birdalone, but  
might not death have come of  
my abiding?

**A**S she spake, in came Htra,  
with her head somewhat  
drooped, meek & hum-  
ble, her cheeks red, her hands  
trembling; and she said: Wilt  
thou take now my word of fare-  
well and blessing, and the kiss



of peace betwixt us, and bear away the memory of our kindness together?

**B**IRDALONE stood up proud & straight, and was somewhat pale as she suffered Atra to kiss her cheeks and mouth, and said: Now hast thou forgiven me that weird dragged me in betwixt thy love & thy goodhap; and I have forgiven thee that I am led away by weird into the waste and the wilderness of love. farewell. Therewith she went her way to the gate, & the others followed her not.

**W**ITHOUT abode her Arnold and the four men at arms, and her palfrey & a sumpter horse bearing two goodly coffers, wherein Viridis had let load raiment and other havings for her; and

Arnold came up to her smiling, and said: My lady Viridis hath given me a pouch wherein is money to bear for thee to Greenford & hand over to thee there when we be safe; and she hath bidden me to be in all wise obedient unto thee, lady, which needed not, whereas now and from henceforth am I by mine own will thy very servant to do thy pleasure always and every where.

**S**HE thanked him and smiled on him kindly, so that his heart beat fast for joy and love of her; and therewith she gat into the saddle & they rode their ways together, and Birdalone looked back never till the Castle of the Quest was shut from their eyes by the nesses of the little hills.

Here ends the fifth Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called The Tale of the Quest's Ending, and begins the Sixth Part of the said tale, which is called The Days of Absence. ❀❀

Part V. The  
Tale of the  
Quest's  
Ending



THE WATER OF THE MONDROUS ISLES  
THE SIXTH PART: THE DAYS OF ABSENCE

Chapter I. Birdalone rides to  
Greenford & there takes leave  
of Arnold and his Men



THE ROAD TO GREEN-  
FORD nought befell to tell of;  
they came thither when the sun  
was at point to set, for they  
had ridden diligently all day.

AS they rode the streets  
of the good town, they  
noted of them, that  
though it was evening, where-  
in folk do much disport them  
abroad, there were women and  
children enough in the streets  
or standing at their doors, but  
of carles very few, and they for  
the more part grey-heads.

NOW did Arnold bring  
Birdalone to the town  
hall, wherein yet sat the  
deputy of the burgrave, who  
himself was in the leaguer at  
the Red Hold; this man, who  
was old and wise and nothing

feeble of body, made much of  
Birdalone and her folk, & was  
glad of them when he knew  
that they had the seal and let-  
pass of Geoffrey of Lea; where-  
fore he gave them to eat and  
drink, and lodged them in his  
own house, and made them the  
best of cheer.

BUT betimes on the mor-  
row did Birdalone send  
back Arnold & the four  
men-at-arms, with no tale but  
that such was her will; & bid-  
ding farewell to the said Ar-  
nold, she suffered him to kiss  
her hands, and gave him a ring  
from off her finger, so that he  
went on his way rejoicing.

SO soon as she saw him  
and his men well on the  
road, she went to the  
old man, the vice-ruler of the  
town, who was of the alder-  
men thereof, and did him to  
wit that she would wage two  
or three carles who could deal  
with horses and beasts, and  
withal handle weapons if need  
were, to be both as servants &  
guards for her, as she had er-  
rands in that country-side, &  
belike might well have to go  
from town to town thereabout.  
He took her asking kindly, but  
said it was none so easy to find  
men who for any wage would  
fare forth of Greenford at that  
stour, whereas well-nigh all



their fighting men were lying before the Red Hold as now. Howsoever, ere noontide he brought before her a man of over three score, but yet way-worthy, and two stout young men, his sons, & told her that these men were trusty & would go with her to the world's end if need were.

**S**HE TOOK these men readily, & agreed with them for a good wage; and whereas each one had bow and arrows and short sword, she had but to buy for them jacks, sallets, and bucklers, and they were well armed as for their condition. Withal she bought them three good horses & another sumpter horse; which last was loaded with sundry wares that she deemed that she needed, and with victual. Then she took leave of the alderman, thanking him much for his good will, & so departed from Greenford at all adventure, when the day was yet young.

**T**HE alderman had asked her whither away, & she had told him that she was boun for Mostwyke first, & thereafter for Shifford on the Strand; whereas she had heard talk of these two towns as being on one and the same highway, & Mostwyke about a score of miles from Green-

q 2

ford; but when she was well out a gates she came to a little road on the right hand which turned clean away from Mostwyke, and she took the said road; & when she had followed it some three miles, she asked the old carle whither it led. He looked on her & smiled somewhat, and she on him in turn; and she said: Wonder not, my friend, that I am not clear about my ways, for I shall tell the sooth that I am a damsel adventurous, & am but seeking some place where I may dwell and earn my livelihood till better days come; and this is the whole truth, & thou shalt know it at once, to wit, that I am indeed fleeing, and were fain to hide the footsteps of me, and I bid you three to help me therein. But ye must know that I am fleeing, not from my foes, but from my friends; & if ye will, as we go by the way, I will tell you all the story of me, and we will be friends while we are together, yea, and thereafter if it may be.

**N**OW she said this because she had looked carefully on these men, and her seemed that they were good men and true, & not dull of wit. forsooth the old man, who hight Gerard of the Clee, was no weakling, & was nought loathly to look on, and his two



sons were goodly and great of fashion, clear-eyed, and well-carven of visage; they hight Robert and Giles.

**N**OW spake old Gerard: Lady, I thank thee heartily of thy much grace unto me; now would I get off my nag & kneel to thee in the highway therefor, but that I see that thou wert fain to make as much way as may be to-day; wherefore, by thy leave, I will tarry my homaging till we rest our horses by the wayside. She laughed, and praised his wisdom; and the young men looked on her and worshipped her in their hearts. forsooth, the fellowship of these good and true folk was soft and sweet to her, and soothed the trouble of her spirit. And she enforced herself to talk cheerfully with them, and asked them many things, & learned much of them.

**B**UT now went on Gerard to say: Lady, if thou wilt hide thy ways from whomsoever it may be, thou hast happened on no ill way; for though this road be good to ride, it is but a byway through the sheep-walks that folk may drive their wains hereby in the wet season of winter & spring; & for a great way we shall come to but little save the cots of the sheep-carles; scarce a hamlet or

two for the space of two days' riding; & on the third day a little town, hight Upham, where are but few folk save at the midsummer wool-fair, which is now gone by.

**N**OW there is a highway cometh into this road from out of the tilled country & Appleham, a good town, and goeth through it toward the tillage, and the City of the Bridges and the liberties thereof; and all the land is much builded & plentiful; but, if thou wilt, we will not take either highway, but wend over the downland which lieth north-east of Upham, and though it be roadless, yet is it not ill-going, and I know it well and its watering-places, little dales and waters therein all running north-east, wherein be certain little thorps here and there, which shall refresh us mightily. Over that downland we may wend a four days, and then the land will swell up high, and from the end of that high land we shall behold below us a fair land of tillage, well watered and wooded, & much builded; & in the midst thereof a great city with walls and towers, & a great white castle & a minster, and lovely houses a many. In that city mayst thou dwell and earn thy livelihood if thou canst do aught of



crafts. And if thou mayst not, then may we find somewhat to swink at for a wage, & so maintain thee & us. But the said city is called the City of the five Crafts, and the land round about it is the frank thereof; & oftenest, frank and city & all, it is called the five Crafts all simply. Now what sayest thou hereof, my lady?

**S**HE said: I say that we will go thither, and that I thank thee & thy sons of thy good will, and so may God do to me as I reward you well therefor. But tell me, good Gerard, how it is that thou art so willing to leave kith & kin to follow a gangrel wife along the ways? **S**aid Gerard: Dame, I think that the face & body of thee might lead any man that yet had manhood in him to follow thee, even if he left house & all to go with thee. But as for us, we have no longer a house or gear, whereas they of the Red Hold lifted all my bestial, and burned my house & all that was therein a month ago. **Y**ea, said Birdalone, and how befall it, then, that ye are not before the Red Hold to avenge thee? **D**ame, said he, when the muster was I was deemed somewhat over old, wherefore the sheriff took me not, but suffered my sons also to abide behind to earn a living for me;

may God be good to him therefor, and St. Leonard! But as to my kindred, I must tell thee that I am not kinned hereabout, but in a good town hight Utterhay, & that when our alderman sent for me to bring me to thee, I was more than half-minded to get me back thither. Now sooth it is that the best way thither, though it may be indeed the safest rather than the shortest, lies through the five Crafts; for the road goes thence to Utterhay a three score miles or so, making the longer of it, as it skirteth ever some way off a perilous forest, a place of sore dread & devilish, which hight Evilshaw, on the edge whereof lieth Utterhay, a merry cheapingstead & a plentiful, & the home of my kindred. Wherefore now is the City of the five Crafts handy to us; because when thou hast done with us, as I hope it may belong first, then are we others nigh home, & may all simply wend our way thither.

**B**IRDALONE thanked him again full heartily; but therewithal as they rode along there seemed to stir in her some memory of the earliest of her days in the witch's house, and she began to have a longing to betake her to Utterhay and the skirts of Evilshaw.



Chapter II. Of Birdalone  
& her fellowship, their faring  
over the Downland.



**A**US rode they along & loitered not, though they talked blithely together; & Birdalone wondered to herself that she might so much as hold up her head for bitter thoughts of the days & the longings but late passed away, but so it was, that it was only now and again that they stung her into despair and silence, and for the most part she hearkened to the talk of the old man & the lads about the days of Greenford & the alarms of lifting and unpeace, and the ways of the chapmen and the craftsmen.

**A**N hour after noon they rested in a little dale of the downland where was a pool and three thorn bushes thereby; & when they had lighted down, the old man knelt before Birdalone and took her hand, & swore himself her man to do her will, whatso it were; & then he stood up and bade his sons do likewise; so they two knelt before her in turn, somewhat shy & abashed, for all that they were such stout, bold fellows, & found it hard to take her hand, & then when they had it in theirs, hard to let it go again.

**A** SCORE of miles & five they rode that day, and had no roof over them at night save the naked heaven, but to Birdalone that was but little scathe: they made a shift to have some fire by them, and the three men sat long about it that even while Birdalone told them somewhat of her life; and as she told of the House under the Wood & the Great Water, Gerard had some inkling of whereabouts it was; but was nought so sure, because, as above said in this tale, seldom did any from the world of men venture in Evilshaw, or know of the Great Water from its banks that gave unto the forest.

**I**N like wise they rode the next day, & came at even-tide to a thorp in a fair little dale of the downland, & there they guested with the shepherd folk, who wondered much at the beauty of Birdalone, so that at first they scarce durst venture to draw nigh unto her until Gerard & his sons had had some familiar converse with them; then indeed they exceeded in kindness toward them, in their rough upland fashion, but ever found it hard to keep their eyes off Birdalone, and that the more after they had heard the full sweetness of her voice; where/



as she sang to them certain songs which she had learned in the Castle of the Quest, though it made her heart sore; but she deemed she must needs pay that kindly folk for their guestful & blithe ways. And thereafter they sang to the pipe and the harp their own downland songs; & this she found strange, that whereas her eyes were dry when she was singing the songs of love of the knighthood, the wildness of the shepherd music drew the tears from her, would she, would she not. Homelike and dear seemed the green willowy dale to her, and in the night ere she slept, and she lay quiet amidst of the peaceful people, she could not choose but weep again, for pity of the bitter sweet of her own love, and for pity of the wide world withal, & all the ways of its many folk that lay so new before her.

Chapter III. They come to the City of the five Crafts, and Birdalone meets with the Poor wife.

**T**HEY made not so much way that they came to the five Crafts on the fourth day, but lay under the bare heavens in a dale below the big swell of the downland, whereof Gerard spake. But be-

times in the morning Birdalone arose and stirred up her men, and they gat to horse, & rode the hill before them till they came on to the crest thereof. Then Birdalone cried aloud with joy to see the lovely land before her, and the white walls and the towers of the great city, whereas Greenford was but small beside it.

**S**O they rode down into the frank, & entered the gates of the city a little after noon, & again was Birdalone in all amaze at the going to and fro in the streets and the thronging of the markets, & the divers folk, as chapmen and men-at-arms, and craftsmen and lords, who used the said city; & to say sooth, somewhat her heart sank within her, & it seemed to her that it would be hard and troublous to have to deal with so much folk, and that they must needs go past her on the right hand and the left without heeding her life.

**N**OW SOEVER, Gerard, who knew the city, brought her to a fair hostel, where she was well lodged, she and her men. Straightway, then, before she went out into the streets again, she fell to getting together what she had of fine broidered work and of fair script, and to finishing what she had unfinished. And



she sent forth Gerard and his sons to find out where was the market for such goods, and if she would have leave to sell the same therein, or anywhere in the town; and Gerard found the hall of the embroiderers, and therein the master of the craft, and he received the carle courteously when he heard that there was fine work come to town, and did him to wit that none in any such craft might have freedom of the market save by leave of the guild of the craft; but, said he, the guilds were open-handed and courteous, and were nowise wont to refuse the said leave, were the work good and true; & he bade Gerard withal tell his mistress that she were best to bring samplings of her work to the Guild-hall so soon as she might. So the very next day went Birdalone thither, & found the master a well-looking tall man of some five and forty winters, who looked on her from the first as if he deemed it were no ill way of wearing the time. To this man she showed her work, and though he found it not easy to take his eyes off Birdalone herself, yet when he looked at her handiwork, he found it better than very good, and he said to her: Damsel, here is what will be sought for at a great price by

the great lords and ladies of the land, & the rich burghesses, and especially by the high prelates; & so much of it as thou hast a mind to do is so much coined gold unto thee; & now I see thee what thou art, I were fain that thou gathered good to thee. But as diligent as thou mayst be, thou hast but one pair of hands, wonderful soothly, and yet but one pair. He broke off at that word, for he was verily staring at her hands, & longing to see more of her arms than the wrists only, so that he scarce knew what he was saying. Then he turned red and said: Soothly I wot that no other hands save thine may do such needlework, or make the draughts for them. But thou wilt need women-servants to help thee, both in dighting the house for thee (for this big old carle here will be scarce meet thereto) and as apprentices to help thee about the work itself; & if thou wilt, I shall seek the best ones out for thee. Moreover I must tell thee, that though I know for sure how that no woman in the world may work such needlework as thine, yet whiles there cometh hither a woman of middle age, a woman worn by troubles, pious, meek, & kind; and by St. Lucia! now I look on thee again, she might be some-



what like unto thee, were she young and fresh-looking and strong as thou art. Now this woman I say, & thereat I marvel, doeth needlework that is somewhat after the manner of thine, and which seemed to us excellent till I had seen thine. Good livelihood she earneth thereby, & is diligent therein; but she hath no heart to get apprentices, or be made one of our guild, both of which were lawful to her as to thee, lovely damsel. But now I shall counsel her to be made of our guild along with thee, if thou wilt have it so, & then may ye both have three apprentices each, & may make in our city a goodly school, so that our guild shall be glorified thereby, for there will be none such work in the world. How sayest thou?

**S**HE thanked him much, & yeasaid him, & thought in her heart that such work which would keep her hands and her head both busy, would solace the grief of her heart, and wear away the time, that she might live till hope might peradventure arise in her.

**T**HEN said the master: There is one thing else, that is, thy dwelling-place; and if thou wilt I shall hire thee a house in the street of the Broiderers, a goodly one:

sooth to say, that same is mine own, so thou mayst deem that I tell thee hereof to mine own gain; and that may be (and he reddened therewith); but there is this in it, that if thou lackest money I shall let thee live therein without price till thou shalt have earned more than enough to pay me.

**B**IRDALONE thanked him well, but she did him to wit that she was nowise penniless; and presently she departed well pleased, though she deemed that the said master was well nigh more friendly than might be looked for. And the next day he came to her in the hostelry, & without more ado brought her to the house in the street of the Broiderers, & she found it fair and well plenished, and so she fell to work to get all things ready.

**N**OW the next week was the day appointed when she should be received into the broiderers' guild, and the day before came the master aforesaid to see Birdalone. Sooth to say, he had not failed to come to see her every day, on one pretence or another, since the first day they had met, but ever he did to her with all honour & simply. But on this day he brought with him the woman skilful of her hands, to



show her unto Birdalone, who received her gladly, and there-after Master Jacobus left them alone together.

**S**HE said woman looked worn and aged indeed, but was not of more than five & forty winters even by seeming, after the first look at her; she was somewhat tall & well knit, her face well shapen, & her hair yet goodly. There was a kind look in the eyes of her, as if she might love any one with whom she lived. that would be kind to her. Meek, or rather over meek, of mien she was, and it seemed of her that she had been sore scared & oppressed one while or another.

**S**O when Master Jacobus was gone, Birdalone set her down on the settle beside her, & spake to her full sweetly and kindly, & the woman spake little in turn save answering simply to her questions. Birdalone asked where she was kinned, & she answered: In Utterhay. Then said Birdalone: Within these last few days I have heard that town named twice or thrice, and never before, as meseemeth; and yet, hearing the name from thy mouth, it seemeth to stir some thing in me, as if I had been there one time and longed to be there again. Is there aught in the place whereof folk tell

wide about, so that I might have heard it told of and not noted it at the time? Nay, lady, said the dame, save perchance that it is on the verge of a very great and very evil wood, otherwise it was once a merry town and of much resort from the country side.

**B**IRDALONE looked on her, & saw that the tears were coming from her eyes and running down her cheeks as she spake; so she said to her: Why dost thou weep, mother? Is there aught I may do to assuage thy grief? Said the dame: Thou art so kind to me, and thy voice is so dear and sweet, that I cannot choose but weep. Meseems it is because love of thee hath taken mine heart, & therewith is blended memory of past sorrow of mine. Thou askest me if thou mayest do aught to assuage my grief; dear lady, I am not grieved now, that has gone by; nay, now I am more than not grieved, I am made happy, because I am with thee. But since thou art so debonaire with me, I will ask thee to do somewhat for me; and that is, to tell me of thy life gone by; I mean, sweet young damsel, of thy life when thou wert a little child.

**T**HEN Birdalone kissed her and said: It goes to my heart that thou lov-



est me; for soon as I set eyes on thee my heart went out to thee; and now belike we shall be dear friends; and that is a thing that shall avail me much, to have a friend who is so much older than I, so that nought can come between us, of the love of men & other griefs. ¶ Yea now, said the dame, smiling somewhat sadly; now do I see the water standing in thine eyes, and thy voice quavers. Is it so, thou lovely kind damsel, that thou hast been grieved by love of a man? Who then may prevail in love if thou prevail not? ¶ And she fell to fondling Birdalone's hand; but Birdalone said: It is overlong to tell of all my life, mother, though I be so young; but now I will do as thou badest me, & tell thee somewhat of my days when I was little.

**A**ND therewith she fell to telling her of her days in the House under the Wood, and the witch and her surliness and grimness, & of her love of the wild things, and how she waxed there. And she spake a long while, for the memory of those days seemed to lead her along, as though she verily were alive now in them; & the woman sat before her, gazing on her lovingly, till Birdalone stayed her tale at last & said: Now have I told thee more

than enough of a simple matter, & a life that was as that of a wild creature of the woods. Now shalt thou, mother, tell me somewhat of thee, & what was thy grief of Utterhay; for thou shalt find that the telling thereof shall solace thee. ¶ Ah! so think young folk, said the woman sadly, because there are many days left for them to hope in. But though the telling of my sorrow be a fresh sorrow to me, yet shalt thou hear it. It is but of the loss of my babe; but she was of all babes the fairest and the sweetest.

**W**HEN she fell to telling Birdalone all that concerning the witch at Utterhay & the poor wife that ye have heard in the beginning of this book, until the time when she left the house to buy meat for the witch; for she herself was the said poor wife. And then she told how she came back again & found her guest gone and the child withal; and though she had wept for love of Birdalone, she wept not at telling of this grief, but told it as a tale which had befallen some other one. And she said: And so when I had done running up and down like a wild thing, & asking of the neighbours with lack of breath and fierceness of speech who had taken my child away from me;



and when I had gone up to the wood & even some way into it, and when I had wandered up & down again, & night was falling, I came back at last again to my poor house so weary with my woe, that I scarce knew what had befallen me. And there up on the board lay the victual & drink which I had brought, and the money which the witch had given unto me; and despite of grief, hunger flamed up in me at the sight, and I threw myself on to it and ate and drank, and so came to myself, that is, to my grief. But the next day I ran about hither & thither, and wearied folk with my asking & my woe; but it was all of none avail. The child was gone away from me. There is little more to tell of me, sweet lady. If I were to live, needs must I take the poor price of my little one, to wit, the witch's money, & deal with folk for my livelihood; wherefore I bought me cloth & silks, having now the where-withal, and set to work on broi-dery, for even then was I a cunning needle-woman. So were God & the saints good to me, & inclined the folk to me, that they were good and piteous, & I lacked not work nor due livelihood; but after a while I wearied of Utterhay, where my dear child should have been running about before my feet; and hav-

ing by this time gotten a little money together, and being exceeding deft in my craft, I came on hither to live, and, praise be to St. Ursula! I have found it easy to live: and praise be to Allhallows withal that I have found thee, who art so kind & lovely; and thou by seeming of the very age my child should be if she be living: or how old art thou, dear lady?

**B**IRDALONE laid her hand on her breast, and she was turned pale, but she said in a low voice: I deem that I am of twenty summers.

**T**HEN they both sat silent, till Birdalone might master the fluttering of her heart, and she said: Now meseems I have a memory even earlier than those I told thee erst. A woman took me out of a basket & set me on the back of an ass, and I looked about, and I was in a grassy lawn of the woods; and I saw a squirrel run up a tree-trunk before me, and wind round the tree & hide him; and then I stretched out my hands & cried out to him; and then came the woman unto me, & gave me wood-straw-berries to eat out of her hand.

**B**RAKE out the poor-wife thereat, pale and trembling: Tell me now, my child, hast thou any memory of what the woman was who set



thee on the ass and gave thee the strawberries? Birdalone looked on her, and scanned her face closely, & then shook her head, and said: Nay, it was not thou, mother. Nay, surely; nay, surely, said the woman; but think again. Said Birdalone, speaking slowly: Was it my mistress then? She was a tall woman, somewhat thin & bony, with goodly red hair and white skinned, but thin lip-ped. Quoth the poor wife: No, no; it is of no use; nought such was she. Then Birdalone looked up and said eagerly: Yea, but it was her other shape belike: therein was she a tall woman, dark haired, hook-nosed, and hawk-eyed, as if of thirty summers; a stark woman. Hast thou seen such? dost thou remember her?

**T**HE woman sprang up and cried out, and was like to have fallen, but Birdalone arose and held her in her arms and comforted her, & set her in her seat again & knelt before her; and presently the poor wife came to herself and said: My child, thou sayest do I remember her; how shall I ever forget her? she was the thief who stole my child.

**T**HERewith she slid from off her seat, and knelt by Birdalone, & stooped low down on the floor

as if the tall maiden were but a little one, and she fell to kissing her & patting her, her face and her hands, and all about; & said, sobbing and yet smiling: Suffer me a little, my child, mine own lovely child! for in good sooth I am thy mother, & it is long since I have seen thee: but hearken, when I come quite to myself I shall pray thee not to leave me yet awhile, and I shall pray thee to love me.

**B**IRDALONE clipped & kissed her, and said: I love thee dearly, & never, never shall I leave thee.

**T**HEN they stood up, and the mother took Birdalone by the shoulders, & held her a little aloof, and devoured her with her eyes; and she said: Yea, thou hast grown tall, & belike wilt grow no taller: and how fair & lovely thou hast grown; & thou that wert born in a poor man's house! no wonder that any should covet thee. And I, I wonder if ever I was as fair as thou art; forsooth many called me fair for a little while; and now behold me! Nay, child and darling, let not thy face grow downcast, for now shall I know nought more of fear & grief; and is it not like that I shall grow fairer of flesh, & shapelier, in the happy days we shall dwell together? And therewith she



took her to her arms, & it seem-  
ed as if she might never have  
enough of clipping & embrac-  
ing her; and she would look at  
Birdalone's hands & her feet  
and her arms, and stroke them  
and caress them; and she won-  
dered at her body, as if she had  
been a young mother eaten up  
with the love of her first-born.  
And as for Birdalone, she was  
as glad of her mother as might  
be; & yet in her heart she won-  
dered if perchance one of the  
fellowship might stray that  
way, and be partaker in her joy  
of this new-found dear friend;  
and she said, might it be Viri-  
dis; but in her inmost heart,  
though she told it not to her-  
self, she longed that the Black  
Squire might find her out at  
last.

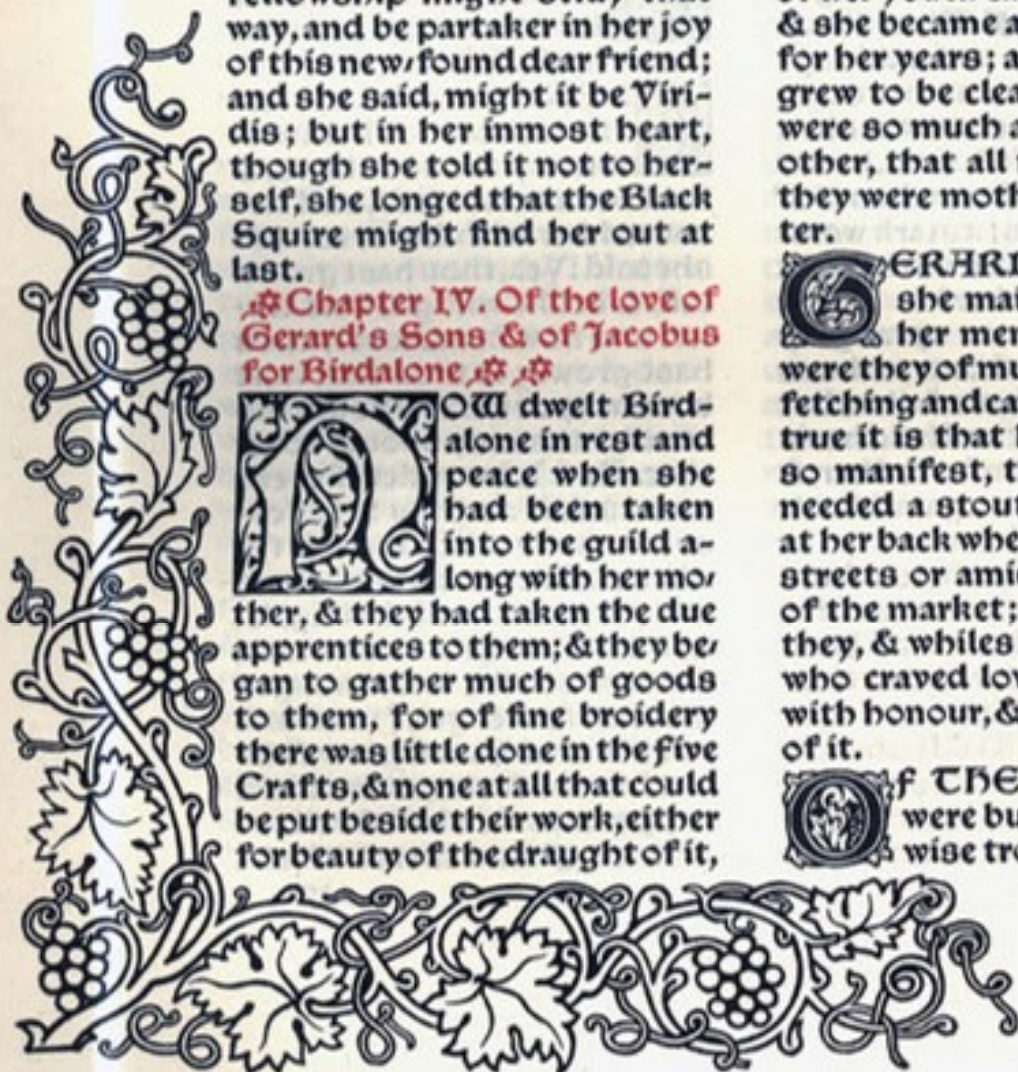
Chapter IV. Of the love of  
Gerard's Sons & of Jacobus  
for Birdalone.

**N**OW dwelt Bird-  
alone in rest and  
peace when she  
had been taken  
into the guild a-  
long with her mo-  
ther, & they had taken the due  
apprentices to them; & they be-  
gan to gather much of goods  
to them, for of fine broidery  
there was little done in the five  
Crafts, & none at all that could  
be put beside their work, either  
for beauty of the draught of it,

or for skill of handiwork. She  
declared unto all folk how that  
the poor wife (who had to name  
Hudrey) was her very mother,  
from whom she had been stol-  
en in her youngest days; but  
she told none any tale of how  
she was stolen. And the twain  
dwelt together in the greatest  
loving-kindness; & it was with  
Hudrey as she had forecast,  
that now her days were happy,  
and she living in all ease and  
content, that the goodness  
of her youth came back to her,  
& she became a fair woman as  
for her years; and therewith it  
grew to be clear that the two  
were so much alike one to the  
other, that all might see that  
they were mother and daugh-  
ter.

**G**ERARD & his two sons  
she maintained yet as  
her men; and not only  
were they of much use to her in  
fetching and carrying, but also  
true it is that her beauty was  
so manifest, that she whiles  
needed a stout lad weaponed  
at her back when she was in the  
streets or amidst the throng  
of the market; and many were  
they, & whiles of the highest,  
who craved love of her, some  
with honour, & some with lack  
of it.

**O**F THESE, forsooth,  
were but two that any-  
wise troubled her; and





the most trouble was this, that she might not fail to see that the love of her had entered into the hearts of the two Gerard sons, Robert & Giles; so that times were when she deemed she must even send them away, but when it came to the point she had not the heart there-to; though none other remedy there seemed, so sorely as their souls were wounded by longing for her. It is not to be said that they ever spake to her thereof, or wittingly wearied her with signs of love; but they could not so easily cover it up but that it was ever before her eyes. But she suffered it all for friendship's sake and for their true service, and in all friendliness did what she might to solace their grief. forsooth so good and true she found that father-kind, and the young men so goodly and kind, that she said to herself, had she not another man lying in her heart, she might well have chosen one of those twain for her very speech-friend and true lover.

**T**HE second wooer that troubled her was the master, Jacobus, who, when but three months were worn of her dwelling in her house, did all openly crave her love & offer her marriage, he being a man unwedded. Sore was her heart that she must needs

gainsay him, so kind and courteous as he had been to her at their first coming together; though this indeed is sooth, that straightway, so soon as he saw her, he fell into the captivity of her love. Howsoever, gainsay him she needs must, & he took the naysay so hardly that he was scarce like a man before her, and wept & prayed & lamented many times over, till she wearied of it, and well-nigh fell to loathing him. So that it came to this at last, that one day she spake to him and said that she might no longer bear it, but must seek another house & leave his. There then was the to-do, for he fell on his knees before her, & kissed her feet, would she, would she not, and cried out in his grief, till at last for pure weariness of his folly she gave way unto him, and said that she would still abide there; whereon he rose up from her & went away with all the grief run off him for that time, & as glad a man to look on as you might see on a summer's day.

**B**UT the next morning he came unto her again, and she thinking all was begun afresh, made him no glad countenance; but he stood up before her and spake friendly, and said how that she was in the right of it, and that if they



both dwelt in one house together they were like to have but a weary time of it, both she and he. But, said he, I will not that thou shouldst depart out of this house, for a goodly one it is, and full meet for thee; it is for me to depart, and not for thee. I tell thee, forsooth, that I had from the first meant this house as a gift from me to thee. And therewith he drew from his pouch a scroll, which was a deed of gift of the said house, duly sealed & attested, and he gave it into her hands; but she was sore moved thereat, & at the demeanour of him that morning, and she let the scroll fall to the floor and wept for pity of him, and reached out both her hands, & he kissed them, & then her lips also, & sithence he sat down beside her. But she said: Alas! that thou wilt give me what I may not take, and wouldst have of me what I may not give.

**B**UT now he waxed hotter, & said: This once I command thee to do my will, & take my gift. It will be nought to my gain if thou take it not; for I may not live in this house when thou art gone from it; and I swear by Allhallows that I will not let any have it to hire, nor will I sell it, since thou hast made it holy by dwelling therein.

**Y**ET was she sore moved by his generous fashion, and she said: I will take thy gift then, and live here in honour of thee & thy friendship; for well I wot thou hadst no mind to buy me with thy gift.

**S**O she spake, & he stood up stark and stern, & so departed, and kissed her not again; though meseems she would have suffered him had he offered it. Nay, belike had he at that moment pressed his wooing somewhat masterfully, it is not so sure but she might have yeasaid it, and suffered him to wed her & lead her to bed; though it would have gone ill both with him & with her thereafter.

**T**HENCEFORTH dwelt Birdalone with her mother & her maidens and her men in that house, & it became famous in the five Crafts because of her beauty & her wisdom, which minished not, but waxed day by day; but therewithal as the time wore, waxed her longing & sadness. But all this she hid in her own heart, and was debonair to all about her, and so good to poor folk that none had a word save of blessing on her beauty & her wisdom.



**Chapter V. Of the Death of  
Audrey, mother to Birdalone.**  
She is warned in a Dream to  
seek the Black Squire, and is  
minded to leave the City of  
the five Crafts, & seek again  
the Castle of the Quest.

**S**HE dwelt Bird-  
alone in the five  
Crafts in such  
rest and peace as  
her heart would  
let her; and dear  
& good friends she had about  
her; her mother first, whose  
love and desire for love of her  
made all things soft and dear  
unto her. Gerard and the Ger-  
ardsons were next, who were  
ever faithful and true unto her,  
and deft both of hand and of  
mind, so that they wrought  
many things for her avail. Then  
came the master, Jacobus, who  
held himself unwedded for her  
sake, and though he no longer  
dwelt in the same house with  
her, might scarce endure to  
miss the sight of her for two  
days running: a dear friend  
she deemed him, as forsooth  
he was, though whiles he tor-  
mented and wearied her, and  
belike had wearied her more,  
but for the sorrow which lay  
on her own heart, whereof it  
came that she might not think  
of any man as of one whomight  
be a lover, and so felt safe even  
with so kind a friend & so stub-

born in his love as was this  
one. Moreover he never again  
craved love of her in so many  
words, but only in his goings  
& comings so did, that it was  
clear how he had her, and the  
love of her, ever in his heart.

**M**ORE thus a five years;  
and then came a sick-  
ness on the city, and  
many died thereof; & the said  
sickness entered into Birda-  
lone's house, and slew Audrey  
her mother, but spared all else  
therein. Thereby at the first was  
Birdalone so overwhelmed that  
she might heed nought, neith-  
er her craft nor her friends, nor  
the days to come on the earth  
for her. And moreover when  
she came more to herself, which  
was not for many days, & ask-  
ed why her friend Jacobus had  
not been to see her the last  
days, she was told that he also  
was dead of the pestilence; &  
she sorrowed for him sorely,  
for she loved him much, though  
not in the way he would.

**A**ND now did the city  
and land of the five  
Crafts begin to look  
unfriendly to Birdalone, and  
she fell to thinking that she  
must needs depart thence, as  
she well might do, whereas she  
had foison of goods: and at  
first it was in her mind to go  
with Gerard and his sons unto  
Atterhay; but then she deem-

**Part VI. The  
Days of Ab-  
sence**



ed the thought of her mother, & how she would be ever thinking of the loss & the gain, and the loss once more stood in the way; and she turned one thing and another over in her mind, and might not face it.

**O**N a night, as she slept, came to her dreams of her days in the House under the Wood (as very seldom betid), and the witch/wife was speaking to her in friendly fashion (as for her) & blaming her for fleeing away, & was taunting her with the failure of her love, and therewith telling her how fair a man & lovesome was the Black Squire, & what a loss she had of him; & Birdalone was hearkening and weeping for tenderness' sake, while the witch was unto her neither fearful nor irksome, & forsooth nought save a mouthpiece for words that both grieved Birdalone and yet were an eager pleasure unto her. But in the midst thereof, and ere the dream had time to change, Birdalone awoke, and it was an early morning of later spring, and the sky was clear blue and the sun shining bright, & the birds singing in the garden of the house, & in the street was the sound of the early market/folk passing through the street with their wares; and all was fresh and lovely.

**S**HE awoke sobbing, and the pillow was wet with her tears, and yet she felt as if something strange & joyous were going to betide her, & for joy of the love of life the heart beat fast in her bosom.

**S**HE arose all darling naked as she was, and went to the window & looked out on the beauty of the spring, while the sound of the market/wains brought to her mind the thought of the meads, and the streams of the river, & the woodsides beyond the city; and she fella/longing for them, as a while she knelt on the window-seat, half dreaming & asleep again, till the sun came round that way, and its beams fell upon her bosom & her arms; & she stood up and looked on the fairness of her body, and a great desire took hold of her heart that it might be loved as it deserved by him whom she desired. And thus she stood there till she became ashamed, and hastened to do on her raiment; but even as she was about it, it came upon her that what she had will to do was to seek to the Castle of the Quest, and find out where was her love if there he were not, & so to seek him the world over till she found him. And such a flood of joy possessed her when she thought this, and so



eager to begone she was, that she deemed every minute wasted till she were on the road.

**N**EVERTHELESS, in a while, when her mind was steadied, she knew that she had somewhat to do ere she might be gone, & that here, as oft, it would be more haste less speed.

**S**o she abode a little, and then came into her hall duly dight, & found Gerard and his sons there to serve her; and she brake her fast, & bade them sit by her at table, as oft she did; and she spake to them of this and that, and Gerard answered lightly again; but the two Gerardsons looked at one another, as though they would speak & ask a question from time to time, but forbore because they durst not. But Gerard looked on them, & deemed he wotted what was in their minds; so at last he spake: Our lady, both I, & me, seemeth my sons also, deem that there is some tidings toward which are great unto thee; for thine eyes sparkle, and the red burns in thy cheeks, and thine hands may not be quiet, nor thy feet abide in one place; wherefore I see that thou hast something in thy mind which strives to be forth of it. Now thou wilt pardon us, our dear lady, that we ask concerning

this, because it is in our love for thee that we speak, lest there be some change toward which shall be a grief to some of us.

**M**Y men, said Birdalone, flushing red, sooth it is that there is a change at hand, and I shall tell you straightway what it is. Years ago I told you that I was fleeing from my friends; now the change hath betid that I would seek them again; & needs must I leave the five Crafts behind to do so. And moreover there is this ill word to be said, which I will say at once, to wit, that when I am but a little way gone from the five Crafts I must wend the other deal of my journey birdalone, as my name is.

**A**LL those three sat silent and aghast at that word, and the young men grew pale; but after a while spake Gerard: Our lady most well-beloved, this word which thou hast spoken, to wit, that thou needest us no longer, I have looked to hear any time this five years; and praise be to the saints that it hath come late and not soon. Now there is no more to be said but that thou tell us what is thy will that we should do.

**B**IRDALONE hung her head awhile for sorrow of sundering from these men; then she looked up and



said: It seemeth, my friends, as if ye deem I have done you a wrong in sundring our fellowship; but all I may say hereon is to pray you to pardon me, that I needs must go alone on my quest. And now what I would have you do, is first of all to fetch hither a notary and scrivener, that he may draw up a deed of gift to you, Gerard & Gerardsons, of this house & all that is therein, saving what money I may need for my journey, and gifts such as I shall bid you to be given to my workwomen. Ye must needs yeasay this, or ye are forsworn of your behest to do my will. But furthermore, I will have you to let the workwomen of mine (and the headone ruling) to hire the aforesaid house, if so they will; for now are they skilled, and may well earn good livelihood by the work. But the next work is simple; it is to furnish for me the array of a young man, with such armour as I may easily bear, to dight me for my road. forsooth ye wot that not unseldom do women use the custom of going arrayed like men, when they would journey with hidden head; and ye may happen upon such gear as hath been made for such a woman rather than any man; but thou shalt get me also a short bow & a quiver of arrows, for verily

these be my proper weapons that I can deal with deftly. Now my last command is that, when all is done, maybe to-morrow, or maybe the next day, ye bring me out of the city & the frank of the five Crafts, and bring me somewhat on my way over the downs, for loth am I to part from you ere needs must. Then they knelt before her and kissed her hands, & they were full of grief; but they saw that so it had to be.

**H**EREAFTER Gerard spake with his sons apart, & in a while came to Birdalone, & said: Our lady, we will do your will in all wise; but we shall tell thee, that the five Crafts will look but strange to us when thou art gone, & that we have a mind to betake us to Utterhay & the land of our kindred. Wherefore we pray thee to give this house that hath been so dear to us unto thy workwoman & her mates; for we need it not, nor the hire thereof, but shall do well enough with what money or good thou mayst give us. Is this according to thy will, or have I spoken rashly?

**S**HE said: Ye are good & ungreedy, & I bless you for it; be it as ye will; & this the more, as I were fain that ye go to Utterhay; for whiles I have deemed that I myself am drawn thitherward,



wherefore it may be that we shall meet again in that place.

**A**ND when she had so spoken, she might not refrain her tears; & the Gerardsons turned away, for they were ashamed, both that they should see her weep, or she them. But at last she called to them & said: Now make we the speediest end we may of this, for sorry work is the tarrying of farewell; so I pray you, my friends, to go about the work I have bidden you.

**S**O all was done as she would, & the day after the morrow was Birdalone abiding the coming of Gerard and his sons with the horses; & despite of the sundering of friends & the perils that belike lay before her, the world seemed fair to her, and life beginning anew. And she made no doubt that she would soon be at the Castle of the Quest, & there find all things much as she had left them; & there at least would be the welcome of her dear friend Viridis.

**Chapter VI. Of the Sundering of Birdalone from Gerard and his Sons.**

**R**ESENTLY were the horses come with Gerard & his sons, and Birdalone gat to horse amongst them.

She was armed in a light hauberk, and over it a long and loose surcoat that came down beneath the knee of her; & a sallet she had upon her head, wide but light, so that not very much of her face was to be seen. She had made up her mind to this tale upon the road, when she was among folk, that she was under a vow not to do off her helm for a seven days' space. Withal she had covered up the lovely shapeliness of her legs with long boots of deer-leather, and her surcoat was wide-sleeved; she was well hidden, and whereas she was a tall and strong woman, she might well pass for a young man, slender & fair-faced. She was girt with a good sword, and Gerard had gotten her a strong horse, man's bow and a quiver full of arrows, wherewith, as afore-said, she knew well how to deal; wherefore she was by no means without defence.

**S**OTHY went their ways through the streets and out a gates; and it must be said, that were not Birdalone's thoughts turned toward the Castle of the Quest, and what she should meet there, her heart had been somewhat sore at leaving the city which had cherished her so well these years past; nay, as it was, the shadow of the southern gate,

**Part VI. The Days of Absence**



as she past thereunder, smote somewhat cold upon her, and she silently bade farewell to the City of the five Crafts with some sorrow, though with no fear.

**N**ORTH they rode then through the frank and up on to the shepherd country, & whereas their horses were of the best, & they had no sumpter/ beast with them till they came to Upham, where they must needs have victual, they made but five days of it to the place where the road turned aside from the country of Mostwyke. There then they drew rein, & Birdalone lighted down from her horse, and they all, and they lay upon the grass and ate and drank together.

**W**HEN they were done, spake Birdalone & said: Dear friends, this is the hour & the place when we must needs part; for ye shall go back again to five Crafts, & do what I have bidden of you, & do your will, and wend your ways with your livelihood unto Utterhay. But as for me, I must go my ways first unto Greenford, & thence to seek my friends from whom erst I was fleeing when ye first became my friends. Now perchance ye will say that I have taken you up in my need, and cast you aside at my pleasure; but I may only say that there

be at present two deals of my life, and of one of them have ye been partakers, & of the other ye may not be. forsooth that is a grief unto me, as I suppose unto you is it a greater one. But unto me also were it heavier but that my heart tells me it shall not ever be so; for as I said to you some days ago, I have a hope that we shall yet meet again, be it in Utterhay or in some other place. And now I pray you to pardon me wherein I may have done amiss unto you, and begrudge it not that there be others, who indeed were first-comers in regard to you, and whom I love better than you; for of your truth & your good/ will and loving/ kindness will I bear witness wheresoever I may be.

**W**HEN spake Gerard: Do ye speak, my sons; for I have no grudge against her, nor aught to bewail me as to her, save, it may be, that I am now so well on in years that it may well befall that I shall not live till the time of the meeting in Utterhay. But I will pray thee this, dear lady, that if thou come to the place where I lie dead thou wilt kiss my burial/ stone, & sing due masses for me. Nay, she said, but this is the worst shall betide betwixt us.



**W**HEN SPAKE Robert Gerardson: I am not deft of speech, but this parting makes me bold to say this: that from the time when first I set eyes on thee I have loved thee in such wise that never mayst thou love me as much as I love thee, if thou hast anywhere, as I deem thou hast, a lover of thy body, whom thou lovest. Now I have seen that for a long while thou hast known this, and hast ever because of it been as meek and kind with me as thou mightest be. And this hath partly grieved me the more, because it hath eked my longing for thee; & yet it hath comforted me the more, because it hath made me deem better of thee, and deem thee worthier of worship and holier; therefore have thou all my blessing for it. And now I know that thou sunderest from us that thou mayst go seek thy very bodily lover; & I say, that if the sundering had been for any lighter cause, grieved at heart should I have been; but since it is even so, once more I bless thee, & ever shall I be happy in the thought of thee; and if ever we meet again, still shalt thou find me as now I am in heart and in soul.

**S**HE turned to him, not dry-eyed, and said: I know that what thou sayest is sooth; and thou hast

guessed right as to my goings; and I take thy blessing with love and joy.

**W**HEN were they silent; but Giles Gerardson was struggling with words, for he was slow to speech; at last he said: I say much as saith my brother: but see thou, our lady, how ill it had gone if thou hadst loved one of us with an equal love; woe worth the strife then! But now I will crave this of thee, that thou kiss me on the lips, now whenas we part; & again, that thou wilt do as much when first we meet again hereafter. And I tell thee right out, that if thou gainsay this, I shall deem it unfriendly in thee, and that those lovely words which thou didst speak e'en now were but words alone, & that thou art not as true as I have deemed thee.

**S**HE laughed amidst her tears, and said: Dear lad, doom me not till I have been found guilty! I shall nowise naysay thee this, for I love thee, & now and ever shalt thou be unto me as a brother, thou & Robert also; for even so have ye done by me. But thou wottest, dear lad, that whiles and again must sister sunder from brother, and even so it has to be now.

**W**HEN they sat silent all four; & thereafter Bird-alone arose and did off





her sallet, and kissed and embraced Gerard and his sons, & bade them farewell, & she and the youngmen wept. Then she armed herself & gat to horse, & went her ways towards Greenford, having nought with her but the raiment and arms that her body bore, and her horse, and some gold pieces & gems in a little pouch. So rode she; & the others turned back sadly toward the five Crafts.

**Chapter VII. Birdalone cometh to Greenford, and hears of the Wasting of the Castle of the Quest.**

**N**O came Birdalone riding in to Greenford an hour before sunset on a day of the latter end of May; & she had no doubt but to go straight to the hostelry, & that the less as she had not abided there before, as hath been told. To them that served her she told the tale of her vow, that she might not do off her sallet that seven days; and some trowed her, & some deemed her a woman, but whereas she seemed by her raiment to be of condition none meddled with her. Moreover, as she told her intent to ride on betimes in the morning, it mattered the less unto them: withal she gave out that she came from foreign

parts, as sooth it was.

**I**N the evening she sat in the hall, & with her were three chapmen travelling with their wares, and two good men of the town sitting; and they were talking together, & were courteous and blithe, & amidst their talk they threw many a glance at the slim and fair young squire, as Birdalone seemed, and were fain to speak unto him, but refrained them for courtesy's sake. For her part, Birdalone longed sore to ask them somewhat of the Castle of the Quest, but the words clave to her throat for very fear; and she sat restless and ill at ease. However at last said a townsman to a chapman: Art thou for the Red Hold, Master Peter, when thou art done here? Birdalone turned very pale at that word; and Master Peter spake: Yea, surely neighbour, if the folk leave aught in my packs for others to buy. He spake in a jovial voice, as if he were merry, & the others all laughed together, as though they were well pleased & in good contentment. And now, deemed Birdalone, would be her time to speak if she would learn aught; so she constrained herself at last, and spake, though in a quavering voice: Meseems then, masters, this good town is thriving as now? This I ask



because I am a stranger in these parts this long while, and now I am come back hither fain were I to find the land in good peace; for I may chance to take up my abode hereby.

**T**HE GOODMEN turned to her & smiled kindly when they heard the sweetness of her voice; & one of them said: Sir of the sallet, ye shall be content with the peace in this land, & the thriving of its folk; the very villeins hereabout live as well as franklins in most lands, & the yeomen and vavassours are clad as if they were knights of a good lord's household. forsooth their houses are both goodly and easy to enter; and well is that, whereas there lacks never good meat and drink on the board therein. And moreover their women are for ever seeking whatso is fair and goodly, whatso is far-fetched & dear-bought, whereof we chapmen also thrive, as thou mayst well deem. Ah! it is a goodly land now!

**T**HE others nodded and smiled. But Birdalone spake, hardening her heart thereto for very need:

**L**IKE then there is a change of days here, for when I last knew of the land there was little peace therein. And that will not be

so long ago, said a townsman, smiling, for I doubt we should see no grey hair in thine head if thy sallet were off it.

Birdalone reddened: It will be some five years ago, said she.

Yea, yea, said the townsman, we were beginning to end the unpeace then, & it was the darkest hour before the dawn; for five years ago we and the good knights of the Castle of the Quest were lying before the walls of the Red Hold. forsooth we cleared out that den of devils then & there.

What betid unto it after ye won it? said Birdalone, & she trembled withal.

Said the townsman: Heard ye never of the Black Squire, a very valiant knight, since thou sayest that thou hast known this country-side?

She bowed a yeasay, for this time she found it hard to speak.

**W**ELL, said the townsman, we held garrison in the Red Hold for some three months, and there after we craved of him to come and be our captain therein; for, even after the Hold was won, there was yet a sort of runagates that haunted the country-side, men who had no craft save lifting and slaying. And forsooth we knew this Lord Arthur for the keenest & deftest of men at arms; so he year



said our asking, and did all he might herein, & forsooth that was all there was to do; for he was ever in the saddle, and at the work. forsooth he was not a merry man, save when he was at his busiest; & little he spake in hall or chamber, else had he been better beloved. But at least by no man better might the land have been served.

**T**HERE was silence a little, & Birdalone waxed deadly pale; then she strove with herself and said: Thou sayest he was & he was; is he dead then? Said the townsman: Not to our knowledge. When he had brought the land into good peace, which is some three years and a half ago, he went his ways from the Red Hold all alone, and we saw him no more. But some folk deem that he hath entered into religion.

**B**IRDALONE'S heart sickened, & she thought to herself that now all was to begin again; yet she felt that the worst was over since he was not dead, and she was able to think what she should do. So she said: May happen he hath gone back to the Castle of the Quest? Nay, nay, said the townsman, that may not be; for waste is that house now; there is none dwelleth there, save, it may be, now and


again a wandering carle or carline abideth there a day or two.

Said Birdalone: How hath that befallen? or where is gone Sir Hugh, the Green Knight?

Said the townsman: We knew the Green Knight well; frank and free and joyous was he; all men loved him; and his lady and speech friend, none ever saw a lovelier, and as kind as was he. But we might not keep them with us; they are gone into their own country. Sir Hugh left the Castle of the Quest some three months after the Black Squire came to us for captain, and he gave over the castle to Sir Geoffrey of Lea, an old & wise man of war. But not many months thereafter we heard that he also had departed, leaving it ungarnished of men; & we deem that the cause thereof is that something uncouth is seen & heard therein, which folk may not endure. Is it not so, my masters?

**T**HEY all ye said that, and the talk went on to other matters. As for Birdalone, though her hope to come amongst friends was so utterly overthrown, yet she saw not what to do save to go her ways to the Castle of the Quest, and see if perchance she might find any tidings there. And she said to herself, that if the worst came to the worst, she would





herself dwell there as an hermit of love; or, maybe, to face those uncouth things and see if any tidings might be compelled out of them.

**Chapter VIII.** Birdalone cometh to the Castle of the Quest, heareth the Tale thereof from Leonard, & departeth thence by the Sending Boat.

**S**HE arose betimes on the morrow, & was out of Greenford so soon as the gates were open, and at first made all speed that she might toward the Castle of the Quest; & nothing hindered her, for the land was verily in good peace, and she might have come there if she would before sunset, for all whom she met furthered her. But as the day waned her courage waned with it, so that at last she stayed some six miles short of the house, and craved shelter at a yeoman's stead there, which was granted her with all kindness; and they made much of her, & she told them her vow of the sallet, and they deemed nought save that she was a young man.

**S**HE departed early in the morning with their Godspeed, and while the day was yet young came into the meadows before the castle, & saw the towers thereof rising

up before her: then she checked her horse, and rode on no faster than a foot's pace; yet as slow as she might ride, needs must she get to the gate while the day was yet young.

**S**O came Birdalone by that bower wherein she had slept that first night she came to the castle; & she rode up to look on it; and as she sat there gazing, came a man out from it clad as a man of religion; & her heart beat quick, and she was like to fall from her horse, for there came into her mind what the townsman had said, that the Black Squire had gone into religion. But the hermit came towards her with a cup of water in his hand, and he cast his hood aback from him, and she saw at once that it was Leonard the priest, and though it was not the friend whom she sought, yet was she glad that it was a friend; but he came and stood by her, and said: Hail, wayfarer! wilt thou drink of our well and rest thee a while? So she took the cup & drank of the water, looking kindly on him, while he wondered at the beauty of her hand, & misdoubted him. Then she gave him back the cup & lighted down off her horse, & took the sallet from her head, and spake: I may not pass by a friend without a word; think if

**Part VI. The Days of Absence**



thou hast not seen me before?

**W**HEN he knew her, and might not refrain him, but cast his arms about her & kissed her, weeping; and she said: It is sweet to me to find a friend after what I have been told of yonder house. Yea, said he, & art thou going up thither? Certes, said she, and why not? Said he: They are gone, and all gone! How and whither? said she. But I must full certainly go thither at once; I will go afoot with thee; do thou tether my horse till thou comest back.

**H**E said: But wilt not thou come back? I know not, she said; I know nought save that I would go thither; let it be enough that I suffer thee to go with me, and on the way thou shalt tell me what thou canst of the tale.

**W**HEN went Leonard and tethered the horse, and they went together afoot to the gate; & Birdalone told what she had heard of Arthur and Hugh; and Leonard said: This is true, and there is not much else to be said. When the Black Squire came back from the leaguer of the Red Hold, & had heard before of thy departure, he was heavy of mood and few spoken, & wandered about as one who might find no rest; yet was he not stern

with Atra, who for her part was no less heavy hearted: soothly a sad company we were, and it was somewhat better when my lord Arthur went his ways from us; and indeed eager he was to be gone; and it could be seen of him that he was fain of the toil and peril which they of Greenford offered him. Then in some four months spake my lord Hugh that he also would be gone to a place where were both a land & folk that would look friendly on him; so he went with my lady Viridis and my lady Aurea, and they had Atra also with them; and me also they would have had, but my heart failed me to leave the place where I had been so glad & so sorry with thee; death had been better; wherefore in yonder bower as in an hermitage I serve God and abide my time. But though I wot nought of where is gone the Black Squire, I know whereto those four are gone, & it is but a seven days' ride hence, & the land is goodly & peaceable, & if they be not dead, most like they be there yet. How sayest thou then, thou dearest and kindest, wilt thou thither to them? for if so, I may well lead thee thither.

**B**IRDALONE shook her head. Nay, she said, I deem that I am drawn elsewhither, but soon I shall



tell thee. Lo now the gate. But ere we enter, tell me of Sir Geofrey of Lea, & why it was that they might not abide the uncouth things, or if there were any such. Spake Leonard: Things uncouth there were, & I was called upon to lay them, & I did as biddeth Holy Church in all wise, but prevailed not against them, & still were they seen and heard, till folk might endure it no longer.

**A**ND what like were these things? said Birdalone, & are they yet seen & heard?

Said Leonard: Strange it is, but last night I went into the great hall where they most ly betid, & laid me down there, as whiles I do, for I fear them not, and would see if they yet appear; but all night came nothing at all. As to the likeness of them. Then he stopped, but said presently: Hard it is to tell thee of them, but needs must I. There be two of these things; and one is an image of a tall woman of middle age, red-haired, white-skinned, & meagre, and whiles she has a twiggen rod in her hand, and whiles a naked short sword, and whiles nought at all. But the voice of her is cursing and blaspheming and ill-saying.

**S**AID Birdalone: This is then a fetch of my witch-mistress of whom I told

thee erst, and the image of her; what is the other? Said Leonard: I were fain not to tell thee. Yet needs must thou, said Birdalone. Dear lady, said Leonard, the other is an image of thee, and even most like unto thee; but whiles clad in a scanty grey coat and bare-foot, and whiles clad in a fair green gown goodly broidered, and broidered shoon; & whiles all mother-naked.

**A**ND what voice cometh from mine image? said Birdalone, smiling, yet somewhat pale withal.

Said Leonard: One while a voice of sweet singing, as of a bird in the brake, and that is when thou art clad; and again, when thou art naked, a voice of shrieking and wailing, as of one enduring torments.

**S**PAKE Birdalone: And when did these wonders begin? Said he: Not till after Sir Hugh and thy she-friends were gone hence.

**P**ONDERED Birdalone a little; then she said: I see herein the malice of my witch-mistress; she would not send these fetches while Hugh was here, lest he should turn to seeking me with all his might. But when they departed, she would have the castle waste, and then she sent them, wotting that there



by she would rid her of Sir Geoffrey of Lea; while, on the other hand, I was nought so much unto him that he would spend all his life seeking me. But now I deem I know so much of her that I may bid thee to look on her as dead if these fetches come not again within a little while. Then mayst thou send & do Sir Geoffrey to wit thereof, and belike he will come back again; & fain were I thereof, for it will be merrier if the Castle of the Quest be dwelt in once more.

**N**EH, verily, said Leonard; but far merrier yet wert thou to dwell there. Nay, she said, but now I see that it is not fated for me. Let us go in, for I would get to what I would do.

**S**O therewith they passed under the shadow of the archway, and Birdalone stayed not but went straightway into the hall, and through it; and the priest, who lagged somewhat behind her speedy feet, cried out unto her: Whither wilt thou? what chamber wilt thou visit first? But she stayed not, and spake to him over her shoulder as she went: follow me if thou wilt; I have but one place only to come to ere I leave the Castle of the Quest, save I must needs turn back on my footsteps.

**W**HEN Leonard came up with her, and she went her ways out of the hall, and out on to the water/swale of the castle, & so to the little haven of the water/gate. There Birdalone looked about her eagerly; then she turned to Leonard & pointed with her finger and said: Lo thou! there yet lieth my ferry of old time, the Sending Boat; now wot I wherefore I was drawn hither. And her eyes glittered and her body quivered as she spake.

**N**EH forsooth, said Leonard, there it lieth; who of all folk in the castle had durst to touch it? But what hath it to do with thee, O kindest lady?

**F**RIEND, she said, if this day weareth, & I am yet within these walls, then meseemeth there must I abide forevermore; & there perchance shall I meet that seeming of myself, maybe for this night, maybe for ever, till I die here in this castle void of all that I love, and I overyoung for it, friend. And I know now that there is hope within me; for I bethink me of a dear friend over yonder water of whom I have never told any, nor will tell thee now, save this, that she is the wisdom of my life. Wherefore now I will try this ferry & wot if the wight thereof will



yet obey the voice of the speaker of the spell, who has shed of her blood to pay therefor. Put not forth a hand therefore nor speak a word to let me, but take this farewell of me, with my pity & such love as I may give thee, and let me go, and think kindly of me.

**W**HEN she went up to him, and laid her hands upon his shoulders, & kissed him, and turned about without more ado and stepped into the boat; then she sat down and stripped her arm of its sleeve, and drew forth a knife and let blood of her arm, & then arose and smeared stem and stern therewith, and then sat down with her face to the stern and sang:

The red raven/wine now  
Hast thou drunk, stern & bow;  
Wake then and awake,  
And the Northward way take:  
The way of the Wenders  
forth over the flood,  
for the will of the Senders  
is blent with the blood.

**W**HEN she abode a little, while Leonard stood staring on her speechless with grief & blinded with his bitter tears, till the boat began to move under her, & presently glided out of the little haven into the wide lake; then she turned her face back unto

him and waved her hand, & he knelt down and blessed her, weeping. And so she vanished away from before him.

**Chapter IX. Birdalone findeth the Isle of Nothing greatly bettered, and is kindly entreated there.**

**W**HEN it was scarce noon when she departed, and the dark night came upon her in the midst of the water; and she fell asleep in the boat ere the night had grown very old, and woke up in the morning, not exceeding early, maybe about six o'clock; then she looked ahead and thought presently to see the ill-favoured blotch of the Isle of Nothing on the bosom of the blue waters, whereas it was a fair and cloudless morning of latter May. Sure enough she saw land ahead, and it lay low down on the water, but she deemed from the first that it was green of hue, and as she neared it she saw that it was verily as green as emerald. Thereat she was a little troubled, because she thought that mayhappen the Sending Boat had gone astray, & that if the wight thereof were not wending the old road, maybe he was not making for the old haven. for now indeed she told herself right

**Part VI. The Days of Absence**



out that her will was to go back again to the House under the Wood, and see what might be-tide there, and if she and the wood-mother together might not overcome the witch.

**B**UT whatever might hap-pen nought could she do but sit in her place & wend as the Sending Boat would; & in an hour's space she was right under the lee of the land, & she saw that it was shapen even as the Isle of Nothing had been aforetime. But this made her wonder, that now the grass grew thick down to the lip of the water, & all about from the water up were many little slim trees, and some of them with the May-tide blossom yet on them, as though it were a fair and great orchard that she was nearing; & moreover, beyond all that she saw the thatched roofs of houses rising up.

**P**RESENTLY then the Sending Boat had brought her to the land, & she stepped ashore, but was wary, and gat her bow bent and set an arrow thereto ere she began to go up from the water. Yet she thought within herself, it will be nought ill if I be come amongst folk, so long as they be peaceful, or else how might I live the journey out to all the isles and so home to the House under the Wood?

**S**HE turned her face to where she had seen those roofs, which now she saw no longer because of the thick leaves of the little trees, and so went along a narrow path, which grew to be more & more closely beset with trees, & were now no longer apple and pear and quince and medlar, but a young-grown thicket of wood-land trees, as oak & hornbeam and beech and holly.

**A**T LAST as she went she heard voices before her, so she stole warily to the edge of the copse, finger on shaft; and presently could see clear of the saplings & out on to a wide space of greensward, beyond which was a homestead of many houses and bowers, like unto that of a good yeoman in peaceful lands, save that the main building was longer, though it were low. But amidst the said greensward was a goodly flock of sheep that had been but of late washed for the shearing, & along with the sheep four folk, two carles and two queans, all of them in their first youth, not one by seeming of over a score and two of summers. These folk were clad but simply, man and woman, in short coats of white woollen (but the women's coats a little longer than the men's), without shoon or hosen; they had



garlands of green leaves on their heads, and were wholly unarmed, save that one of the men bore an ashen wand in his hand. As for their bodies, they were goodly of fashion, tanned indeed by the sun's burning, but all sweet of flesh were they, shapely and trim, clean-made, and light and slim.

**B**IRDALONE'S heart yearned toward them, & she stepped straightway from out of the cover of the coppice, & the sun flamed from her sallet and glittered in the rings of her hauberk, so that the folk might not fail to see her; the sheep fled bundling from her past their keepers, who stood firm, but seemed somewhat scared, & moved not toward Birdalone. She gave them the sele of the day & stood still herself; but the man with the ash-wand said: Hail, thou man; but we would have thee come no nearer a while, though thy voice be sweet: for we know what things they be which thou bearest, & that thou art a warrior. Wilt thou hurt us?

**B**IRDALONE laughed as sweetly as the blackbird sings, and she did off her sallet and shook the plenteous hair down over her, & then drew forth her sword and dagger & cast them to earth, and laid her bow and quiver of arrows upon

them, and said: Now will I come to you, or ye shall come to me, whereas I am unweaponed, and no warrior, but a woman, and ye are four to one, and two of you carles; wherefore now ye may bind me or slay me if you will; but in any case I pray you first to give me a mouthful of meat.

**W**HEN she had done her speech, she went up to the fairest of the women & kissed her; but the two carles made no more ado but came to Birdalone and kissed her one after other, and that as men who needed nought to compel them therein, and each thereafter took a hand of her and held it and caressed it. But the other woman had run into the house as soon as Birdalone spoke, & came back again with a treen bowl full of milk and a little loaf, not white but brown; and there blundered about her legs as she came a little lad of some three winters old, naked and brown, who was shy of the gleaming new-comer, & hid him behind the woman one while, & the other while came forth to see the new thing. But the woman said: Dear woman, here is for thee some of the ewes' milk, and a bite of bread, and a little deal of cheese; the said milk is yet warm, so that it is not yet clotted; but if thou wilt come with us thou mayest speedily



drink cows' milk, & we be now at point to go milk them.

**B**IRDALONE thanked her with a heart full of content, and was not ill-pleased to get her hands free from the two carles; so she sat down & ate her breakfast while they talked with her, and told her of diverse work of theirs; as to how their trees were waxing, and new tillage they had done the past spring, & how it befell to the kine & the goats; of their children also they spake, & how there were already four thereof, and one of the women, the meat-bringer, already quickened with child once more. So that ere we die, quoth the carle who was speaking, we look to see many grandchildren, & shall have some stout carles & queans here. And by that time will some of the trees be well grown, so that we may fell timber and make us some keel that will wend the lake, & help us at fishing; or we may go to other lands; or whiles folk may come to us, even as thou hast, thou dear-handed, sweet-voiced woman. But wilt thou abide here ever?

**N**EA, said the other, but that is looking forward a long while, that building of ships. What is nearer & well to think of is, that these apple and pear trees be so well


fruited, small as they be, that this harvest we shall be able to make us cider and perry; yea, and no little deal thereof. But art thou minded to abide with us ever? That were dear to us; and belike thou wouldest bear us children, thou also.

**T**HEN SPAKE the meat-fetching woman, & laughed withal: Nay, thou also lookest aloof a pretty deal; whereas what is now to do is to go milk the kine, & to take this guest with us, so that she may drink somewhat better than ewes' milk though the cider be not ready to hand. But tell me, our dear guest, art thou verily going to abide with us a long while? that were sweet to us, & we will do all we may to pleasure thee.

**N**AY, said Birdalone, it will no better be but that I depart on the morrow; and all thanks do I give you for your kindness.

**T**HE woman kissed her, and she arose, and all they went together to the milking of the kine some half mile inland; and they passed through much of orchard, & some deal of tillage, wherein the wheat was already growing high; and so came they to a wide meadow through which ran a little stream, and therein was a goodly herd of kine. So





they fell to the milking, & made Birdalone drink of the sweet cows' milk, & then went and lay down under the shade of the little young trees, & talked & were merry together. But the men were both of them somewhat willing at first to kiss Birdalone and toy with her, but when she let them know that she desired it not they refrained them without grudging.

**A**LL this while of their talk they asked Birdalone nought of whence and whither, & she would not ask them, lest it might stir their asking, & then she would have to tell them some deal of her story; & telling it was now become unto her somewhat weary work.

**I**N a while they arose all, and the men and one woman went their ways to deal with the acreland, but the meat-fetcher went back with Birdalone into the house; & she showed her all that was therein, which was for the more part, forsooth, the four babes afore said. The others came back in the eventide, bearing with them foison of blue harebells, and telling joyously how they had found them anigh the coppice edge in such a place: & thereafter they were merry, & sang and talked the evening away, & showed Birdalone at last to a

fair little chamber wherein was a bed of dry grass, where she lay down & slept in all content.

**Chapter X. Of Birdalone's flitting from the Isle of Nothing.**

**I**N THE morrow Birdalone arose betimes, & would not tarry despite all the kindness of that folk and the change which had come over the Isle of Nothing; so the friends saw her down to the boat all together, & bore down with them a deal of bread and cheese and late apples of the last year, for her provision on the road, & a pail of milk withal; and men and women they kissed her at departure, and the meat-fetcher said: If by any means thou mayst find a keel which will carry thee hither, at some time, I would thou wouldst come; for even if thou be old, and we passed away, yet here shall be our children or our grandchildren to welcome thee; and we will tell them the tale of thee that they remember it and long for thee.

**W**HEN Birdalone kissed her again, & made much of her, and so stepped into the boat, and fell to her sacrifice to the wight thereof; and those others stared at her & wondered, & spake nought

**Part VI. The Days of Absence**





Part VI. The  
Days of Absence

unto her till she was gone gliding over the face of the waters; but as they walked back to the house, they spake amongst themselves that this must be some goddess (for of Holy Church they knew nought) who had come to visit them in her loveliness; and in after times, when this folk waxed a many, and tilled all the isle and made ships & spread to other lands and became great, they yet had a memory of Birdalone as their own very lady & goddess, who had come from the fertile and wise lands to bless them, when first they began to engender on that isle, and had broken bread with them, & slept under their roof, & then departed in a wonderful fashion, as might be looked for of a goddess.

**B**UT as for Birdalone, she came not back ever, nor saw that folk again, and now she sped over the water toward the Isle of Kings.

✠ Chapter XI. Coming to the Isle of Kings Birdalone findeth there a score & two of fair Damsels who would fain have her company. ✠ ✠

**B**IRDALONE came ashore at the said isle at the day/dawn, and saw but little change in the isle when it grew light, and still

the castle stood looking down awfully on to the meadows. But when she had set foot on the land, she handled her bow lest the worst might befall, and looked about her, deeming that this time she would not go her ways to the dread show that was arrayed in the castle, if forsooth those dead folk yet abode there.

**S**O now as she looked across the meadow, she saw one with light and fluttering raiment come forth from the trees, & look toward her whereas she stood flashing & gleaming in the sun like an image of the God of Love turned warrior. Now Birdalone deemed for sure that this was a woman; she saw her come a little nigher to her, and then stand looking at her under the sharp of her hand; then she turned about and ran back to the brake whence she came; & presently Birdalone heard the sound of voices coming thence, and in a little while thereafter came forth from the said brake a rout of women (one score and two as they were told thereafter) & walked over the meadow straight unto her. She stood where she was, so as to be nigh unto her ferry in case they willed her unpeace; for though they were weaponless by seeming, they were a many.





**W**HEN they were come near they stood about her in a half ring, whispering & laughing each to each. Birdalone saw that they were all young, & that none of them might be called ungoodly, and some were full fair. They were bright and fine of array. Most bore gold and gems on fingers & neck & arms; they were clad in light, or it may be said wanton raiment of diverse colours, which had only this of their fashion in common, that they none of them hid over much of their bare bodies; for either the silk slipped from the shoulder of her, or danced away from her flank; and she whose feet were shod, spared not to show knee and some deal of thigh; and she whose gown reached unsheared from neck to heel, wore it of a web so thin and fine that it hid but little betwixt heel and neck.

**B**IRDALONE stood gazing on them and wondering, and she had a mind to think that they were some shows sent by her old mistress the witch for her undoing, and she loosened her sword in its sheath and nocked an arrow.

**B**UT then ran forward two of the damsels & knelt before her, & each took an hand of her, and fell to kissing it, and she felt their

hands that they were firm and their lips that they were soft and warm, & they were doubtless alive and real. Then spake one of them and said: Hail our lord! How can words say how we rejoice in thy coming this happy morn. Now do all we give ourselves to thee as thy slaves to do as thou wilt with. Yet we pray thee be merciful to us and our longings.

**T**HERewith ALL the sort of them knelt down on the grass before Birdalone and joined their hands as praying to her. And Birdalone was full ill at ease, and wotted not where she was. But she said: Hail! and good days and fulfilment of wishes unto you, fair damsels! But tell me, is this the Isle of Kings, as I deemed; for strange it is for me to see ye womenfolk here?

**S**HID she who had spoken afore: Yea verily this is the Isle of Kings; but long ago are the kings dead, & yet they sit dead in the great hall of the castle yonder, as thou mayst see if thou, who art a man and a valiant warrior, durst follow up yon mountain path thereto; but we, weak women and little hearted, durst not go anigh it; and we tremble when whiles a nights cometh down thence the sound of clashing swords & clattering



shields, and the cries of men in battle. But, praise be to the God of Love, nought cometh down from thence unto us. Therefore do we live peaceful lives & pleasant here, lacking nought but thee, lord; and lo now thou hast come unto us, and we are happy in our inmost hearts.

**N**OW was Birdalone perplexed & knew not what to do; but at last she said: Gentle maidens, I pray you pardon me, but I must depart straightway; for I have an errand, and life or death lieth on it. In all else than my abiding here may ye have your will.

**T**HEREWITH did she move a little way toward her ferry; but forthwith all they brake out weeping & wailing and lamenting, and some of them came up to Birdalone and cast themselves down before her, and clasped her knees, and took hold of her skirts, and besought her piteously to abide with them. But she put them aside as well as she might, & stepped aboard the Sending Boat, and stood amidst it waiting on their departure; but they went not, & stood along on the lip of the land crying out & beseeching with much clamour.

**T**HEN Birdalone waxed somewhat wrath at their noise and tumult, & she

drew forth her knife and bared her arm and let blood from it. But when they saw the whiteness & roundness of it, & how fine and sleek it was, straightway they changed their tune, and cried out: A woman, a woman, a fool of a woman! & they laughed in scorn and mockery. And the speaker of them said: Now there is but one thing for thee to do, and that is to come forth from thy boat and strip off thy stolen raiment, and we shall make thee as fine as ourselves, & thou shalt come with us, and with us abide the coming of our lord. Nay, thou art so fair and lovely, that thou shalt be the Lady and Queen of us, and we will do after thy commands, and thou mayst chastise us if we fail therein. But now if thou wilt not come forth of the boat uncompelled, we shall pluck thee forth of it.

**A**ND therewith she set her foot on the gunwale of the boat, & two or three others did the like. But now had Birdalone her sword naked in her hand, and she waxed as red as blood, & cried out: forbear I bid you! Yea verily I am a woman; but I will not take this offer either, whereas I have an errand, as I told you. And so stern it is, that if ye now let my departure I will not spare to smite with this sword who-



so first cometh aboard my ferry, and though I be not a man, yet shall ye find that in this matter I shall be little worse, whereas I am armed and ye be naked.

**W**HEN they drew back & stood gibing & jeering at her; but she heeded it no whit, but reddened stem & stern of the Sending Boat, and sang her spell, and forth glided the ferry, while the damsels stood and stared astonished. As for Birdalone, as she sped on her way she might not refrain her laughter. Thus she wended the wet highway.

**Chapter XII. Birdalone cometh again to the Isle of Queens, and findeth a Perilous Adventure therein**

**I**T was not yet day, break when Birdalone came ashore again, & the moon was down, and it was dark; wherefore she durst not go up on the land, but lay down in the ferry & fell asleep there. When she woke again it was broad daylight, the sun was up, and a little ripple was running over the face of the water. She stepped ashore straightway, and looked up the land and to the right hand and the left, & saw at once that it was indeed the Isle of Queens, and the house

stood trim and lovely as of old time; then she longed somewhat to tread the green meadow a little, for yet young was the day, and she saw nought stirring save the throstle & a few small beasts. However, she said to herself that she would go nowhere nigh to the goodly house wherein abode those images of death. Yet her body longed so sore for the spring, tide freshness of the grass, & was so bewoed of the flowery scent thereof, that though she durst not go unarmed, she did off her foot-gear & went stealing softly barefoot and with naked legs over the embroidered greensward, saying aloud to herself: If run for the ferry I needs must, lighter shall I run so dight.

**N**ONETHELESS, she had gone but a little way ere a terror took hold of her, though she saw no child of Adam anigh, and she turned and ran back swiftly to her old place and sat down under a twisted oak-tree hard by the Sending Boat, and abode there panting and quaking, & scarce daring to look up from the grass for a while. Then her heart came back to her, and she laughed, and said to herself: I am a fool, for I need fear nought on this Isle of Queens save women like myself.

**Part VI. The Days of Absence**



**Y**ET she sat there a lit-  
tle while longer without  
stirring; then she stood  
up and looked keenly around,  
& as aforesaid, exceeding far-  
sighted she was; but still she  
saw neither man nor maid nor  
suckling child.

**W**HEN HER eyes sought  
the lips of the lake, and  
rested on a little bight  
some stone's throw ahead of  
the Sending Boat, where, a lit-  
tle back from the water, slim  
willows made a veil betwixt the  
water of the meadow; and she  
looked, and saw how pleasant a  
place it were for a one to stand  
and look on the ripple just left,  
while the water dripped from  
the clear body on to the grass.  
And her bare feet fell to tell-  
ing her clad sides of the sweet  
coolness of the water, & wait-  
ed for no naysay, but lightly  
bore her toward the willowy  
bight. And when she was there,  
she did off her sallet & ungirt  
her, and laid her sword on the  
grass, and did off her surcoat  
and hauberk, & so was a woman  
again in one white coat above  
her smock. Then she looked  
heedfully betwixt the willow-  
boughs, and saw no more than  
before, nought but a little  
whitethorn brake, now white  
indeed with blossom, some fif-  
ty yards landward from where  
she stood. So she laughed, &

did off her other raiment, & slid  
swiftly into the water, that em-  
braced her body in all its fresh  
kindness; & as for Birdalone,  
she rewarded it well for its past  
toil by sporting & swimming  
to her full.

**W**HEN SHE came forth  
from the water, and  
clad herself in no great  
haste, and did on her hauberk  
and sallet and sword, and so  
went back to her place, and sat  
down and began to do on her  
foot-gear.

**B**UT as she looked up from  
her work a moment, lo!  
a tall man coming toward  
her, and just about the willows  
whereby she had bathed. Her  
heart beat quick and her face  
changed, yet she hastened, &  
was shod & stood up in knight-  
ly array by then he stayed his  
steps some five paces from her,  
& gave her the sele of the day  
in courteous wise; & she strove  
to think that he had not seen  
her, or at least noted her o-  
therwise dight; yet her heart  
misgave her.

**T**HE was a grizzled-haired  
man of over fifty sum-  
mers by seeming, but  
goodly enough and well knit;  
he was clad in a green coat more  
than a little worn, but made  
after the fashion of knight-  
hood; he had nought on his  
head but an oak-chaplet, and



no weapons but a short sword by his side and a stout staff in his hand.

**S**HE gave back his greeting in a quavering voice; and he said: Welcome again, young man. Art thou come to dwell with us? Truly thou art trim now, but ere some few months thine attire will be not so much fairer than ours, and thine hauberk will be rusted, for here be no joyous tiltings nor deeds of arms, & no kind ladies to give the award of honour, so that if we fight amongst ourselves it will be because we have fallen out, and spitefully. Yet (& he laughed, mockingly, as she thought) thou mayst bring us luck, and draw some fair damsels unto us, for that is what we await in this isle, which is barren of their fair bodies, despite of its deceitful name.

**T**HEREAT Birdalone reddened, deeming that he divined her womanhood, but she enforced her to speak hardily, and as manly as she might, and said: Yea, fair sir, & if I be the God of Love, as thou deemest, & not merely a poor squire (Louis Delahaye, at thy service), how many damsels shall I send thee if there must needs be one to each man of you? Quoth he: Thou must make up the tale to a score or

more, or some of us must lack. Sooth to say, at this time thou needest not haste overmuch for all the tale, whereas there is but one other of the company near at hand, a mere foolish young man; the others are gone to the leeward side of the isle, to fetch us venison & fish, both of which are more plenty there than here; wherefore are we two somewhat lonesome in this stead, all the more as we be overnigh to the sorcery in the great house, which we durst not enter; for though nought cometh out thence down unto us, yet hear we a night/tides, first songs, and then cries and shrieking, come out therefrom.

**T**HEN HE STAYED his speech, and drew a little nigher to Birdalone, and then grinned, & said: forsooth we can spare him, we twain. And he looked on her hard, and the colour came into her cheeks, and she laughed uneasily, as a dainty lady when she heareth some unmeet tale.

**B**UT again the old carle drew nigher to her, and said: Thou seemest to have a good bow and store of arrows; if thou wouldst lend them to me for a little, & come with me into the wood hard by, I might shoot thee some venison with little toil to thee; whereas, forsooth, thou look

Part VI. The  
Days of Ab-  
sence



est scarce like one who is meet  
for overmuch toil. Again she  
reddened, and spake nought  
this time; & he said: Deem not  
there be no deer this end of the  
isle because I said that the oth-  
ers were gone to fetch home ver-  
nison; only the deer be tamer  
there and more, and we have  
but evil shooting gear, where  
as thou art well found therein.  
Wilt thou not come? we shall  
have merry feast after the hunt.

**NOW** HAD Birdalone  
come to her wits again,  
and she answered like  
a merry youth, with a flavour of  
mockery in her speech: fair sir,  
thou shalt not deem that I need  
much help in slaying the dun  
deer; for I do thee to wit that  
I shoot not ill in the bow; nei-  
ther am I heavy-footed. But I  
will not hunt in your park to-  
day, for I have an errand which  
calleth me away, so that I shall  
depart hence presently. Be-  
sides, wise elder, there is thine  
errand to see to; and if I be the  
God of Love, as thou sayest,  
I must not keep thee & thy val-  
iant fellows languishing mate-  
less; so with thy leave I will  
now depart, that I may send  
you a score of fair damsels for  
your company.

**AND** she turned about  
& made a step toward  
her boat; but the carle  
drew nearer, laughing; and he

said: Truly sayest thou that  
thou art not heavy-footed, for  
never saw I feet lighter or fair-  
er than glided over the mea-  
dow e'en now; nor a fairer body  
than came like rosy-tinted pearl  
fresh out of the water while I lay  
hidden in yonder thorn/brake  
that while. Wherefore trouble  
not thyself to bring any more  
damsels than thyself, fairest  
Goddess of Love, for thou art  
enough for me.

**AND** THEREWITH he  
ran forward, & stretch-  
ed out a hand to her; but  
in that nick of time had she her  
sword naked in her hand, & the  
carle drew back before the glit-  
ter thereof, & cried out: Ho, ho!  
is it to be battle, my mistress?  
Deemest thou that thou wilt  
slay me as lightly as the dun  
deer, & thou with thy bow un-  
strung at thy back? Now shall  
I show thee a trick of fence; but  
fear not that I shall hurt thee  
to spoil thee.

**H**E advanced on her with  
his staff aloft, and her  
heart failed her, and she  
quaked, & lightly he beat down  
her guard & did the sword out  
of her hand; and again he turn-  
ed on her to take her, but she  
sprang aside & ran from him,  
but ran landward perforce, as  
he was betwixt her & the boat;  
and he followed heavily, & had  
nought to do in the race.



**B**UT she had not gone a two/score yards ere she heard a great shout, and another man came running over the meadow; a slim young man was this, and worse of attire than the old carle, for so tattered was his raiment that he was half naked; but he was goodly of fashion, fresh/coloured and black/haired. Birdalone stayed her feet when she saw him, for though she doubted not to outrun him, yet whether should she run, since her ferry was behind her?

**S**O the young man came up to her, and the old carle met him all panting, and the young man said: How now, Antony! what battle is this? & wherefore art thou chasing this fair knight? And thou, fair sir, why fleest thou this grey dastard?

**S**AID Antony: Thou art but a young fool, Otter, this is no man, but a woman, and I have taken her, and she is mine.

**W**ELL, said Otter, I say she is as much mine as thine; nay, more, if she will give herself unto me. But if she will not, she shall go whither she will in thy despite. Or art thou a woman?

**Y**EA, yea, said Birdalone; & I pray thee, by thy mother's head, suffer me to

depart; for heavy and full of need is the errand that I am about.

**G**O thou shalt then, said Otter; lead back to thy place, & I will walk with thee. So did they: and Birdalone went beside the young man quaking; but he put out no hand unto her; & sooth to say she deemed that she had seldom seen so fair a young man, but it were Arthur or Hugh.

**N**OW he, as Antony, was girt with a short sword, but he let it be in its sheath; and as they went, Antony drew his blade again, and hove it up to smite Otter, but as it befell Birdalone saw him, and turned round sharp upon him and gat hold of his wrist, and therewith Otter turned also, and caught the old carle by the nape as he turned away, & put a foot before his & shoved mightily, so that he went noseling to the earth.

**T**HEN turned Otter about again, laughing, & he said to Birdalone: By Saint Giles! thou art well/nigh too valiant for a woman, & I would that we two might be together; and then between us we might achieve the adventure of the dead ladies up yonder. She hung her head, and said: fair sir, it may not anywise be; yet I thank thee, I thank thee.



**S**O came they to the water-side and the Sending Boat, & Birdalone stayed her feet there, and the young man said: What is this keel, that seemeth unto me as if it were a ferry for malefactors wending to a death of torment, so grey and bleared and water-logged & sun-bleached as it is, and smeared over with stains of I know not what?

**S**HID Birdalone: Such as it is, it is my ferry over the water to where I would be. **S**trange! said Otter; to my mind it is like to our fortunes on this isle, we who were once knights & merry squires and are now as gangrel men, & of ill conditions, thinking of nought save our first desires, even those which we share with the wolf and the kite.

**S**HE said: But art thou of evil conditions, thou who hast just delivered me from trouble? **H**e smiled grimly: Damsel, said he, I have not delivered thee yet from me, though I have from him. But tell me, art thou a sorceress? **N**ot a black one, said Birdalone; but I will tell thee at once that I have been bred by a witch most mighty, and some deal of lore have I learned. **A**nd therewith she told him of the Sending Boat, & how she would have to speed it on the way.

**H**E looked on her a little & then turned away, & saw her sword lying on the grass; so he went to it & picked it up and brought it to her, and said: Thou mayst yet need this keen friend. **S**o she took it and thrust it back into the scabbard, quaking somewhat because of him; so feeble and frail as she felt before him. **T**hen he said: If thou deemest thou hast somewhat to reward me for, I have a boon to ask of thee, & granting that, we shall be quits again. **Y**ea, she said faintly, and what is the boon? **H**e said: Art thou pressed to depart now, this minute? **N**ay, said Birdalone, not for an hour if there be no peril here from other men, and...and... **A**nd if I be true to thee and will let thee go? said he, laughing; hah! is that not thy word? fear not, I swear by thine eyes that thou shalt depart when so thou wilt. **N**ow then, the boon I crave is, that thou wilt sit down here beside me and tell me the tale of thy life that has been.

**S**aid she: It wearies me to think thereof; yet hast thou a right to crave somewhat of me, and this is not hard to grant.

**A**ND she sat down by him; but he said: Do this also for me, take off thine headpiece, since now that we know thee for a woman it ser-



veth theenought. So did she,  
& began her tale straightway,  
and told him all thereof, save  
as to the wood-wife, and he sat  
hearkening & watching her face;  
and when she had made an end,  
he said: Now shall I ask none  
other boon of thee, though I  
long sore for it; but best it is  
that we sunder straightway,  
else maybe I might yet be for  
hindring thee.

**T**HERewith he stood  
up, & Birdalone also, and  
he looked on her eagerly,  
and said: I am now to bid thee  
farewell, & it is most like that  
I shall never see thee again,  
wherefore I will ask thee yet to  
let one thing come from thy  
mouth; for I deem thee the  
dearest of all women I have  
ever seen. What shall I say?  
said Birdalone, smiling on him  
kindly; must thou needs put  
the word in my mouth? Thou  
hast been friendly with me  
here when need was to me of  
friendliness; wherefore I say,  
I would I might see thee again,  
and thou better bestead than  
now thou art.

**T**HE young man's face  
brightened, & he said:  
Spake I not that thou  
wert the dearest of all? This  
was even the word I would have  
put in thy mouth. But now see  
thou, one goeth on from one  
thing to another, and I must

now ask thee, is there aught  
which thou hast a mind to give  
me ere I depart, some keepsake  
which I durst not ask for?

**S**HE flushed red and said:  
I will with a good heart  
give thee my bow and ar-  
rows for a keepsake; whereas  
the old carle told me that ye be  
ill furnished of shooting-gear.

**A**ND SHE would have  
taken her bow from  
her back, but he laugh-  
ed aloud, and said: Nay, nay, I  
will not have that; for there be  
those who gird them to a sword  
& know not how to use it, but  
few will cumber their shoul-  
ders with bow and quiver who  
cannot shoot therewith; I deem  
it like that thou art a fell bow-  
man. Keep thy bow therefore,  
and if thou wilt go without any  
other gift, even so be it.

**A**ND HE MADE as if he  
would turn away; but she  
put forth both her hands  
and took his in them, and lifted  
up her face & kissed him kind-  
ly, and then turned away to her  
ferry; while Otter stood still &  
said in a merry voice: Now is it  
better than well, for thou art in  
all ways what I would have thee,  
& there is nought like unto thee.

And therewith he turned a-  
way & departed ere Birdalone  
had stepped into the Sending  
Boat, and she blushing like a  
rose the while. Then she did



due sacrifice to the wight of the  
witch/ferry, & sped on her way  
without any hindrance.

**Chapter XIII. Coming to the  
Isle of the Young and the Old,  
Birdalone findeth it peopled  
with Children**

**I**N MIDST all this  
had worn some  
hours, but yet it  
was barely noon;  
wherefore it was  
yet dark by then  
Birdalone made the Isle of the  
Young & the Old; so she step-  
ped out of the boat, & lay down  
on the grass & abode the dawn  
sleeping. And she awoke with  
the clatter of shrill voices, and  
she rose up and looked, and lo  
a multitude of children all a-  
bout her, both men and women  
children, &, as it seemed, from  
five years old upward to fifteen.  
They cried and crowed merrily  
when they saw her stand up, &  
pressed on her to see her the  
nearer & to touch her hands or  
her raiment. They were but lit-  
tle clad, & the younger ones not  
at all, but were goodly young-  
lings and merry. So great was  
the noise they raised, that loud  
were the thunder which had not  
been hushed thereby; & Bird-  
alone stood looking on them,  
smiling, & knew not what to do.  
Anon she turned to a tall thin  
lad of some fifteen winters, &  
said unto him: Wilt thou now

take me unto the house, & the  
place where dwelleth the old  
man? Quoth he: I neither  
know of an old man, nor right-  
ly what it means, the word. Am  
not I old enough for thee? I am  
the oldest of these here. But  
belike thou art hungry; where-  
fore if thou come to the place  
where we sleep a/ nights, and  
where we shelter us from the  
storm & the rain when need is, I  
will give thee to eat; for we have  
both bread and milk & cheese,  
and raisins of the sun.

**S**O he took her hand and  
led her along, and asked  
her by the way concern-  
ing her armour and weapons,  
& of the fashion of battle, and  
she told him thereof what she  
would.

**T**HUS came they to the  
place where erst had  
been the cot under the  
ruin of the great ancient house;  
but now was gone all that ruin  
& the great grey walls, though  
the cot was left; & all about it  
were low bowers built of small  
wood and thatched undeftly.  
But the lad smiled when he saw  
it, as if the sight thereof made  
him happy; & he said: All these  
have we made since I have dwelt  
here, and no other home have I  
known.

**A**ND he led her into the  
cot, & set her down to eat  
and to drink, & through



the open door she could see the children swarming, & they that were highest thrusting each other this way and that to catch a sight of her.

**N**OW she said: fair child, how gattest thou this victual if there be no older folk to help you? Said he: We dig the ground and sow it, and the wheat comes up, & we reap it in harvest, & make bread of it; and we have goats and kine, and we milk them, and turn the milk with a little blue flower, which is fair to see. And there are in this isle little hills where the grapes grow plenty; and some we eat and some we dry for store. Lo thou, such be our ways for victual. But tell me, said he, thou sayest old, and I know not the word; art thou old? She laughed: Not very, said she, yet older than thou.


**S**HEID the lad: Thou art fair & dear to look on, and thy voice is sweet; wilt thou not abide with us, & teach us what it is to be old? Nay, said she, I may not, for I have an errand which driveth me on; wherefore I must be gone within this hour.

**F**OR SOOTH, she was growing eager now to be done with her journey and come to the House under the Wood, whatever should befall her there. Moreover she

deemed it would not be restful to her to abide among all these restless children, with their ceaseless crying & yelping: if rest she might, she would rest, she deemed, in the Isle of Increase Unsought, if there were no ill things abiding there.

**T**HEREFORE now she arose, when she had sat hearkening the sound of the lad's prattle for a while, for as to the sense thereof she might not heed it overmuch. The youngling would not leave her, but led her, holding her hand, down to her ferry again; she kissed him in thanks for his meat, & he reddened thereat but said nought. All the wholerout of little ones had followed her down to the water, and now they stood, as thick as bees on a honeycomb, on the bank, to watch her departure. But if they were keen to see her doings before, how much keener were they when it came to the baring of her arm and the smearing of the Sending Boat. To be short, so keen were they, and pushed & showed each other so sturdily, that more than one or two fell into the water, and Birdalone was frightened lest they should drown; but they swam like ducks, and got on to the land when they would, which was not so very soon, for some of





them hung unto the gunwale of the boat, & hove their faces up to look over into it, and left not hold till the ferry was fairly under weigh and beginning to quicken its speed.

**S**O LEFT Birdalone the isle, & nought befell her on the way to the Isle of Increase Unsought.


*Chapter XIV. The Sending Boat disappeareth from the Isle of Increase Unsought, & Birdalone seeketh to escape thence by swimming*

**I**T was as before that Birdalone came to the shore of the isle while it was yet night; but the wizard keel was so loathsome to her, that she stepped out of it and laid her down on the land for what was left of the night; yet hard she found her bed, and neither grassy nor flowery.

**F**OR all that, she slept, for she was weary, and it was broad day & not very early when she awoke. She stood up trembling, for she foreboded evil, so near as she was to the dwelling of her old mistress; and she looked up to where in time past was the fair and wicked house, & saw that all was changed indeed; for no longer was the isle goodly with meadow and orchard and gar-

den, but was waste & bare, and nought grew on it save thin & wiry grass, already seeding even ere June was born, & here and there hard and ugly herbs, with scarce aught that might be called a flower amongst them. Trees there were yet, but the most of them stark dead, and the best dying fast. No beasts she saw, nor fowl; nothing but lizards and beetles, & now and again a dry grey adder coiled up about a sun-burned stone. But of great carrion flies, green and blue, were there a many, and whiles they buzzed about her head till she sickened with loathing of them. All this she found on her way as she went up toward the place where erst was the great perron. But when she came to the top there was no sign either of the stairs or the house, or aught that ever was builded; there was nought but the bare bent top, ungrassed, parched by wind, scorched by sun, washed by rain.

**S**HE wandered about the isle, to places where she had not been herself, but which she deemed she might have known by the telling of the Green Knight's tale, had there been no change since those days; but now was all changed, & the whole isle was a mere waste, and withal poisonous of aspect to her mind,





as if many corpses lay underneath the wretched stones of it. Nevertheless, though it seemed so evil unto Birdalone, she lingered on it, wandering about till she was to wearied, for she had no will to depart at such time as she would be like to come to her old abiding place by night and cloud; wherefore she dallied with the time, and came not back to the haven of her ferry till it was nigh sunset, & the westering sun was in her eyes when she came there; & she said to herself that this was the cause why she might not see the Sending Boat.

**S**o she cleared her eyes & looked on the thin grass awhile, and then down over the edge of the land, and still she saw not her boat. She turned pale, and a pang of anguish went to her heart; but she walked a little east, deeming that perchance she had erred as to the place of the haven on that dull and empty shore; but yet there was no boat. Then she turned back wild with terror, and sought where erst she had missed it, and found neither boat nor the world's end. And she deemed that there might be some devilish malice of the wight of the Sending Boat, to torment her with fear, & she walked along the land's edge up and down, and down

t 1

and up, further each time, and still there was no boat.

**W**HEN she stood still and strove to think, & might not, nor might she do aught, but spread abroad her hands & moaned in her agony; for now indeed she felt herself in the trap; and she said that all her past life of hope & desire and love and honour was all for nought, & that she was but born to die miserably in that foul ruin of an isle envenomed with the memories of bygone cruelty and shame.

**B**UT in a little while she came somewhat to herself, and she said: At least this hideous land shall not mock my dying anguish; I will give myself to the water and let it do with me as it will.

**T**HEREWITH she cast off her helm & hauberk first, and her weapons, & her pouch with the treasure that could buy nought for her now, and thereafter all her raiment, till she was as naked as when she first came a land there that other time. Again she moaned, and put up her hand to her bosom and felt a little gold box lying there betwixt the fragrant hills of her breasts, which hung to a thin golden thread about her neck; and a thought came into her mind, and she stooped adown and



drew from her pouch flint and fire/steel, and then opened the said golden box & drew thence the tress which Habundia the wood/wife had given to her those years ago, & all trembling she drew two hairs from it, as erst she did on the Isle of Nothing, and struck fire and kindled tinder & burnt the said hairs, and then hung the golden box with the tress therein about her neck again; and she said: O wood/mother, if only thou couldst know of me and see me, thou wouldst help me!

**A**FTER SHE sought along the bank for bread which she had taken from her store that morning, and she found it, & compelled herself to eat of it for the strengthening of her body, and then she stood and abode tidings; and by then the sun had just sunk below the rim of the lake, and the stars began to twinkle, for the night was cloudless, and exceeding fair, and very warm.

**N**O visible token came to her, but her heart grew stronger, & she seemed to see herself yet alive and in hope on the other side of the water; and she said: Who wotteth what Weird may do, or where the waters may bear me? and there is no swimmer stronger than I.

**S**O then without more ado Birdalone slipped into the water, which lay before her as calm and plain as a great sheet of glass, and fell to rowing with her arms & her legs as though she were but swimming from Green Eyot to the mainland, as so oft she had done in the other days.

**Chapter XV. Birdalone lacketh little of Drowning, but cometh latterly to the Green Eyot.**

**S**HE swam Birdalone, not as one who had a mind to drown her for the forgetting of troubles, but both strongly and wisely; and she turned over on to her back, and looked on the stars above her, & steered herself by them thitherward whereas she deemed was the land under the wood. When she had been gone from the evil isle for an hour or so, there rose a fair little wind behind her, which helped her forward, but scarce raised the water more than a little ripple.

**S**TILL she swam on, & it was some three hours ere she began to weary, & then she floated on her back and let the wind & water have its way with her; and now the night was as dark as it would be ere dawn.



**T**HUS it went for another hour, that whiles she swam on and whiles she floated; and now her heart began to fail her, and the great water was no longer unto her a wet highway, but a terrible gulf over which she hung fainting.

**N**EVERTHELESS she did not give up doing what she might: she floated supine a long while, & then, when she had gathered a little strength, turned over again & struck out, still steering her by the stars. But she had scarce made three strokes ere her arms met something hard and rough; & at first in her forlornness she deemed she had happened on some dread water monster, and for terror of it she sank down into the deep, but came up presently blinded and breathless, and spread abroad her arms, and again they came on the thing aforesaid, and this time found that it was nought alive, but the bole of a tree sitting high out of the water. So she clomb up onto it with what might she had left, and sat her down, and saw in the dim light that it was big, and that there was a fork betwixt two limbs reaching up into the air, and she thrust herself in between these two limbs & embraced one of them, so that she might scarce tum-

t 2

ble off; & a great content and happiness came over her that she had thus escaped from the death of the deep; but therewithal weariness overcame her, & she slept, whether she would or not; and the bole went on over the waters no slower than might have been looked for, whether it were by the pushing on of the south wind, or by the hand of Weird that would not have her die.


**L**ONG she slumbered, for when she awoke it was broad day and the sun was shining high in the heavens, & she cleared her eyes and looked around, & saw before her the land, but yet blue in the offing. And the tree/bole was yet speeding on towards the shore, as if it were being drawn there by some bidding of might.

**N**OW indeed grew Bird-alone happy, and she thought if any had helped her it must have been the wood/mother once again; and she said to herself that she should soon meet with that helper; nor heeded she that she was naked and unfurnished of any goods, whereas she deemed indeed that it was but to ask and have of her friend.

**F**OR a while indeed she knew not whither she was wending, and if her



Part VI. The  
Days of Absence




face were verily turned toward the land under the wood; but as the morning wore the blue distance began to grow green, and then she saw that a great wood was indeed before her, and thereafter, as it cleared yet more, she knew the land she was nearing for the meadows of the House under the Wood, and it was not long thence ere she saw clear and close Green Eyot and Rocky Eyot, though the house was yet hidden from her by the green shores of the first of those two isles.

**S**HORTLY to tell it, her tree/bole floated with her past the outer ness of Green Eyot, & came ashore in that same sandy bight where erst she was wonted to make her body ready for the water. She stepped ashore all glad to feel the firm warm sand underneath her foot/soles, & as one drunk with joy she was when the tall flowery grass of the latter May was caressing her legs as they shook the seed/dust off the bents, and smote the fragrance out of the blossoms; and she might scarce at first lift her eyes from their familiar loveliness. Glad she was indeed, but exceeding worn and weary with the long voyage, and all the longing & fear & hope which had encompassed her that while. She lifted up

her eyes but once, and saw the witch's house standing where it was wont, but no shape of man moving about it; then she turned aside to a little brake of thorn & eglantine in the meadow hard by, & laid her down on the grass in the shade thereof, and almost before her head touched the ground she fell asleep, & slept there long and peacefully.

Chapter XVI. Birdalone findeth her Witch/mistress Dead.

**I**T was some while after noon when she wakened, & the sun was shining bright & hot. Somewhat she felt the burden of fear upon her, even before she was fully come to herself, and knew not what it was that she feared; but when she called to mind that it was even the meeting with her old mistress, her flesh quaked indeed with the memory of bygone anguish, but valiantly she arose and faced the dwelling of the witch despite her naked helplessness. As she went she looked up unto it, & saw no smoke coming from the chimney, but marvelled little thereat since it was not yet cooking time and the weather hot. She drew nigher, and saw someone sitting on the bench without the door whereas the





witch was wonted; & her heart beat quick, for she saw presently that it was none other than her mistress. Moreover, near to her stood three of the milch-kine lowing uneasily and as in reproach, even as such beasts use when their udders be full and they desire to be milked.

**B**IRDALONE stayed a minute, and her legs nigh failed her for fear, and then because of the very fear she hastened on till she came within ten paces of the said witch; & sore she missed her bow and arrows, and the cutting blade of her feigned squirehood, lest the carline should arise and come raging and shrieking at her.

**T**HEN spake Birdalone in no feeble voice, and said: Dame, I am come back unto thee, as thou seest, in even such plight as I fled from thee; & I have a mind to dwell in this land: what sayest thou? The witch neither moved nor spake at her word; and the kine, who had held silence when she first came up, and had turned from her, fell to their peevish lowing again.

**B**IRDALONE drew a step nigher, and said: Dost thou hear me, dame, or art thou exceeding wroth with me, & art pondering what vengeance thou wilt take on me?

t 3

Still no answer came from the carline, and the kine kept on lowing now & again. Once more Birdalone drew nigher, and spake loudly & said: Tell me at least, is it peace between us or unpeace?

**B**UT now when she looked she saw that the eyes of the witch were open and staring, and her lips white, and her hands hard writhen; and she cried out and said: Is she dead? or will she waken presently and beat me? surely she is dead. And she put forth her hand and touched her face, and it was stone-cold; and she found that she was dead beyond any question.

**T**HEN was a great weight lifted off her heart, and she turned about & looked on the meadows and up to the trees of the wood & down to the rippling stream before her, and fair and sweet & joyous were they gotten unto her; and she looked at the kine who were drawing up towards her, and she laughed merrily, and went to the out-house hard by and took forth a milking-pail and a stool and fell to milking them one after the other, and the beasts went off down the meadow lowing in a changed voice, for joy to wit, this time. But Birdalone knelt down and drank a long draught of the



sweet warm milk, & then arose & went swiftly into the house, and saw nought changed or worsened so far as she could see. There was her own bed in the corner, and the mistress's, greater and much fairer, over against it; & the hutch by the door wherein the victual was kept: she opened it now, and found three loaves there on the shelf, and a meal tub down below, and she took a loaf & broke it & fell to eating it as she walked about the chamber. There was her bow standing in a nook beside the hutch, & the quiver of arrows hanging on the wall above it. There was the settle lying athwart from the hearth; & she smiled, & fitted her wrists to the back of the carven bear which made its elbow, whereto the witch was wont to tie them when she chastised her.

**W**HEN she went to the coffers that stood against the wall behind it, and threw up the lid of one of them, and found therein a smock or two of her own, yellowed by the lapse of time, & her old grey coat, ragged as it was when last she wore it, and now somewhat moth-eaten withal; & she drew forth both smocks and coat and laid them on the settle. Then she opened another coffer, & therein were gay and gaudy gowns & gear

of the witch's wear; but lying amongst them, as if the witch had worn them also, her green gown & shoon which her own hands had broidered. But she said: Nay, ye have been in ill company, I will wear you not, though ye be goodly, at least not till ye have been fumigated and hallowed for me.

**H**EREWITH she turned back to the settle and did on her her old smock and her ragged grey coat, and said: To day at least will these be good enough for to day's work. And she knit her brow withal, and walked with a firm step out a doors and stood a while gazing on the dead corpse of her enemy; and she thought how that here was that which once was so great a thing unto her for the shaping of her life-days, and which so oft came to her waking thoughts after she had escaped from her hands (though, as aforesaid, she seldom dreamed of her a night-time), & moreover an hour ago she yet feared it so sore that she scarce might stand for the fear of it; & now it was nought but a carven log unto her.

**B**UT she told herself that the work was to be done; so she dragged the body away thence, and across the brook, and a little way into the meadow, & then she went back



and fetched mattock & spade from the outhouse, where she knew they lay, and so fell to digging a grave for the corpse of her dead terror. But howso hard she might toil, she was not through with the work ere night began to fall on her, and she had no mind to go on with her digging by night. Wherefore she went back into the house, and lighted candles, whereof was no lack, & made her supper of the bread & the milk; & then sat pondering on her life that had been till the passion arose in her bosom, and the tears burst out, & long she wept for desire of others and pity for herself. Then she went to the bed she had been erst wont to, and laid her down and fell asleep. And her mistress walked not, nor meddled with her peace; nor did Birdalone so much as dream of her, but of her mother and Master Jacobus in the fair city of the five Crafts; and in her sleep she wept for thinking of them.

**Chapter XVII.** Birdalone layeth to earth the body of the Witch, & findeth the Sending Boat broken up.

**W**HEN morning was, Birdalone awoke, & felt a weight upon her heart, and called to mind the task

which lay before her. So she arose and clad herself, & went straight to the grave begun, & toiled hard till she had digged it out deep, and sithence she dragged the witch therein, to and heaped the earth upon her. Then she bathed her in the highest pool of the brook, and went back into the house and made her breakfast on the bread and milk, & it was then about mid/morning. Thereafter she went about the house, & saw to the baking of bread, and so out to the meadow to see to the kine and the goats, and then stored the milk for making butter and cheese, and did in all wise as if she were to dwell long in that stead; but thereafter she rested her body, whiles her thought went wide about. But she said to herself that she would not go up to the Oak of Tryst to meet the wood/mother that day, but would abide the night, in case aught befell that she should tell her.

**B**UT when the sun was getting low she roused herself & went out, and walked about the meadow, & hearkened to the birds' song, and watched the kine and the goats as they fed down the pasture; and now a soft content came over her, that all this was free unto her to hold in



peace, and to take her pleasure in, as much as one lone child of Adam might do.

**A**T last she wandered down to the sandy bight of the lake and stood gazing on Green Eyot, where the osiers and willows were grown wild & long in all these years, and she said that she would swim over to it on the morrow. But now her feet took her eastward thence toward the haven of the Sending Boat amongst the alders; for in her heart she would fain know if there were any tidings for her.

**S**o she went softly along the path by the water, where she had sped so swiftly that last time, & came at last to the creek-side, and looked down on to the water somewhat timorously. There then she saw what she deemed was the very boat itself lying as she had known it; but when she looked again she saw that it lay from stem to stern all loose staves with the water betwixt, and the thwarts and ribs all sundered and undone, so that never again might it float upon the waves. Then she said in a soft voice: Art thou dead then, as thy mistress is dead? was it not so that thou wert at the point of death, & she also, when thou failedst me at the

Isle of Increase Unsought? No voice came to her as she spake; & she said again: Must I then bury thee as I have buried thy mistress? Nay, that will I not until thou compellest me; belike in a short while little of the staves of thee shall be left now that the life is out of thee. Let thy ghost & hers foregather if ye will.

**A**S SHE spake the last word, she saw a stir about the stern which lay furthest in up the creek, and while she quaked with failing heart, lo! a big serpent, mouldy and hairy, grey and brown-flecked, came forth from under the stern & went into the water and up the bank & so into the dusk of the alder-wood. Birdalone stood awhile pale & heart-sick for fear, and when her feet felt life in them, she turned & stole away back again into the merry green mead and the low beams of the sun, pondering whether this evil creature were the fetch of the wight who drave the ferry under the blood of the sender.

**S**o she hastened back again to the house, and lit a fire on the hearth, and fell to cooking her somewhat of grout to her supper; and she watched the fire, thinking withal: Now if some poor soul be abroad, they may see



the smoke and seek hither, and I may comfort them with food and shelter and converse; or when night darkens, they may see the litten windows & come to me; wherefore shall the fire burn yet & the candles be lighted, for as warm as is the evening, even as if it were Yule tide and the snow deep without, & the wind howling in the woodland trees. And therewith she wept for longing of them that she loved.

**B**UT in a little she dried her tears, and reproached herself for her much softness; & she ate her supper when she had lighted a candle (for it was now dark), & again sat looking at the hearth, till she said: Now am I getting soft again, & who knows but my softness may tempt the ghosts to come in to me. I will give my hands somewhat to do.

**W**HEREWITH HER eye caught sight of the rents and rags of her old grey gown, and she smiled somewhat ruefully as she called to mind her gallant knight's array, which lay now on the shore of the evil and ruined isle; and her goodly attire of the days of the five Crafts; & the rich raiment wherein her friends of the Castle of the Quest had clad her. Then she arose and

sought needle and thread and some remnants of green cloth, and did off the ragged coat and fell to patching and mending it, and so sat at her work in smock, sewing till the night was old and she was weary and sleep overcame her, & she lay down in her bed & slept dreamlessly till the sun was high next morning.

**Chapter XVIII. The Woodmother cometh to Birdalone & heareth her Story.**

**N**OW Birdalone arose & bathed her & broke her fast, & then went about her work with the beasts and the dairy; but all that time seemed long to her till she had bow in hand & quiver on back, and was wending her way to the Oak of Tryst; and swift were her feet, & her heart beat quick with hope of pleasure.

**F**OR SOOTH no long tarrying had she, for scarce had she set her down beneath the oak, ere the woodmother came forth from the thicket even as the first time when Birdalone saw her, and presently she had her arms about Birdalone & was kissing & clipping her. Then they sat down together in the shade of the great tree, & the woodmother made much of her friend

**Part VI. The Days of Absence**





with few words and those but simple, while Birdalone wept for joy.

**A**T last spake Birdalone: Wood/mother, my dear, I look in thy face, and I see thee that thou art nowise changed, so that thou callest to my mind the Birdalone that met thee here when she was straying from the House of Captivity like to a bird with a string to its leg.

**H**ABUNDIA smiled on her and said: So it is that now thou lookest older than I. Rounder & fuller is thy body, & thy limbs greater and fairer, and thy flesh sleeker; lovelier art thou in all wise, and such as I have thought of thee during these years, save that thy face is grown wiser & sadder than might be looked for. Mother, she said, I am grown older than I should be by the tale of the years, for I have had joy and grief, & grief and joy, & grief again; & now that the years have worn, the grief abideth and the joy hath departed, save this joy of thee and the day of the meeting I have so often thought of.

**S**HEID THE wood/wife: Were I to hear the story of thee, I deem it most like that I would fain buy thy joy with thy grief, both that which has been and that which

is to come. And now I will ask thee right out to tell me all thy tale, as much as thou canst; & all thou canst tell to me, who am thine other self: and I wot moreover that thou hast not told of me to any whom thou hast met in the world since we were last together: is it not so?

**I**N faith and in troth so it is, said Birdalone. Said Habundia, after she had looked hard on Birdalone a while: Now there is this I find in thee, that though thou callest me wood/mother still, thou art not my daughter as thou wert erewhile, nor I thy mother; and I know not whether to be glad or sorry thereof, since thou art even as much my friend as ever thou wert. But much do I rejoice herein that thou hast not told any one soul of me.

**S**HEID Birdalone: I must tell thee that part of the tale I shall tell thee is how I have found my mother in the flesh, & loved her sorely; and then I lost her again, for she is dead.

**Q**UOTH the wood/wife, smiling on her lovingly: Then should I be even more thy mother than erst I was: there will be something else in thy tale, sweetling.

**T**HEN Birdalone flushed very red, and she smiled piteously in Habundia's



face; but then she put up her hands to hide the change there in which the anguish of longing wrought, & her shoulders shook and her bosom heaved, and she wept bitterly; but the wood-wife still looked on her smiling, & said softly at last: Yea, how sweet it were to be grieved with thy pain.

**B**UT in a while Birdalone grew calm again and the very smile blossomed out in her face, and they kissed together. Then Habundia rose up and looked on her, & said at last & laughed out withal: One thing I must needs say, that thou hast not fetched thee raiment of price from the knight-hood and the kings' houses; or have I not seen thy grey coat of old time, while thou wert living amidst the witch's cruelty? Yea forsooth, said Birdalone; thou needest not to ask this. Verily not, said Habundia, nor why thou art not clad in the fair green gown which thou didst broider; for whiles I have seen the witch flaunting it on the woodenugly body of her, and thou wouldst not wear it after she had cursed it with her foulness. Is it not so? Yea, it is even so, said Birdalone; dost thou love me the less therefor? Habundia laughed again: Were I a man of Adam's sons, said she, I

might make thee many words on the seemliness of thy short coat, and the kindness of it, that it will be for ever slipping off one or other of thy shoulders. But now am I at least enough thy mother, and thou art dwelling even so much in my house, that the next time we meet (& that shall be to-morrow) I shall fetch thee raiment which shall make us forget that thou camest back again to this land as naked as thou didst depart thence.

**B**IRDALONE reddened and hung down her head, but the wood-mother sat down beside her & kissed her and said: But now forget all save thy tale, and tell all as closely as thou mayest, for I would lose nought thereof. Yea, said Birdalone; and where shall I begin? Said Habundia: I know nought thereof save the beginning, that thou fledst away naked and escaped the witch; & the ending, to wit, that the Sending Boat failed thee at the last of the Wonder Isles, & that thou calledst on me not wholly in vain, whereas the witch was dead, and therefore there was nought to stay me from sending thee one of my trees & the wight thereof (whom belike I may show to thee one day) to save thee from the bottom of the deep water.



**A**T that word Birdalone threw herself on the wood/wife & clipped and kissed her, and thanked her for the helping with all the dearest words she might. But the wood/mother laughed for joy, and stroked her cheeks and said: Now I deem thee my daughter again, whereas thou thankest me with such sweet passion for doing to thee as a kind mother needs must with/ out any thought thereof. And I bid thee, my dear, never again to go so far from me as that I may not easily help thee and comfort thee from out of my realm wherein I am mighty. And now tell me all in thy dear speech.

**W**HEREWITH Birdalone began her story without more ado, even as ye have heard it afore. Yea and many more things than we can set down did she tell, for full filled she was with the wisdom of the wood. And between whiles the wood/mother fed her with dainty meat and drink, such as Birdalone had never erst tasted the like of. And by then she had got so far as her flight from the Isle of Increase Unsought, the sun was set & the twilight begun. And the wood/wife said: Now shalt thou go home to thine house; and have no fear of witch or evil thing,

for I am not far from thee and will watch over thee. Sweet is thy tale, my daughter, & dear are thy she/friends; & if ever it may be that I may do them any pleasure, fain were I; and that especially to thy Viridis, who meseemeth is both sweet and wise even as thou thyself art. Nay, dost thou begrudge my loving her? Nay, nay, said Birdalone, laughing; but I rejoice in it. And hereafter when I tell thee how sorely they paid for helping me, I will bid thee to love them yet more than now thou dost. Therewith they parted, & Birdalone came to her house; and on the way she made as it were a feigned tale in mockery of her old trouble, that there would be the witch/mistress awaiting her to whip her. So that when she came to the door she was half frightened with her own mock, lest the witch might now at last have taken to walking.

**B**UT all was quiet when she entered with the last of the twilight, and she rested that night in all peace, as in the best of her days in the five Crafts.



Chapter XIX. Habundia  
hideth Birdalone's Nakedness  
with faery Raiment.

Part VI. The  
Days of Ab-  
sence

**N**EXT morning Birdalone tarried about the house as little a while as she might, & then went hastening up to the wood; & when she came within sight of the Trysting Tree, lo! there was Habundia before her, and the hands of her busy turning over goodly raiment, so that it was well nigh as if the days had gone back to the time of the Captivity, & the sitter under the oak was Birdalone herself dealing with her half-finished gown.

**J**OYOUSLY they met & embraced each other, & then spake the woodwife: Now, thou darling of the world, I have been no worse than my word, & if thou durst wear web of the faery thou shalt presently be clad as goodly as ever thou wert down there amongst the knighthood; & then thy tale, my dear, and, if it may be, the wisdom of the barren woodwife set thereto.

**A**ND therewith she laid on Birdalone's outstretch-  
ed arms the raiment she had brought with her, & it was as if the sunbeam had thrust through the close leafage of

the oak, and made its shadow nought a space about Birdalone, so gleamed and glowed in shifty brightness the broi-  
dery of the gown; and Birdalone let it fall to earth, & passed over her hands & arms the fine smock sewed in yellow and white silk, so that the web thereof seemed of mingled cream and curd; & she looked on the shoon that lay beside the gown, that were done so nicely and finely that the work was as the feather-robe of a beauteous bird, whereof one scarce can say whether it be bright or grey, thousand-hued or all simple of colour. Birdalone quivered for joy of the fair things, and crowed in her speech as she knelt before Habundia to thank her: then in a twinkling had she done off her beggar's raiment, and then the smock clung about her darling nakedness, and next the gown was shimmering all over her, and the golden girdle embraced her loins as though it loved them worthily; & Birdalone looked to the wood round about her and laughed, while Habundia lay in her place & smiled upon her with gentle loving-kindness.

**B**UT in a little while was Birdalone sobered; for the thought of how fair she should look to the eyes



of her beloved when she was shown unto him on the day of days, thrust her light & eager pleasure aside; and she took up her shoes from the ground (for she had not done them on), and sat down beside the wood-wife and fell a-toying with the marvel of them; and thus without more ado began her tale again, whereas she had left it last even, when she had told of how the Sending Boat was speeding her over the waters toward the Isle of the Young and the Old.

**Chapter XX.** Birdalone telleth Habundia of her Love for Arthur, & getteth from her promise of help therein.



**L**ONG THEY sat there that day, & until the sun was down, & by then had Birdalone but little to tell of her story, for she was gotten therein to the days of the five Crafts. Many times had she wept & turned to Habundia for solace as she told, not without shame, but without any covering up, all the tale of her love for Arthur the Black Squire, and how she was surprised by the love of him, & of his wisdom and grace & loveliness. And the wood-mother was ever as sweet & kind unto her as could be; yet might ano-

ther than a lover have seen that much of all this was strange unto her, and she looked upon Birdalone as a child who has broken her toy, & is hard to comfort for the loss of it, though there be a many more in the world. But when it grew dusk as aforesaid, and it was time to part, she spake to Birdalone, and said: True it is, my child, that thou hast lived long in these six years' time; neither do I wonder at the increase of thy beauty, and the majesty thereof; for fair is the life thou hast lived, although thou hast been grieved & tormented by it at whiles. And now I know what it is for which thou longest; & herein again will I play the mother unto thee, & seek about to fetch thee that thou wouldst have; so be not over-anxious or troubled; and thou mayest be good herein, as my fair child should be; for this I have noted in thee, that Love is not so tyrannous a master but that his servants may whiles think of other matters, and so solace their souls, that they may live despite of all.

**N**OW was Birdalone arisen, and stood before her friend confused & blushing. But Habundia put her two hands on her shoulders and kissed her, and said: Go home now and sleep, and



come again to-morrow and let us hear the last of thy tale; & when that is done, maybe I shall be able to do something for thine avail.

**S**O they parted, and on the morrow Birdalone came again and told the remnant of her story, which was not so long now that the Black Squire was out of it. And when she had done, Habundia kept silence a while, & then she said: One thing I will tell thee, that whereas erewhile it was but seldom indeed that any son of Adam might be seen in the woodland here, of late, that is, within the last three years, there be many such amongst us; and to our deeming they be evil beasts, more pitiless & greedy than any bear; and but that we have nought to do with them, for they fear us and flee from us, we should have destroyed them one & all. And now that I have heard all thy story, it seemeth unto me not so unlike but these maybe the remnants of the bands of the Red Hold, & that they have drifted hither fleeing before the might of thy friends of the knight-hood. Wherefore now, trust me that I will look into this, but I must needs be away from here for a little; so hold thy soul in patience though thou hear nought of me, and dwell

quietly at home for seven days' space, and then come hither and find me. farewell now, my child!

**S**O they kissed & departed; and Birdalone went home to the house, and wore the days thereafter doing what was needful about the stead, & wandering through the meadows, and swimming the waters about Green Eyot; and the days were not unrestful unto her.

*Chapter XXI. How the Woodwife entered the Cot, & a Wonder that befell thereon.*

**W**HEN it was the sixth day since those two had met, Birdalone arose in the morning & stood in the door of the house, and she looked toward the bent which went up to the wood & saw one coming down it, and knew it for Habundia clad in her huntress' raiment & bearing something over the left arm, for her bow was in her right hand. So Birdalone ran to meet her, and embraced & kissed her, & was merry over her, and said: Dear mother, thou farest far from thy fastness to-day. Said Habundia: There is nought in the meadows now save the neat & the goats & thou; of none of that

*Part VI. The Days of Absence*



folk am I afraid. But mayhap/pen thou shalt be afraid to come with me into the depths of the wild/wood, for thither would I lead thee. I will be afraid of nought with thee beside me, said Birdalone. But come now and look upon the house that I have won for me. And she took her hand and led her along; and the wood/wife said no more till they were across the brook and standing by the porch.

**W**HEN SAID Birdalone: Thou hast a green gown over thine arm; is that also for me? Yea, certes, said Habundia; the old rag which thou hast on thee, and which thou lovest so sore, is not fine enough for my company; and the glitter/gown I gave thee may be too fine for the thorns and the briars, and moreover thou mayst be over/easily seen if thou bear that broidered sunshine mid the boughs. Wherefore go in now and do on this other coat, though the faery have made it, & then come out to me with thy bow & thy quiver, & I shall find thee sandals/shoon and girdle withal.

**N**AY, wood/mother, said Birdalone, hallow my house by entering it, & eat a morsel with me and drink the wine of the horned folk ere we go our ways.

**H**ABUNDIA shook her head & knit her brows somewhat as she looked hard on the house; then she said: I know not, Adam's daughter; I have little to do with houses, & doubt if a house be safe for me. And this one that the witch builded! and be like she buried some human being at one of its four corners. Tell me, fair child, sawest thou ever here at night/tide the shape of a youngling crowned with a garland straying about the house?

**N**AY, NEVER at all, said Birdalone. Said the wood/wife: Then maybe thou hast hallowed it with the wisdom and love of thee, and I may venture; and moreover I note that it is all builded of trees and the grass of the earth; and thou art free to use them by my leave. But if aught befall of my coming under thy roof, heed it not too much, but think, whatsoever my aspect maybe, I am thy wood/mother and wisdom/mother that loveth thee. And I bid thee also wish with all thy might that my aspect may not change to thee. Also, if I eat, thou wert best not to sign the meat as Adam's sons are wont. Lead in then; for now am I grown wilful, and will enter whatever betide.



**B**IRDALONE marvelled at those words, but she fell to wishing strongly that her friend might not lose her lovely youthful shape either then or ever, and she took her hand, which trembled somewhat, & led her over the thresh/old; and when they were under the roof herseemed that the wood/mother dwindled in a wondrous way, though her face was as sweet and her limbs as shapely as ever; & she laughed shrilly yet sweetly, and spake in a thin clear voice: Birdalone, my dear, wish strongly, wish strongly! though thou shalt see nothing worse of me than this. And she was scarce three feet high, but as pretty as a picture.

**T**HEREAT indeed was Birdalone affrighted, but she wished all she might, and stooped down to kiss this little creature; and therewith again the wood/wife seemed to wax again as great and tall as ever she was, & her voice came full and strong again, as she laughed and said: Now is it all over for this time, and I see how well thou lovest me; and I pray thee love me no less for this wonder thou hast seen in me. But now it were better that I never go under a roof again. And she took her arms about Birdalone & clip-

ped her lovingly; and glad was Birdalone to feel her so strong and solid again.

**W**HEN THEY SAT to the board and ate a simple meal of bread and cheese and wood/berries, and drank milk withal; & the wood/mother was merry, and the smiles danced over her face as she looked on Birdalone with all loving/kindness, so that Birdalone wondered what was toward; but so light/hearted and happy she grew, that she deemed it might be nought save good.

**B**UT when they had eaten, then Birdalone did off her old coat, which she said was meet enough for her daily toil, and did on the fair green hunting/gown & the sandal/shoon, & girt her with the fair girdle which Habundia had fetched her, & drew up the laps of her gown therethrough till her legs were all free of the skirts. And Habundia looked on her, and laughed and said: Now are these white & smooth legs as bad as the gleam/gown for the lying hid; but it may no better be, and thou must draw thy skirts down & stumble, if needs must be, when we come to the ambushment.

**B**IRDALONE reddened as she laughed at the word, & took down her



bow and hung her quiver at her back & thrust her sharp knife into her girdle, and forth they went both of them, and were presently past the bent which went up from the meadows & in amongst Habundia's trees.

Chapter XXII. Birdalone  
wendeth the Wild wood in fel-  
lowship with Habundia.

**A**S they went their ways lightly through the wood, spake Habundia and said: Birdalone, my child, fair is the gold ring with the sapphire stone that the third finger of thy right hand beareth; seldom have I seen so fair a stone as that deep blue one; hangeth any tale thereby? Said Birdalone: Did I not tell thee thereof, wood-mother, how that my beloved who is lost gave it unto me the very last time I saw him, woe worth the while? Nay, said Habundia, I mind not the tale. But deemest thou he would know it again if he saw it? Yea, surely, said Birdalone, hanging her head; for when first he gave it, the gift was not to me, but to another woman. And she held her peace, & went on with hanging head and all the glee faded out of her a while.

**A**T last she turned to Habundia, and said: I have now bethought me to ask thee whither we be going and on what errand; for at first I was so glad at heart, I know not why, & it was so merry to bewending the wood with thee freely, that I had no thought in me as to whither and wherefore. But now wilt thou tell me?

**S**AID the wood-wife: How if I were to tell thee we were going a-hunting? Birdalone said: Then I should ask thee what like the quarry were. And suppose it were men? said the wood-wife. Birdalone turned somewhat pale. My mother, she said, if we be going against some of those men of the Red Bands, I am not happy over it. I am no warrior, & fear strokes. Said Habundia, laughing: Yet art thou a fell archer; & thou mayest shoot from an ambush of the thick leaves, since June is in to-day. But neither would I slay or hurt any man, said Birdalone, but it were to save me from present death.

**H**ABUNDIA looked on her with a sly smile and said: Well maybethough we take cover and get within wind of our quarry thou shalt not need to speed an arrow to him. Have patience therefore.





for this is a strange beast which I have marked down; he is not ill to look on, and his voice, which we may well hearken, for whiles he singeth, is rather sweet than surly. What meanest thou, mother? said Birdalone, growing red & then paler yet; what man is it? since thy calling him a beast is a jest, is it not?

**N**AY, said Habundia, I neither name him nor know him; only I deem him by no means to be one of the Red Band. for the rest, he may be a man in a beast's skin, or a beast in a man's skin, for aught I know; whereas he seems, so far as I have seen him, to be not wholly man-like or wholly beast-like. But now let us hold our peace of him till we be come nigher to his haunt.

**S**O they went on their way, & Birdalone said but little, while the wood-wife was of many words and gay. They made all diligence, for Birdalone was not soon wearied, and moreover as now she was anxious and eager to see what would befall, which she might not but deem would be something great.

**T**HEY went without stay till past noon, when they were come to a little shady dale wherethrough ran a

clear stream; there they rested and bathed them, & thereafter sat under the boughs & ate the dainty meat which the wood-wife provided, howsoever she came by it; and when they had rested a while, the wood-wife turned the talk once more unto Arthur the Black Squire, and would have Birdalone tell her all nicely what manner of man he was; and Birdalone was nothing loth thereto; for had she her will she had talked of him day/long.

**Chapter XXIII. The Wood-wife bringeth Birdalone to the sight of Arthur in the Wild-wood.**

**W**HEN they go on again, no less speedily than before, & rest but little, until it was hard on an hour before sunset. And now Habundia began to go warily, as if they were come anigh to their journey's end and the thing that they sought. They were come by now to a long bent of the forest well grown with big-boled oak/trees, not very close together, so that short fine greensward was all underneath them; & Habundia went heedfully from bole to bole, as if she would be ready to cover herself if need were; and Birdalone went after her, and was





now flushed of face, and her eyes glittered, & her heart beat fast, & her legs trembled under her, as she went running from tree to tree.

**S**O came they nigh to the crown of the bent, & before them were the oak-trees sparser & smaller as they went down the further side, which seemed by their sudden shortening to be steeper than the hither side; & betwixt them showed the topmost of thorn and whitebeam and logwood, intertwined with eglantine & honeysuckle & the new shoots of the traveller's joy. There the wood-wife put forth her hand to bid Birdalone stay, who came up to her friend & stood before her eager & quivering; and anon came the sound of a man's voice singing, though they could hear no words in it as yet amidst the rustle of the trees and the tumult of song which the blackbirds & thrushes raised in the dale below them.

**T**HEN spake the wood-wife softly: Hearken, we are right & the time is good, our beast is giving tongue: now below us is the bent-side steep, & goeth down into a very little dale with a clear stream running amidst; and therein is the very lair of the thing that we are hunting.

Wherefore now let us slip warily down between the bushes till we get close to the bottom, and then belike we shall see the very creature quite close, and we shall then consider & think what we shall do with him.

**B**IRDALONE had no voice wherewith to answer her, but she stole quietly along by her side till they came to the bank of the dale & plunged into the thick; et that flourished there, & fell to threading it, making them as small as might be. But ere they had gone but a little way the wordless song of what was below had ceased, & they heard the sweet tinkle of the string-play, & the wood-wife stayed her to hearken, and the smiles went rippling over her face & she beat time with her fingers; but Birdalone, she stared wildly before her, & would have scrambled down the bank straightway at all hazards, for that string-play was a melody of the Castle of the Quest, but Habundia withheld her by the arm. And then suddenly the music died, and there came up a voice of wailing & lamenting, and Birdalone put her hands & held the palms tight against her ears, & was at point to cry out aloud herself; but Habundia drew a hand of her down & whispered into her ear: Child,



child, make thyself strong & forbear, & then perchance joy may come to thee; hold thy peace & come softly along with me!

**S**O Birdalone forbore, and strove with her passion, though the sob rent her bosom for a while; and by then the loud lamenting waned and was done, and the sound of sobbing came up from below, as it had been an echo of Birdalone's grief.

**W**HEN Habundia drew her on again till they saw the level of the dale and its stream piecemeal betwixt the leaves, and they had a glimpse of a man on the hither side of the stream; & again they went lower, till they were well-nigh on a level with the greensward of the dale; and as Birdalone knelt with head bent low, and her hands covering her eyes, the wood-wife put away from before her the thick leaves of a hazel-bush, and whispering said: Child, child! look forth now & see what is before thee, and see if thou knowest him, or if he be strange to thee, and thy mother hath done nought for thee when all is said.

**B**IRDALONE looked up, pale and wild-eyed, and into the dale, and saw a man sitting on the grass by the stream-side with his head bowed down on to his knees

and his face covered with his hands; he was clad but in two or three deerskins hung about him, with a strip of skin for a girdle, wherein was thrust a short sword; his brown hair hung down long and shaggy over his face. Close by his side lay a little harp, and further off a short spear roughly hefted with an ash-staff. He was beating the earth with his feet and writhing him about over them. And Birdalone looked, and her breath well-nigh failed her. for presently he sat more quietly, and lifted up his head, and she saw his face that it was Arthur, her beloved; and now she durst not move lest he should spring up and flee away; and the mingled pain and longing within her was sweet indeed, but well-nigh deadly.

**N**OW HIS hand sought round to his harp, & he took it in his arms and fondled it as it were, & his fingers went among the strings, and anon the voice of it came forth, & it was nought changed from the last time it spake, & Birdalone hearkened breathlessly, till the melody died again and Arthur looked about him & raised his face as a dog when it fares to howl.

**W**HEN Birdalone gave a great cry, & leapt forth out of the thicket and



stood on the greensward with nought betwixt them two, and she stretched out her arms to her beloved and cried out: O! no, no, no! do it not, I beseech thee, lest I deem that thou art all changed, and that the man and the dear heart beloved of thee has gone out of thee and left thee but a beast in a man's shape!

**H**E leapt up as she spake, and thrust forward his head & looked fierce at her, and cried out: What! art thou come again? This is the second time I have seen thee, thou image of her that hath tormented me so long; of her that left me in my most need and hid herself away from me. Bah! a man, sayest thou? Did I not strive with it, & hold my manhood so long as I might; and at last it might no longer be, and I became a beast and a man-slayer? But what avails it to talk with thee, since thou art but the image of her that hath wasted my life. Yet perchance of the image I may make an end since I may not lay hand on the very destroyer herself; and, woe's me, how I loved her! yea, and do still; but not thee, O false image!

**A**ND forthwith he drew the blade from his girdle & sprang forward at Birdalone; and she cower-

ed and cringed, but moved not else. But therewithal the wood-wife came leaping through the bushes, and she nocked an arrow on her bended bow, and threatened him therewith, and cried out: Thou man-beast, I will slay thee if thou hurt my child and my dear; so forbear! Nay, I tell thee more, unless thou make her as glad at the sight of thee as I meant her to be, I will in the long run slay thee; so look to it.

**H**E laughed & said: What! there is another image of the love that wasted me, is there! Nay, but by the Hallows, this new-comer is the first one, and the one who chartered at me is the second. Or is it this, that all women now have the semblance of the evil one that has undone me, and there is nought else left?

**A**ND he stood staring at Birdalone & moved not a while; and she stood with her hands before her face cringing before him. Then he raised his arm & cast the weapon far into the bushes of the bank-side, and then came forward and stood before Birdalone, and drew down her hands from her face and stared in the eyes of her, holding her by the two arms; and he said: Thou hast forgotten now, belike, how fair a life we two might have



lived if thou hadst not fled from me and spoiled me.

**A**ND thou! by the looks of thee, for thou art sleek and fair, though this moment thou art pale for fear of me, thou hast lived a happy life through all these years, with many a merry thing to think of: & dost thou deem that my life was happy, or that I thought of any merry thing, or of anything save my sorrow? Dost thou doubt it? go ask the good spears of Greenford, or the Riders of the Red Hold, & the field of the slaughter! If there was little joy there, less was there elsewhere.

**S**HE left go of her there-with and stood trembling before her, & she bowed down and put palm to palm and held them out to him as one who prays; & she knew not what she did.

**W**HEN he cried out with a lamentable cry and said: O woe's me! for I have frightened her & scared the wit out of her, so that she knows not who I am nor what I would; and I would pray to her & beseech her to pity me, and not depart from me again or mock me with images of herself.

**W**HEN he went down on his knees to her, and he also joined his hands to pray to her; but it seemed

as if she was stricken to stone, so wholly she moved not. But for him, he sank his forehead to earth, & then he rolled over and his limbs stretched out, & his head turned aside & blood gushed out from his mouth. But Birdalone shrieked out & cast herself on his body, and cried: I have found him, and he is dead! he is dead, and I have slain him, because I was a timorous fool & feared him; & he was coming to his right mind and knew me for what I was!

**B**UT Habundia came and stood over them, & drew up Birdalone, and said: Nay, nay, be comforted! for now he is thus, & the strength is gone out of him for a while, we may deal with him. Abide, & I will fetch the blood-staunching herb and the sleepy herb, and then we will heal him, and he will come to his right mind and be a man again.

**T**HEREWITH she hastened away and was gone but a little; & meanwhile Birdalone knelt down by her love and wiped the blood from him, and caressed his sword-hardened hands and moaned over him. But when the wood-wife came back she put Birdalone aside once more, & knelt down by the squire and raised his head, and laid the blood-stauncher to his mouth & his

Part VI. The  
Days of Absence



heart, & muttered words over him, while Birdalone looked over her shoulder with her pale face; then the she-leech fetched water from the stream in a cup which she drew from her wallet, & she washed his face, and he came somewhat to himself, so that she might give him drink of the water; & yet more he came to himself. So then she took the sleepy herb and bruised it in her hands and put in his mouth & again said words over him, and presently his head fell back and his eyes closed and he slept peacefully.

**S**HE stood up then and turned to Birdalone and said: Now, my child, have we done all that we may do, save that we shall bring him to a place where the dew and the sun shall not torment him and sicken him; for he shall lie thus till the sun comes up to-morrow, or longer; & fear not, for when he awaketh he shall be in his right mind, and shall know thee & love thee. This I swear to thee by the earth and the sun and the woodland.

**S**HID Birdalone, trembling yet: O mother, but may I kiss him and caress him? Yea, surely, said the wood-mother, smiling in her face, but be not too long over it, for lo! the last of the sun, and it were better that he


be under cover ere the twilight falls.

**B**IRDALONE KNELT down by her love quietly at that word, and fell to kissing him softly, & laid her cheek to his, & called him gentle names such as none can tell again without shame, till the wood-wife laid her hand on her shoulder & said kindly & sweetly: Rise up now, for thou must make it enough for this present; thou shalt have time enough hereafter for more and much more.

**S**O Birdalone arose & said: How shall we bear him to his place? Shall I not take him by the shoulders & thou by the legs? for I am stronger than thou after all these years.

**L**AUGHED the wood-wife: Nay, little one, said she; thou knowest me not utterly as yet. Thou shalt not bear him at all, nor any part of him; I am strong enough for more than that; see thou! And she stooped down and took him up in her arms as if he were a little child, and stepped off lightly with him; but looked back over her shoulder & said to Birdalone: But thou mayest walk by me & hold a hand of him as we go, though it will hinder me somewhat; but I know thine heart & would pleasure thee, my child.





**B**IRDALONE ran up to her and thanked her and kissed her, and took Arthur's left hand, while Habundia bore him on down the dale and out of it, & still along the stream till they came to a place where it was narrow on either side thereof, and a sheer rock came down so near to the water that there was but a strip of greensward three yards wide betwixt water and rock; and in the face of the rock was a cave wide enough for a man to enter by stooping somewhat. There in the woodwife lightly bore Arthur, & Birdalone followed; and they found the cave dry & roomy within; there was a bed therein of dry heather & bracken, and thereon Habundia laid her burden, and said: Now, my child, there is nought to do but abide till he comes to himself again, which may be some time to-morrow; & be of good cheer, for he will come to his right self, but he will be weak and humble; but I shall have meat and drink ready for him. Now if thou wilt be ruled by me, thou wilt keep out of the way when he awakens; moreover, be thou not scared if I meet his awakening with another shape than that which thou hast known of me; for sure it is that it will trouble his wits overmuch if again he seeth

the two of us alike. But fear not; for thy sake, my child, I will take noughty shape, though it may well be less beauteous than thine.

**I** WILL DO what thou wilt, mother, said Birdalone, for I see that thou art helping me all thou mayest; yet I beseech thee let me sit by him till the time of his awakening draweth nigh.

**T**HE woodwife smiled and nodded yeasay on her, and they sat down, both of them, beside the sleeping man, and the day died into the night as they sat hearkening to the ripple of the brook & the song of the nightingales.

**Chapter XXIV. The Woodmother changeth her form to that of a Woman stricken in Years**

**W**HEN the morrow came, there yet lay Arthur sleeping peacefully, and Birdalone awoke from the slumber which had at last fallen on her, & looked about her and saw not Habundia in the cave; so she arose & bent over Arthur and kissed him, and so went forth and stood in the door and looked about her. And she was still dim-eyed with her just departed slumber & the brightness

Part VI. The Days of Absence





of the morning sunlight, and she scarce knew whether it were a part of a dream, or a sight that was verily before her, that she seemed to see one coming across the brook toward her, stepping heedfully from stone to stone thereof: a woman stricken in years, but slim and trim and upright, clad in a gown of green cloth, with a tippet of some white fur. When she was come on to the green-sward she spake to Birdalone in a sweet voice, but thin with eld, and gave her the sele of the day; and Birdalone was somewhat afraid to see a new-comer, but she greeted her, drawing back a little from her shyly. But the old woman said: What maketh thee here, my daughter? Dost thou not know that this is my land and my house, and that I am said not to be unmighty in these woods?

**I** PRAY thee pardon me if I have done amiss, said Birdalone; but here have I a sick friend, a young man, & I would pray thee suffer him to abide here in this cave a little longer; for there hath been also another friend, a woman, but she hath gone out while I slept, belike to gather simples, for she is wise in leechcraft, and is tending the sick man. I pray thee humbly to suffer us lest we lose our friend.

**A**S she spake, she heard the carline chuckle softly, and at last she said: Why, Birdalone, my dear, dost thou not know me after all these years? Look on me again, look! and thou shalt see that I am not so much changed from what thou sawest me last night. I am still thine image, my dear, only I was the image of what thou wert, and now am I the image of what thou shalt be when two score years and ten of happy life have worn for thee. Tell me, am I now aught like to thy mother in the flesh?

**N**O! hast thou frightened me, mother, said Birdalone; I thought that my friend had forsaken me, & that perchance the new-comer was another witch like unto the old one, & that I was never to be at rest and happy. But as to my mother in the flesh, nay, thou art not now wholly like unto her; and sooth to say I shall be fainer when thou hast thine own shape of me young back again, for I love thee not so much as now thou art.

**T**HE wood-wife laughed: Well, she said, thou shalt not see overmuch of me in this shape; and that the less because of something I shall now tell thee, to wit, that I have been thinking the matter over, and I would have thee leave us

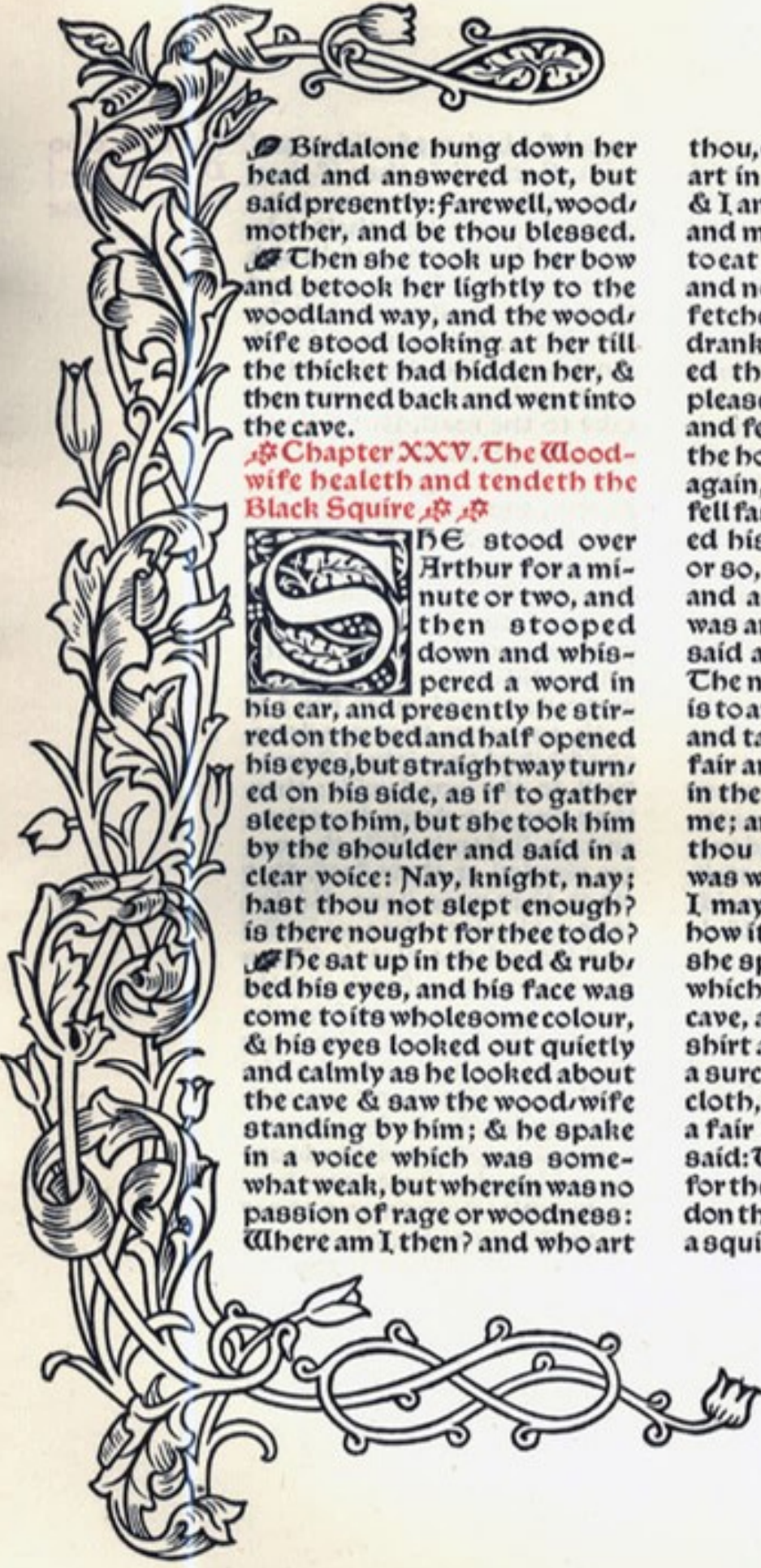


twain together alone before the young man awaketh. I would have thee get thee home and abide him there; it shall not be long I promise thee; and this also, that he shall come home to thee sound in body & whole in limb.

**B**IRDALONE'S countenance fell, and she said: Why this second mind, mother? why, I pray thee? Said Habundia: I fear for thy love lest he be not strong enough to open his eyes upon thy face; but after he hath been a day in the woods, & I have spoken to him diversely & cheered him with the hope of meeting thee, he may well be strong enough to seek thee for a mile's length, & find thine house first & then thee. So now wilt thou obey me? Nay, if thou must needs weep, I will be gone into the thicket till thou hast done, thou wilful! Birdalone smiled through her tears, and said: I pray thee pardon my wilfulness, mother, and I will depart without turning back into the cave. Nay, said Habundia, there is no need for so much haste as that: I will in now, and do my leechdoms with the sick man. But do thou go across the stream, thou barefoot, & thou wilt find on the other side, by the foot of the quicken-tree yonder, honeycombs & white

bread & a bicker of wild goats' milk. Bathe thee then if thou wilt, and bring those matters over hither; & then shalt thou go in and kiss thy mate's sick face with thy fresh one, and thereafter shall we sit here by the ripple of the water & break our fast; and lastly, thou shalt go in and kiss again and then take to the road. But tell me, deemest thou surely that thou canst find it again? Yea, surely, mother, said Birdalone; I am wood-woman enough for that; and now I will do all thy will. And therewith she stepped out lightly on to the greensward, & sought up the stream till she found a smooth-grounded pool meet for her bath, and when that was done, she fetched the victual & came back to the wood-wife; then they two sat down together, and ate & drank while the water rippled at their feet. But when they were done, Birdalone gathered into the cave again, and kissed the sleeping man fondly, & came forth lightly & stood a moment before the wood-wife, & said: Tell me this at least, mother, when shall he be there? Tomorrow, quoth the wood-wife; & for my part, I would keep thee within doors and abide him there, lest there be trouble; for he may not yet be as strong as the strongest.





¶ Birdalone hung down her head and answered not, but said presently: farewell, wood/mother, and be thou blessed.

¶ Then she took up her bow and betook her lightly to the woodland way, and the wood/wife stood looking at her till the thicket had hidden her, & then turned back and went into the cave.

¶ **Chapter XXV. The Wood-wife healeth and tendeth the Black Squire.** ¶

**S**HE stood over Arthur for a minute or two, and then stooped down and whispered a word in his ear, and presently he stirred on the bed and half opened his eyes, but straightway turned on his side, as if to gather sleep to him, but she took him by the shoulder and said in a clear voice: Nay, knight, nay; hast thou not slept enough? is there nought for thee to do?

¶ He sat up in the bed & rubbed his eyes, and his face was come to its wholesome colour, & his eyes looked out quietly and calmly as he looked about the cave & saw the wood/wife standing by him; & he spake in a voice which was somewhat weak, but wherein was no passion of rage or woodness: Where am I, then? and who art

thou, dame? ¶ She said: Thou art in a cave of the woodland, & I am for one thing thy leech, and meseemeth thou desirest to eat & to drink. ¶ He smiled and nodded his head; and she fetched him the milk, and he drank a long draught, & sighed thereafter, as one who is pleased; & she smiled on him, and fetched him the bread and the honey, and he ate & drank again, and then lay down and fell fast asleep. And she suffered his slumber for two hours or so, & then awoke him again; and again he asked where he was and what was she, but she said as before. And said she: The next thing thou hast to do is to arise, as thou well mayest, and take this raiment, which is fair and clean, & go wash thee in the brook and come back to me; and then we will talk, and thou shalt tell me of how it was with thee, & peradventure I may tell thee somewhat of how it shall be with thee. ¶ As she spoke she went to a coffer which stood in a nook of the cave, and drew forth from it a shirt and hosen & shoon, and a surcoat & hood of fine black cloth, and a gilded girdle and a fair sword, red-sheathed, & said: These may serve thy turn for the present, so take them & don them, & thou shalt look like a squire at least, if not a knight.



**S**O he arose as one in a dream & went out; but as he passed by her she saw something gleaming on his breast, & noted that it was Birdalone's fair sapphire ring which hung about his neck; so she smiled, and said under her breath: Crafty is my dear daughter! But that shall save me some words at least. And she abided his return.

**A**NON HE cometh back clad in the fair raiment, with the sword by his side; and the wood-wife smote her palms together and cried out: Now indeed thou art fair and well-liking, and a fair lady might well take pleasure in beholding thee.

**B**UT his brow was knit, and he looked sullen and angry, and he said: What is all this play? & where gattest thou this ring which I founde'en now about my neck? And who art thou, & why have I been brought hither?

**H**IS eyes looked fiercely on her as he spake, holding out his palm with the ring lying thereon. But the wood-wife answered: Many questions, fair youth! but I will tell thee: the play is for thine healing and pleasure, whereas both sick hast thou been and sorry. As to the ring, it is thou hast got it & not I. But I will

tell thee this, that I have seen it on the finger of a fair damsel who haunteth the woodland not far hence. As to what I am, that were a long tale to tell if I told it all; but believe this meanwhile, that I am the lady and mistress of hereabouts, & am not without power over my folk & my land. And as to why thou wert brought hither, I brought thee because I had no better house handy for a sick man to lie in.

**T**HEN Arthur stood a long while considering the ring that lay on his palm, and at last he put his hand on the wood-wife's shoulder, and looked into her face beseechingly, and said: O mother, if thou be mighty & merciful withal, and have pity on me! Thou callest me a youth, and so I may be in regard to thee; but I tell thee it is five long years and there hath been no other thought in my heart but what was loathsome to me, and it hath worn and wasted my youth, so that it waneth & withereth and is nought. O, if thou be mighty, bring me to her that I may see her at least one time before I die. And therewith he fell down on his knees before her, and kissed the hem of her gown, & wept. But she drew him up & looked on him with the merry coun-



Part VI. The  
Days of Ab-  
sence

tenance of a kind old woman, and said: Nay, nay, I am not so hard to be won to thy helping that thou needest pray so sore and weep: here need we tarry no longer, & if thou wilt come with me we shall go seek the damsel who bore this ring, though how it should come to thee why should I know? Neither do I know if the said ring-bearer be the one woman whom thou needest. But I will tell thee at once that she is a dear friend of mine.

**W**HEN Arthur threw his arms about her, & kissed her cheeks and blessed her, while she laughed on him & said: Nay, fair sir, if thou wilt do so much with the withered branch, what wilt thou with the blossom of the tree? And he was abashed before her, but hope made his heart to dance.

**S**O the wood-wife took up her bow, slung her quiver at her back, and girt her short sword to her, & then led him forth, and so into the thicket out of the dale and forth into the oaken bent, and lightly she led him thereafter through the woodland.

Chapter XXVI. The Black  
Squire telleth the Wood-wife  
of his doings since Birdalone  
went from the Castle of the  
Quest.

**A**S THEY went Habundia said to Arthur: Now shalt thou talk & tell for the shortening of the way, and let us know somewhat of thy story. But first I must tell thee, for thou mayst not know it, so witless as then thou wast, that yesterday we found thee down in the dale yonder, playing the string, plays sweetly indeed, but otherwise dight like a half beast more than a man, so that we wondered at thee & pitied thee.

**A**RTHUR knit his brows as if he strove with some memory and might not master it; then he said: Thou sayest We, who then was the other? Said Habundia: I had a dear friend with me. Quoth he: And did she pity me also? Yea, said the wood-wife, else scarce had she been a friend to me. O let us on swiftly, said Arthur, so long as the time may be! And they quickened their pace and ate up the way speedily.

**P**RESENTLY spake the wood-wife again: Now for the tale of thee,



fair sir; yet will I shorten it somewhat by telling thee that I know thy name, that thou art Arthur the Black Squire of the Castle of the Quest. He stared at that word, and said: How knewest thou this? how couldst thou guess it, who hast never seen me erst? A friend told me, said she; too long it were as now to tell thee thereof. Rather do thou tell me how thou didst fare when ye found thy friend gone from the castle that time ye came home from the winning of the Red Hold.

**A**RTHUR stared astonished, and said: What is it? Dost thou verily know my love? or art thou a sorceress & knowest somewhat of me by spell/work? I am somewhat more than a sorceress, may happen, said the woodwife; but heed it not, since I am thy friend to day, but tell me what I ask, that I may have all the tale of thee; it will serve for the shortening of the way. Said Arthur: And who but I needeth it as short as may be? so stand we not loitering here, and I will talk as we wend on speedily.

**W**HEN they sped therefore, and said Arthur: How did I fare? as one stunned, mother, & knew not what had happened; & when I heard

their babble of how she had done wrong here & right there, I was driven half mad by it, so that I hastened back to the Red Hold, and became the captain of Greenford, to hunt down their scattered foemen; for I said to myself that needs must I rage and slay, and that were worser amongst my friends than mine unfriends. What then? that business came to an end; though all the ill men were not slain, but all were driven away from the parts of Greenford; and sooth to say they durst not come anywherenigh where they heard of me. Then became each day like every other, and the thought of my hope and my despair ate mine heart out, and I was of no avail unto any. Now it so happened, amidst my many battles and chases, I had hunted the bands of the Red Hold into the north-west marches of the woodland; & I noted that even they, howsoever hard bestead, and the worst of men to boot, would scarce at the first be driven into the thickets thereof, though at last, whether or no they have made covenant with the devils there I know not, they have betaken them to the depths of the wood and have borne off women from the dwellings & got children on them, and are like to breed an evil folk. That



Part VI. The  
Days of Ab-  
sence

then I noted that this Evilshaw was a dwelling loathed & desert, & little like it was that any would meddle with me there. Three years had worn since I was cast away at the Castle of the Quest by her that loved me, who must needs sacrifice both her and me to the busy devil of folly; and I also deemed that if I sought for her I should not find her; and yet more forsooth, that if I found her she would be as hard unto me as when she fled from me. And as for me, I was gotten hard and crabbed, & no man, if his heart would let him, would have aught to say to me. So I gat me away from the Red Hold, as I had from the Castle of the Quest, & I gave out that I would enter into religion, and forbade any man to follow me. Neither did any desire it. First of all I set me down at the very outskirts of the woodland, and raised me a bower there, rude and illshapen. few folk came anigh me, and yet some few, charcoal burners, and hunters of the edges of the wood, and suchlike. These deemed me a holy man, whereas I was but surly. Somewhat also they feared me, whereas in some of their huntings or goings and comings after prey I had put forth all my strength, eked out by the lore of knighthood, which was

strange to them. One man there was of them who was fashioned of the minstrel craft by nature, & who forgathered with me specially, till we became friends, and he was a solace to me, with his tales & his songs of a rougher people than I had been wont to deal with. But when I had been in that place for two years he died of a sickness, and I was left lonely, and my soreness of heart fell upon me till I scarce knew what next I should do. So I fared away yet deeper into the wildwood, taking with me the harp which my friend had given me before he died. It was summer, and I wandered about ever deeper into the wood, until belike I had scarce been able to win out of it if I had tried. At last, when the autumn came, I built myself again some sort of a bower in a clearing of the wood where in was water, and the resort of plenteous venison.

**W**HAT befell next? My mind is not overclear concerning it all, for I was now becoming more of a beast than a man. But this I know, that some men of the bands whom I had chased happened on me. They knew me not for their old foeman, but of their kind it was to torment and slay any man whom they might lightly overcome. Yet



was not the battle so overligh-  
but that I slew and hurt divers  
of them ere they got me under  
and stripped me & bound my  
hands and tormented me, af-  
ter the manner that the devils  
shall do with them when they  
shall go to their reward. Yet  
somehow I lived, though they  
deemed me dead, and I crawled  
away thence when they were  
gone; & somehow I was healed  
of my body, but I was confus-  
ed of my wit thereafter, & now  
can call to mind but little of  
what befell me as I strayed  
from place to place, save that  
I remember I was hapless and  
heart-sore ever: and also me-  
seemeth that I saw visions at  
whiles, & those who had been  
in my life before these things,  
their images would come be-  
fore me to mock me as I sat  
singing whiles & whiles play-  
ing the string-play (for my  
harp I bore ever with me); and  
whiles I bewailed me, & called  
for help on them that would  
not or might not help me. And  
now I may not even tell the  
years of my abiding in the de-  
sert, how many they be. But I  
pray thee let us on more swift-  
ly yet.

**S**AID THE wood-wife:  
Thou hast told me but  
little of thy life, Black  
Squire, but it is enough may-  
be; and I see that thou mayst

not tell me more because thou  
hast thy mind set on what may  
betide thee when this day is o-  
ver. But thou must know that  
thou hast come into the wood  
of Evilshaw, wherein, besides  
those savage men who quelled  
thee and their like, there be un-  
couth things no few, & wights  
that be not of the race of Adam;  
wherefore no great marvel is it  
that thou sawest visions, and  
images of them that were not  
by thee. Yea, said he, but one  
vision had I that confused and  
overcame me more than all  
others, and meseemeth that  
came to me not long ago. for  
first I saw the shape of her  
that my soul desireth ever, and  
it wept and lamented for me;  
and then for a little I seemed  
as if I were coming forth from  
my confusion of wit; when lo!  
there issued from the thicket  
another image of my beloved  
and blamed me and threatened  
me. God wot good cause there  
was of the blame. But tell me,  
mother, since thou callest thy-  
self wise, what may this por-  
tend?

**T**HE wood-wife laughed:  
Since I am wise, said she,  
I will foretell thee good  
days. And now we will talk no  
more of thee or thy love or thy  
sorrow, but since thou wilt so  
fiercely devour the way, I will  
tell thee a tale or two of this



wood and its wights to save us from overmuch weariness.

**S**O did she, talking and telling as they went; & she went on a pace before him, and howsoever long or hardly he might stride he might not overgo her. And so fast they went, that they were within a little way of the Oak of Tryst a good while before the sun had set, though they had set out from the cave three hours after the hour when Bird alone and the woodwife had left the House under the Wood on the yesterday. They had come to a steep rock that rose up from a water's side, and the woodwife bade stay, whether Arthur would or no, and she made him eat & drink, bringing the victual and wine from out of a cleft in the said rock. And she held him there till the night was come & there was a glimmer of the rising moon in the east, and he was ill at ease and restless; but still she held him there till the moon rose high and shone upon them, and the shadows of the oak boughs lay black all around.

**W**HEN she bade him arise, and let him on to the Oak of Tryst, yea and somewhat beyond it toward the great water. Then she spake to him: Black Squire, I am now come home, and will lead thee

no further; I was deeming that we should have slept in the wood a good way from this, & then would I have brought thee on thy way to-morrow morning; but the eagerness of thine heart hath made thy feet so speedy, that we be here somewhat rathe, and yet I am not ill-pleased therewith. Then she turned him about & said: Look down the bent and tell me what thou seest. He said: I see the boles of goodly trees, and betwixt them the gleaming of a great water. She said: Go thitherward then while the moon is yet at her brightest, and thou shalt presently come to wide meads lying along the water, & a stream running through them. Enter then into the meads and look about thee, and thou shalt see a little house (there is none other nigh) standing just across the said stream; go up thither boldly and crave guesting from whomsoever thou shalt find there, and maybe things shall go after thy mind. More than this I may not do for thee. farewell then, and if thou wilt thou mayst meet me again; that is to say, that which is verily me: but it is like that this shape which hath been striding on with thee daylong thou shalt not see any more.



**H**E looked on her wondering, for she seemed to grow goodly & stately before his eyes. But even as he stretched forth his hand to take hers, she turned about suddenly and fared into the wood out of his sight, wending full as swiftly as might have been looked for. Then he drew his sword and turned his face from the wood, & went down toward the water.

Chapter XXVII. Sir Arthur cometh to the House under the Wood.

**S**O came Arthur into the meadows, & went eagerly but warily over the dewy grass. And here & there a cow rose before him and went bundling down the mead a little way, and the owls cried out from behind him, and a fox barked from the thicket's edge. Then he found himself on the stream's side, & he stayed & looked from side to side, and lo! on the other side of the stream a little house that looked familiar to him as a yeoman's dwelling in the builded lands, and the thatch thereon shone under the moon and its windows were yellow with candle-light; & so homely it seemed to him, that he thrust his sword into the sheath & light-

ly crossed the brook, and came to the door and laid his hand upon the latch and lifted it and shoved the door, and all was open before him.

**H**IS eyes, coming from the night, dazzled with the bright light of the candles, but he saw a fair woman rising up in her place, & he said: May a traveller in the woodland be welcome here to-night, dealing with all in all honour?

**B**UT the woman came toward him holding out her two hands, & ere he could cry out that he knew her, she had thrown herself upon him, & had cast her arms about him and was kissing his face, & murmuring: O welcome indeed! welcome, welcome, & welcome! And so sore did his past grief and his desire move him, that he was weak before her, and held down his hands & let her do. And both those were breathless with wonder and joy and longing; and they stood aloof a little in a while & looked on each other, she with heaving bosom and streaming eyes, & he with arms stretched forth and lips that strove with his heart's words and might not utter them; but once more she gave herself to him, and he took her in his arms strongly now, so that she was frail & weak before him, and he laid



Part VI. The  
Days of Ab-  
sence

his cheek to her cheek and his lips to her lips, and kissed her eyes and her shoulders & murmured over her. And then again they stood apart, and she took him by the hand and led him to the settle, & set him down by her, and herself by him; and a while they said nought. Then she spake as one who had come to herself & was calm, though her heart was aflame for love: Tell me, love, when thine hand was on the latch didst thou look to find me here in this house? for thine hand it was that waked me; I heard not thy foot before the threshold, for I was weary and slumbering. Alas! that I lost the sound of thy feet! He spake, and his voice sounded false unto him, as if it came from another's mouth: I wot not; the woman that led me nearby seemed to bid me hope. Then he said: Nay, the sooth is that I should have died if I had not found thee here; I have been sick so long with hoping.

**A**GAIN were they silent till she said: I would that I had heard thee crossing the brook. But the woodwife bade me look for thee no earlier than to-morrow; else had I time enough; & I would have made the house trim with the new green boughs, & dight-ed our bed with rose blooms;

& I would have done on me my shining gown that the woodwife gave me, for indeed she was but clad in her scanty smock and nought else.

**B**UT he laid his head on her bosom and kissed her all about, and said: Nay, my own love, it is well, it is better. And she murmured over him: O friend, my dear, think not that I had will to hide me from thee. All that is here of me is thine, and thine, and thine.

**A**ND she took his hand & they arose together, and she said: O friend, I fled from thee once & left thee lonely of me because I deemed need drave me to it; & I feared the strife of friends, & confusion & tangle. Now if thou wilt avenge thee on me thou mayest, for I am in thy power. Yet will I ask thee what need will drive thee to leave me lonely?

**N**E SAID: The need of death. But she said: May happen we shall lie together then, as here to-night we shall lie.

Chapter XXVIII. fair days  
in the House of Love.

**O**N the morrow it was sweet times betwixt those twain, and what was hard & fierce of their love they



seemed to have put behind them. A dear joy it was to Birdalone that day to busy herself about the housekeeping, & to provide whatsoever seemed now, or had seemed to her in her early days, to be dainties of their meadow and woodland husbandry, as cream and juncets and wood/fruit & honey, and fine bread made for that very occasion.

**W**ITHAL she was careful as a mother with a child that he should not overweary himself with the sun of the early summer, but rather to follow the brook up into the wood and lie adown in the flecked shadow and rest him wholly, as if there were nought for him to do but to take in rest all that was done for his service, both by the earth and by the hands and nimble feet of Birdalone. And as she was wilful in other ways of her cherishing, so also in this, that for nought in that daylight would she go anywise disarrayed, nay not so much as to go barefoot, though he prayed her thereof sorely, and told her that fairer and sweeter she was in her smock alone than in any other raiment. for in the morning she went in her woodland green let down to her heels, & when the day wore towards evening, & the wind came cool

from over the Great Water, then she did on her wonder-  
raiment which the wood/wife had given her, and led Arthur over the meadows here & there, & went gleaming by the side of the black/clad man along the water's lip. And they looked forth on to Green Eyot and Rock Eyot, and stood by the shallow bight where she had bathed those times; and they went along to the dismal creek where the Sending Boat was wont to lie, & where yet lay the scattered staves of it; and then along the meadow/land they went from end to end, resting oft on the flowery grass, till the dews began to fall & the moon cast shadows on the greensward. Then home they fared to the house; and again on the way must Birdalone feign for their disport that the witch was come back again, and was awaiting her to play the tyrant with her; & Arthur fell in with her game, and kissed her and clipped her, and then drew his sword & said: By Allhallows I shall smite off her head if she but lay a finger on thee.

**S**O they played like two happy children till they came to the door of the house, and Birdalone shoved it open, and they two looked in together & saw nought worse therein save the strange sha-





dows that the moon cast from the settle on to the floor. Then Birdalone drew in her love, & went about lighting the candles & quickening a little cooking fire on the hearth, till the yellow light chased the moon away from the bed of their desire.

**Chapter XXIX. Those twain will seek the wisdom of the Wood-wife.**

**W**HEN next day was their life such as it had been the day before; and as they lay in cool shadow of a great oak, Birdalone fell to telling Arthur all the whole story of her dealings with the wood-wife, and how that she had so loved her and holpen her, that through her love and her help she had escaped the witch & her snares, who would have turned her into a half-devil for the undoing of manfolk. And how that the said wood-wife had never appeared to her but as an image & double of herself, save on the time when she played the leech to him. Then she told him how all had gone when the wood-wife had sought him out for the fulfilment of their love, & of the dreadful day when they had come upon him out of his wit and but little manlike.

**W**HEN she asked, would he, within the next day or two, that they should go see the wood-wife together and thank her for her help, and bring him within the ring of her love and guarding; and he yeasaid it with a good will.

**A**FTER this she would have him tell her of how things had gone with him since that evil day when he had come home from the Castle of the Quest and found her gone. So he told her somewhat, and of his dole and misery, and his dealings with the foemen of Greenford; but yet scantily, & as one compelled; and at last he said:

**D**EAR love, since thou art cossetting me with all solace of caresses, I pray thee remember my trouble and grief, how sore they were, and do with me as with a sick man getting well, as I wot surely thou wouldest do; and do thou that which is at this present the softest and merriest to me, and that forsooth is, that thou shouldest talk and tell, & I should hearken the sweetness of the music, and only here and there put in a word to rest thee and make thy tale the sweeter.

**S**HE laughed with love on him, & without more ado fell to telling every



thing she might think of, concerning her days in the House of Captivity, both when she was but a bairn, and when she was grown to be a young woman; and long was she about the tale, nor was it all done in one day; and a multitude of things she told him which are not set down in this book.

**I**N the evening when they were going again to and fro the meads, it was other talk they fell on, to wit, of their fellows of the Quest, both of Sir Hugh & the three lovely ladies: and now was Arthur nought but kind when he spake of Atra, nor spake Birdalone otherwise; but she said: I shall now say a hard word, yet must thou bear it, my loving, since we twain are now become one, and have but one joy together & one sorrow. Deemest thou that Atra is yet alive? Sooth it is, said Arthur, it may well be that I have slain her. And what may we do by her if ever we fall in with her alive? said Birdalone. I wot not, said Arthur; some would say that we have done penance for our fault, both thou & I; & what other penance may we do, save sundering from each other? And by God above I will not. By thine head and thine hands I will not, said Birdalone.

**S**O said they; but there-with their eyes told tales of the fair eve and the lovely meadows, & the house, the shrine of the dear white bed no less sweet to them than erst; but then presently Birdalone stayed her love, & took her arms about him, and each felt the sweetness of the other's body, and joy blossomed anew in their hearts. Then fell Arthur to telling of the deeds and the kindness of Baudoin, whom never again they should see on the earth; & they turned back home to the house, and on the way spake Birdalone: This is what I would we should do: whereas I have sought thee and thou me, & we have found each other, whereas ye sought me when I went astray in the Black Valley of the Greywaters, & before, when ye three sought your own loves, now I would that we should seek our fellows and have joy in them, and thole sorrow with them as in days gone by.

**S**PAKE Arthur: Dear is the rest with thee in this wilderness; yet were it a deed of fame, and would bring about a day of joy, might we find our friends again, & knit up the links of the fellowship once more. But thou the wise and valiant! belike thou hast in thine head some device where-



by this might be set about.

**B**IRDALONE said: Simple is my device, to wit, that we ask one who is wiser than I. Let us tarry not, but go to-morrow and see the wood-wife & talk with her concerning it. Then she smiled upon him and said: But when thou seest her, wilt thou be aghast if she come before us in my shape of what I was five years ago, or six?

**N**AY, nay, he said, thou art not so terrible as that; not very far do I run from thee now. And therewith they kissed & embraced, and so entered the House of Love.

*Chapter XXX. They have speech with Abundia concerning the Green Knight and his fellows.*

**W**HEN the morrow was they arose and went their ways toward the wood, and Birdalone in her hunter's coat, quiver at back and bow in hand. They came to the Oak of Tryst, and Birdalone was at point to call on the wood-wife by the burning of a hair of hers, when she came lightly from out the thicket, clad as Birdalone, and her very image. She stood before them with a glad countenance, & said: Welcome to the

seekers and finders. But Arthur stepped forth and knelt before her, and took her right hand and kissed it, and said: Here I swear allegiance to thee, O Lady of the Woods, to do thy will in all things, and give thee thanks from my heart more than my tongue can say.

**Q**UOTH the wood-wife: I take thine allegiance, fair young man, & mine help shalt thou have henceforward. Then she smiled and her eyes danced for merriment, and she said: Yet thy thanks meseemeth for this while are more due to the wise carline who brought thee through the woods two days ago, and only left thee when the way was easy and clear to thee.

**L**ADY, said Arthur, I know now how great is thy might, & that thou canst take more shapes than this only; and humbly I thank thee that for us thou hast taken the shape that I love the best of all on the earth.

**S**AID THE wood-wife: Stand up, Black Squire, and consider a little what thou wouldst have me do for thee, while I have speech with mine image yonder. And therewith she came up to Birdalone, & drew her a little apart, and fell to stroking her cheeks and patting her hands and di-



versely caressing her, and she said to her: How now, my child, have I done for thee what I promised, & art thou wholly happy now? O yea, said Birdalone; if nought else befell us in this life but to dwell together betwixt the woodland & the water, and to see thee oft, full happy should we be.

**N**EVERTHELESS, said Habundia, art thou not come hither to ask somewhat of me, that ye may be happier? So it is, wise mother, said Birdalone; grudge not against me therefor, for more than one thing drives me there to. I will not grudge, said the woodwife; but now I will ask thymate if he has thought what it is that he will have of me. And she turned to Arthur, who came forth & said: Lady, I have heard thee, and herein would we have thee help us: There were erst six fellows of us, three carles and three queans, to whom was added this sweetling here; but one of them, to wit the Golden Knight, was slain, and for the rest, Yea, I know, said the woodwife; my child here hath told me all; & now ye wot not where they are or if they be yet alive, all or any of them. Now is it not so that ye would seek these friends, if it were but to greet them but once, & that ye would

ask of the wise woodwife help to find them? Is there any more of the tale? Nay, lady, said Arthur. Said she: Well then, that help shall ye have, were it but for the sake of that little Viridis whereof my child hath told me. Wherefore abide tidings of me for a fourteen days, and seek not to me ere then; & meantime fear not, nor doubt me, for many messengers I have, and ever may I do somewhat if the end of the tale is to be told in these woodlands: & I deem these friends will not be hard to draw hither, for it is most like that they be thinking of you and longing for you, as ye for them. And now I will depart on my business, which is yours, and do ye be happy to-day in the woodland, & tomorrow in the meadows and by the water; & let no trouble weigh down your happy days.

**T**HERewith she flitted away from them, when she had kissed them both. But when she was gone they fared away together deep into the wood, and were exceeding merry disporting them, & on their return they gat them venison for their meat, and so came back to the House of Love when the moon was up and shining brightly.



Chapter XXXI. Habundia  
cometh with tidings of those  
dear friends

**M**ORE the days  
thenceforth  
merrily; and  
one day it was  
delight in the  
wide meads,  
and another they went a long  
way west along the water-side,  
and so into another meadow-  
plain, smaller than their home-  
plain, which Birdalone had ne-  
ver erst come into; and three  
eyots lay off it, green & tree-be-  
set, whereto they swam out to-  
gether. Then they went into the  
wood thereby in the heat of the  
afternoon, & so wore the day,  
that they deemed themselves  
belated, and lay there under a  
thorn-bush the night through.

**A**NOTHER day Birda-  
lone took her mate over  
on to Green Eyot & Rock  
Eyot, and showed him all the  
places she was used to haunt.  
And they had their fishing-gear  
with them, and angled off the  
eyots a good part of the day, &  
had good catch, & swam back  
therewith merrily. And Birda-  
lone laughed, & said that it seem-  
ed to her as if once again she  
were ransoming her skin of the  
witch-wife by that noble catch.

**D**IVERS TIMES also  
they fared into the  
wood, and thrice they

layout the night there in some  
wood/lawn where was water;  
and on one of these times it  
happened that Arthur awoke in  
the grey dawn, and lay open-  
eyed but not moving for a lit-  
tle; and therewith he deemed  
he saw the gleam of war-gear  
in the thicket. So he kept as  
still as he might, but gat his  
sword out of its sheath with-  
out noise, and then leapt up  
suddenly, and sprang thither-  
ward whereas he had seen that  
token, and again saw armour  
gleam and heard some man  
crashing through the under-  
wood, for all was gone in one  
moment. So he woke up Birda-  
lone, & they bended their bows  
both of them, & searched the  
thicket thereabouts heedful-  
ly, arrow on string, but found  
nought fiercer than a great sow  
and her farrow. So came the  
full day, & they gat them back  
to their meadows and their  
house; but thereafter were they  
warier in going about the wood-  
land.

**I**N ALL joyance then  
wore the days till the fif-  
teenth, and in the morn-  
ing early they went their ways  
to the Oak of Tryst, & had no  
need to call Habundia to them,  
for presently she came forth  
out of the thicket, with her  
gown gathered up into her gir-  
dle and bow in hand. But she



cast it down & ran up to Bird-  
alone, and kissed her and clip-  
ped her, and then she took a  
hand of Arthur and a hand of  
Birdalone, and held them both  
and said: My child, & thou dear  
knight, have ye still a longing  
to fall in with those friends of  
yours, & to run all risk of what-  
soever contention and strife  
there may be betwixt you there-  
after? *Yea*, certes, said Ar-  
thur; and even so said Birda-  
lone. *Well* is that then, said  
the wood-wife; but now & for  
this time, ere I help you, I shall  
put a price upon my help, and  
this is the price, that ye swear  
to me never wholly to sunder  
from me; that once in the year  
at least, as long as ye be alive  
and wayworthy, ye come into  
the forest of Evilshaw, and  
summon me by the burning of  
a hair of mine, that we may  
meet and be merry for a while,  
& part with the hope of meet-  
ing once more at least. And if  
ye will not pay the price, go in  
peace, and ye shall yet have my  
help in all other matters that  
may seem good unto you, but  
not in this of joining your fel-  
lowship together. How say-  
est thou, Birdalone, my child?  
How sayest thou, Black Squire,  
whom, as me seemeth, I have de-  
livered from a fate worse than  
death, and have brought out  
of wretchedness into bliss?

**S**PAKE Birdalone: Had I  
dared, I would have bid-  
den thee to swear to me  
even such an oath, to wit, that  
thou wouldst never wholly  
sunder thee from me. How then  
may I not swear this that thou  
biddest me, and that with all  
joy and trustiness?

**S**PAKE Arthur: Lady,  
had I no will to swear  
this oath for thy sake,  
yet with a good will would I  
swear it for my true love's sake  
who loveth thee. Yet verily of  
mine own will would I swear it  
joyfully, were it for nought  
else save to pleasure thee, who  
hast done so kindly by me, &  
hath given me back my man-  
hood and my love, which else  
I had miserably lost.

**S**PAKE the wood-wife: It  
is well again; join hands  
then, and swear as I have  
bidden you by the love ye bear  
each other.

**G**IVEN so they did, and  
then the wood-wife  
kissed them both and  
said: Now do I deem you  
earth's very children and mine,  
& this desire of yours is good,  
and it shall be done if I may  
bring it about; yet therein the  
valiance & wisdom of you both  
may well be tried. for this have  
I found out by my messengers  
and others, that your friends  
are alive, all of them; and they



have thought of you in their inmost hearts, & have long determined that they must needs go seek you if they are to live lives happy & worthy. Furthermore, their quest hath drawn them hither to Evilshaw (nor say I that I have been nothing therein), and they are even now in the wood. But ye shall know that peril encompasses them; for they fare but a few, and of those few be there two traitors who are minded to deliver them to the men of the Red Company, unto whom three women as fair as your self friends were a prize indeed. Wherefore the Red folk are dogging them, & will fall upon them when they find the occasion. But I shall see to it that the occasion shall be in time and place where they shall not be unholpen. Now what ye have to do for your parts, is to waylay the waylayers, and keep watch & ward a-nigh the road they must needs take, and to fall on when need is. But this again I shall see to, that your onset fail not.

**B**UT now ye may say: Since thou art mighty, why shouldst not thou thyself take our friends out of the hands of these accursed, as thou couldst well do, & we to take no part therein? My friends, this might indeed well be; but thou, Birdalone, hast

told me the whole tale, & how that there be wrongs to be forgiven which cannot be made right, and past kindness to be quickened again, & coldness to be kindled into love, & estrangement into familiar friendship; and meseems that the sight of your bodies and your hands made manifest to the eyes of them may do somewhat herein. Yet if otherwise ye think, then so let it be, and go ye back to the House under the Wood, and in three days' time I will bring you your friends all safe and sound.

**N**OW they both said that they would not for aught that they should have no hand in the deliverance of them; so the wood-wife said: Come with me, and I shall lead you to the place of your ambush.

**T**HEN all they went on together, and fared a long way west, & toward the place where erst they two had found Arthur; and at last, two hours before sunset, they came to where was a glade or way between the thickets, which was as it were a little beaten by the goings of man/folk. And the wood-wife did them to wit, that the evil folk aforesaid had so used it and beaten it, that it might just look as if folk were wont to pass that way, whereas it was not very far from their



chiefest haunt & stronghold. A little on the north side of this half-blind way, and some ten yards through the thicket, the ground fell away into a little dale, the bottom whereof was plain & well grassed, and watered by a brook.

**H**ITHER the wood-wife brought the twain; and when they all stood together on the brook-side, she said to them: Dear friends, this is your woodland house for this time, & I rede you go not forth of it, lest ye happen upon any of those evilmen; for nought have ye to fear from any save them. Here amidst these big stones, which make, see ye, as it were a cavern, have I stowed victual for you; and armour therewithal, because, though both of you are in a manner armed, yet who knoweth where a shaft drawn at a venture may reach.

**A**ND from the said stones she drew forth two very fair armours, helm and hauberk, & leg and arm wards; and they were all of green, and shone but little, but were fashioned as no smith of man-folk could have done the like.

**T**HIS is thine, Sir Arthur, said the wood-wife, & thou wilt wear it like as it were silk; and this thine, my child, and thou art

strong enough to bear such light gear. And I charge you both to do on this gear presently, nor do it off till ye have achieved the adventure. And now this is the last word: here is a horn of oliphant which thou shalt wear about thy neck, Birdalone; and if thou be sore bestead, or thy heart faileth thee, blow in it, yet not before the onfall; and then, whether thou blow much or little, thou shalt be well holpen.

**N**OW be not downcast if nought befall to-night or to-morrow, or even the day after; but if the third day be tidingless, then at sunset burn a hair of my head, Birdalone, and I will come to you. And now farewell! for I have yet to do in this matter.

**W**ITH that she kissed Birdalone fondly and embraced Arthur, & went her way; and those twain abode in the dale, & slept and watched by turns, and all was tidingless till the morrow's dawn; neither was there aught to tell of on that day and the night that ended it.



Chapter XXXII. Of the fight  
in the forest and the rescue of  
those friends from the men of  
the Red Company.

**L**IGHT was grow-  
ing on the dawn  
of the next day,  
& the colours of  
things could be  
seen, when Bird-  
alone, who was holding this  
last watch of the night, stood  
still and hearkened, deeming  
that she could hear some noise  
that was neither the morning  
wind in the tree-boughs nor the  
going of the wild things anear  
them in the wood.

**S**o she did off her helm  
to hear the better, and  
stood thus a little; then  
she turned about & stooped  
down to Arthur, who was yet  
sleeping, and put forth a hand  
to rouse him. But or ever she  
touched him, broke forth a  
sound of big and rough voices  
and laughter, & amidst it two  
shrieks as of women.

**A**RTHUR heard it, and  
was on his feet in a  
moment, and helmed,  
and he caught up his bended  
bow & cast on the quiver (for  
Birdalone was already weapon-  
ed), and without more words  
they went forth swiftly up the  
bank and through the thicket  
till they were looking on the  
half-blind way, but under cov-

er, & there was nothing before  
them as yet.

**T**HERE THEY stayed  
and hearkened keen-  
ly. There were no more  
shrieks of women, nor heard  
they any weapon clash, but the  
talking & laughter of men went  
on; & at last they heard a huge  
& grim whoop of many men to-  
gether; & then thereafter was  
less sound of talking, but came  
the jingle as of arms and har-  
ness; and Arthur whispered in  
Birdalone's ear: Stand close!  
they have gotten to horse, and  
will be coming our way. Nock  
an arrow. And even so did he.

**T**HERewith they heard  
clearly the riding of men,  
and in less than five min-  
utes' space they saw three big  
weaponed men riding together,  
clad in red surcoats, and they  
were so nigh that they heard  
the words of their speech. One  
said to the other: How long  
shall the knight hold out, think  
ye? Oh, a week maybe, said  
the other. Meseems it was  
scathe that we stayed not a  
while to pine him, said the first  
man. Nay, said the second,  
we be over-heavy laden with  
bed-gear to tarry. And they  
all laughed thereat, & so went  
on out of hearing.

**B**UT then came four on  
together, whereof one,  
a gaunt, oldish man,



was saying: It is not so much how long we shall be getting there, but what shall betide when we get there. for this is not like lifting a herd of neat, whereof sharing is easy; but with this naked/skinned, two/legged cattle, which forsooth ye can eat & yet have, there may well be strife over the sharing. And look to it if it hath not begun already: we must needs dismount three of our best men that these white/skinned bitches forsooth may each have a horse to herself, or else would they be fighting as to which should have a damsel of them before him on the saddle: curse the fools!

**L**AUGHED out they who were about him, & one young man cast a jeer at him the meaning whereof they might not catch, and again they laughed; and that deal passed on. And next came a bigger rout, a half score or so, & they also laughing and jeering; but amidst them, plain to see riding a straddle, their ankles twisted together under the horses' bellies, their hands bound behind them, first Atra, black/clad as erast; then Hurea, in a gown of wheat-colour; then Viridis, green/clad. Atra rode upright, and looking straight before her; Hurea hung her head all she might, & her long

red hair fell about her face; but Viridis had swooned, and was held up in the saddle by one of the caitiffs on each side of her. They were but little disarrayed, save that some felon had torn the bosom of Viridis' gown, and dragged down the cloth so that her left shoulder was bare.

**A**RTHUR looked, & drew at the caitiff who went a foot beside Atra, & Bird alone at him who went by Viridis, for she wotted whitherward Arthur's shaft would be turned. The loose of the two bows made but one sound; both men fell stark dead, and the others huddled together a moment, and then ran toward the thicket on either hand, and they who ran north, two of them saw not Arthur, because of his green armour, ere they felt the death which lay in his sword. And then he brake out amidst them, and there were three of them on him, yet for no long while, whereas their weapons bit not on the armour of the faery, and his woodland blade sheared leather and ring/mail to the flesh and the bone: mighty were his strokes, and presently all three were wallowing on the earth.

**E**VEN therewith the seven who had passed on had turned back & were



come on him a horseback; and hard had it gone with him, despite of his might and his valour & the trustiness of Habundia's mail. But meanwhile Birdalone had run to Viridis, who had fallen a dead weight aside of her horse, and lay half hanging by the bonds of her ankles. Birdalone swiftly cut the cords both of her feet and her hands, & drew her off her horse as best she might, and laid her down on the grass; & then ran to Arthurs sword aloft, just as his new battle was at point to begin.

**B**UT as she ran it came in to her mind in a twinkling that her sword would be but weak, and the horn hung about her neck. Then she stayed her feet, and set the horn to her lips and blew; and the oliphant gave forth a long singing note which was strange to hear. But while it was yet at her lips one of the caitiffs was upon her, & he cried out: Hah the witch, the accursed green witch! and fetched her a great stroke from his saddle, and smote her on the helm; and though his sword bit not on that good head/burg, she fell to the ground unwitting.

**N**ET was not the wood-wife's promise unavailing, for even while the voice of the horn was in the air,

the way and thickets were alive with men/at/arms, green/clad as those twain, who straight-way fell on the caitiffs, & with Arthur to help, left not one of them alive. Then went some to Viridis, and raised her up, and so dealt with her that she came to herself again; and the like they did by Birdalone, and she stood, and looked about confusedly, but yet saw this, that they had gotten the victory. Some went withal to Aurea, & cut her bonds and took her off her horse and set her on the ground; and she was all bewildered, and knew not where she was.

**B**UT Arthur, when he saw Birdalone on her feet, and unhurt by seeming, went to Atra, & cut her bonds and loosed her, and set her on the earth, all without a word, & then stood before her shyly. Came the colour back into her face therewith, & she flushed red, for she knew him despite his outlandish green war/harness, and she reached out her hand to him, & he knelt before her and took her hand & kissed it. But she bent over him till her face was anigh his, and he lifted up his face and kissed her mouth. And she drew a back a little, but yet looked on him earnestly, and said: Thou hast saved my life, not from death



indeed, but from a loathsome  
hell; I may well thank thee for  
that. And O, if my thanks  
might be fruitful to thee! And  
her bosom heaved, & the  
sobs came, & the tears began  
to run down her cheeks. And  
he hung his head before her.  
But in a while she left weeping,  
and turned about her face and  
looked round the field of deed;  
and she said: Who is yonder  
slim green warrior who hath  
even now knelt down by Viri-  
dis? Is it not a woman? Ar-  
thur reddened: Yea, said he; it  
is Birdalone. Thy love? she  
said. He said swiftly: Yea, &  
thy friend, and this time thy  
deliverer. So it is, she said.  
It is five years since I beheld  
her. My heart yearns for her; I  
shall rejoice at the meeting of  
us.

**S**HE was silent, and he  
also a while; then she  
said: But why tarry we  
here in idle talk when he is yet  
bound, and in torment of body  
and soul; he the valiant, & the  
kind & the dear brother? Come,  
tarry for no question. And  
she stepped out swiftly along  
the green road going west-  
ward, and Arthur beside her;  
and as they went by Viridis,  
lo! Hurea had wandered unto  
them, and now was Birdalone  
unhelmed and kissing & com-  
forting her. Then cried out

Atra: Keep up thine heart, Vi-  
ridis! for now we go to fetch  
thee thy man safe and sound.

**S**O they went but a little  
way on the green road ere  
they came to Sir Hugh  
bound hard and fast to a tree-  
bole, and he naked in his shirt,  
& hard by lay the bodies of two  
stout carles with their throats  
cut; for these honest men and  
the two felons who had betray-  
ed them were all the following  
wherewith the Green Knight  
had entered Evilshaw. And as  
it fell, the traitors had been set  
to watch while the others slept;  
and sleeping the caitiffs found  
them, & slew the said men at  
arms at once, but bound Hugh  
to a tree that he might be the  
longer a dying; since none look-  
ed for any but their own folk  
to pass by that way. All this  
they heard afterwards of Hugh.

**B**UT now the said Hugh  
heard men going, & he  
opened his eyes, & saw  
Atra and a man at arms with  
her; & he cried out: Hah, what  
is this now, sister? a rescue?  
Yea, she said, & look thou  
on the face of the rescuer; and  
there is another hard by, and  
she is a woman.

**W**HEREWITH was Ar-  
thur on him and cutting  
his bonds, and when he  
was loose they fell into each  
other's arms, & Hugh spake:



Now then at last doth life be-  
gin for me as I willed it! And  
hast thou my sweet she-fellow,  
Birdalone, with thee? Yea,  
said Arthur. How good is  
that! said Hugh. And yet, if  
it might but be that Baudoin  
were yet alive for us to seek!  
Then he laughed and said:  
These be but sorry garments  
wherewith to wend along with  
dear and fair ladies, brother!  
Nay, said Arthur, that may  
soon be amended, for yonder,  
where sword met sword, lieth  
raiment abundantly on the  
grass. fie on it! said Hugh,  
laughing; shall I do on me the  
raiment of those lousy trai-  
tors? Not I, by the rood! Thou  
must seek further for my ar-  
ray, dear lad! So they all  
laughed, & were glad to laugh  
together. But Atra said: It is  
easier even than that, for thine  
own fair garments & weapons  
shall we find if we seek them.  
Sooth to say there was none  
left to bear them off, save it  
were this man, or Birdalone his  
mate.

**W**ITH that word she  
looked kindly on Ar-  
thur, and again they  
laughed all three; though for-  
sooth they were well-nigh  
weeping-ripe; one for joy, and  
that was Hugh; one for me-  
mory of the days gone by; and  
one for the bitterness of love

that should never be reward-  
ed; albeit dear even unto her  
was the meeting of friends &  
the glory of forgiveness and  
the end of enmity.

**Chapter XXXIII. Viridis tel-  
leth the Tale of their Seeking.**

**W**HEN came they  
back to where  
were the three  
others, & Viridis  
was quite come  
to herself & ran  
to meet her man, and he took  
her in his arms & caressed her  
sweetly; and then he turned to  
Birdalone, & spared no sign of  
friendly love to her; & Arthur,  
for his part, did so much for  
Aurea & Viridis. No long tale  
there was between them for  
that while, for they would bush  
them to be gone. But first they  
dug a grave for those two poor  
men who had been slain by the  
felons, and prayed for them.  
As for the caitiffs who lay slain  
there, one score & two of them,  
they left them for the wolves  
to devour, & the tearing of the  
kites and crows; nor meddled  
they with any of their gear or  
weapons. But they speedily  
found Hugh's raiment, and  
his pouch, wherein was money  
good store; & they found also  
rings and ouches and girdles,  
which had been torn from the  
damsels in the first rage of  
their taking.



**F**IRST though, when they had gathered together such horses as they needed, & let the rest run wild, Birdalone brought her she/friends down into the dale, & did them to bathe in a pool of the stream, & tended them as if she were their tire/woman, so that they were mightily refreshed; & she made garlands for them of the woodland flowers, as eglantine and honeysuckle; & herself, she bathed her, and did not on her battle-gear again, but clad her body in her woman's array. Then she brought forth victual and wine from Habundia's store, & set it out on the stream/side; and thereafter she went up the bent to the green way and fetched down Hugh and Arthur, and brought them to the ladies, & bade them note how trim and lovely they were gotten again, & again it could scarce be but that kisses and caresses were toward; and in all content and love they took their breakfast, though bitter/sweet unto Atra had been the holding of her hand by Arthur and the kissing of her cheek, albeit not for worlds had she foregone it.

**S**O there they abode merrily for some three hours, whereas the day was yet young; and they asked & told each other much, so that the

whole tale, both of the seekers from the world & of the seekers from the water/side, came out little by little. Now of the last ye have heard what there is to tell, but for the others Viridis took up the tale, as erst she did with the dealings of the Knights of the Quest in the Isle of Increase Unsought; & it seemed by her tale that Hugh & the ladies, though they were living happily and prosperously in the land of the Green Mountains, wherein Hugh had wealth enow, yet the thought both of Arthur & of Birdalone would not out of their minds, & often it was that they thought of them, not as friends think of friends of whom they are content to know that they are yet alive & most-like thriving, but as friends think of friends whose absence cuts a shard out of their lives, so that they long to see them day by day. Wherefore it came to this at last, after much talk hereof, that Hugh left his possessions and his children (for he had two women/bairns born of Viridis) in the keeping of trusty folk, and took with him Viridis his wife, & Aurea and Atra, and they set out to seek those twain the world over till they should find them. And first by the rede of Atra they fared to Greenford, and there



tarried a month, and sought tidings of many, and heard a word here & there whereby they deemed that Birdalone had passed therethrough some little time before. So they went thence to the Castle of the Quest, and found it in such plight as ye have heard, and it went sore to their hearts to behold it and to be there. But therewithal they happed upon Leonard the priest, and he was rejoiced beyond measure to see them, and told them all that ye have heard concerning Birdalone's coming thither and departing thence; & he told them therewith about those hauntings and sendings in the hall of the castle, & that they came to an end the very day that Birdalone departed thence in the Sending Boat. Yet for the last three days there had been visions therein; but being questioned he was loth to tell thereof, so they forbore him a while.

**A**T these tidings they were sore moved, & they talked the matter over betwixt themselves (& Leonard also was in their redes), & they must needs deem that either Birdalone was cast away, or that she had come to her old dwelling, the House under the Wood, & belike had fallen into the hands of the witch once more, & thereat were they sore

downcast; & yet somewhat it was, that they had heard sure tidings of her; though meanwhile of Arthur had they heard nought.

**W**HILE THEY talked this over, Atra, who had been somewhat silent, spake & said: Here are we brought to a stop with the first tidings which we have heard, whereas we know no manner of wending the Great Water. This seemeth evil, but let us not be cast down, or die redelless. Ye have heard of what sayeth Sir Leonard of these hauntings in the hall, and how that they have come back again, wherefore why should we not sleep in the hall this night, those of us at least who have not so much fear as not to note them well, to see if we may draw any avail from them? How say ye? for my part I will try the adventure, whatever may come of it.

**N**O they all ye said it, though Hurea was somewhat timorous, albeit she would not be parted from the others; so when night came there they made their beds and lay down; & the end of it was, that a little before midnight Atra waked the others, and did them to wit that by her deeming something was toward; & presently they were all four as



wide awake as ever they were in their lives; and next, without any sound that was strange, there came the image of a woman on to the dais, clad in green like to an huntress of ancient days, her feet sandalled, her skirts gathered up into her girdle, so that her legs were naked; she had a quiver at her back, and a great bow in her hand.

**N**OW to all of them save Atra this appearance seemed to be the image of Birdalone; but she told her fellows afterwards, that to her it seemed not to be altogether Birdalone, but rather some other one most like unto her, as it were her twin sister.

**G**AZED the image kindly and sweetly on them, so that they beheld it without fear; and it seemed to them that it gave forth speech; yet not so much that the sound of words was in the air about and smote their ears, as that the sense of words reached the minds of them. And this was the tale of it: Ye, who are seeking the lost, have done well to come hither, and now shall ye do well to wend the straightest way to the dwelling of the wild wood, and that is by way of the western verge of Evilshaw the forest. Greenford is on the way. Wayleaders ye shall

y 3

get; be wise, yet not prudent, and take them, though they be evil, & your luck may well avail.

**H**EREWITH the image vanished away as it had come, and Leonard, who with the others took the appearance for an image of Birdalone, said that it was such as he had seen it the three last days. So they lay not down again, but departed for Greenford without tarrying, & rode the other end of the short night through till they came to Greenford. But Leonard would not with them; and Hugh behight him, if he lived and did well, to come back somehow to the Castle of the Quest, and sore do it that it should be no longer desolate.

**S**O to Greenford they came, and spared not to do folk to wit that they would ride a pilgrimage in Evilshaw, and were fain of wayleaders; & there they dwelt a day or two, and many would let them of that journey, which, said they, was rather deadly than perilous only. But on the third day came to Sir Hugh two stout carles well weaponed, who said that they knew well all the ways that led to Evilshaw, and the ways that went therethrough, and they offered themselves for a wage to Sir Hugh. Now these said

325



carles were not over fair of favour, but seemed somewhat of ribalds, nor would Sir Hugh have taken them to service in his house at home; but he called to mind that it were more prudence than wisdom to spoil his journey and lose the occasion of finding his dear friends for the hasty judgment of a man's face and demeanour, wherefore he waged these two men, and they set out for the western edges of Evilshaw.

**A**N Y towns & thorps they passed through, and everywhere, when men knew whither they were bound, they letted them all they might in words; but little heed they paid thereto, whereas they were all fixed in their rede that nought was to be done save the finding of their friends, & that their life/days were spoiled if they found them not. And moreover, each one of them, but especially Atra & Viridis, had dreams of the night from time to time, wherein they seemed to see the green-clad woman, were she Birdalone or another, beckoning and bidding them to enter the Wood of Evilshaw.

**A**S to those two way-leaders withal, wheth'er it were that they got used to their faces, or that their ways & manners were nought

uncourteous or fierce, they doubted them less and less as time wore; all save Viridis, whose flesh crept when they drew anigh her, as will betide one who comes across an evil-looking creeping thing. As for Atra, she now began to heed little the things about her, as if her heart were wholly set on the end of the journey.

**B**UT now at last were they come so far that they had no choice but to use the said wayleaders, for they were gotten to the edge of Evilshaw. So they entered it, & those two led them by half-blind ways & paths amongst the thickets, and fumbled never with the road.

**F**IVE days they went thus, and on the fifth evening they lay down to sleep in the wood, & it was the turn of those two hirelings to keep watch and ward, & they woke not the next morn save with the hands of the Red felons at their throats, so that Hugh was bound, and his two trusty men who came with him from the Green Mountains were slain before a stroke might be struck.

**T**HIS was the end of Viridis' tale, save that she told how that it was she that had uttered those two shrieks which Arthur & Bird-



carles were not over fair of favour, but seemed somewhat of ribalds, nor would Sir Hugh have taken them to service in his house at home; but he called to mind that it were more prudence than wisdom to spoil his journey and lose the occasion of finding his dear friends for the hasty judgment of a man's face and demeanour, wherefore he waged these two men, and they set out for the western edges of Evilshaw.

**A**N Y towns & thorps they passed through, and everywhere, when men knew whither they were bound, they letted them all they might in words; but little heed they paid thereto, whereas they were all fixed in their rede that nought was to be done save the finding of their friends, & that their life/days were spoiled if they found them not. And moreover, each one of them, but especially Atra & Viridis, had dreams of the night from time to time, wherein they seemed to see the green-clad woman, were she Birdalone or another, beckoning and bidding them to enter the Wood of Evilshaw.

**A**S to those two wayleaders withal, wheth'er it were that they got used to their faces, or that their ways & manners were nought

uncourteous or fierce, they doubted them less and less as time wore; all save Viridis, whose flesh crept when they drew anigh her, as will betide one who comes across an evil-looking creeping thing. As for Atra, she now began to heed little the things about her, as if her heart were wholly set on the end of the journey.

**B**UT now at last were they come so far that they had no choice but to use the said wayleaders, for they were gotten to the edge of Evilshaw. So they entered it, & those two led them by half-blind ways & paths amongst the thickets, and fumbled never with the road.

**F**IVE days they went thus, and on the fifth evening they lay down to sleep in the wood, & it was the turn of those two hirelings to keep watch and ward, & they woke not the next morn save with the hands of the Red felons at their throats, so that Hugh was bound, and his two trusty men who came with him from the Green Mountains were slain before a stroke might be struck.

**T**HIS was the end of Viridis' tale, save that she told how that it was she that had uttered those two shrieks which Arthur & Bird-



THE WATER OF THE WONDROUS ISLES  
THE SEVENTH PART: THE DAYS OF RETURNING.

Chapter I. Sir Hugh asketh  
Birdaloue where she would  
have the Abode of their fel-  
lowship to be.



THE NEXT DAY, THEY  
arose and were glad, & it was  
to them as if the sun of the  
early summer had arisen for  
nought save to shine on their  
happy day. And they went a-  
bout from place to place where  
as tidings had befallen Bird-  
alone; & she served them one  
& all as if she were their hand-  
maid, and they loved her and  
caressed her, and had been fain  
to do all her will did they but  
know it.

IN this wise wore day af-  
ter day till June began  
to wane, and then on a  
time came Hugh unto Birda-  
loue, and spake unto her and  
said: All we have been talking  
together, and I am sent to ask

thee what is in thy mind as to  
abiding here or going elsewhi-  
ther. for now that we be come  
together again, not for all the  
kingdoms of the world would  
we sunder again; & above all,  
none of us would leave thee,  
O my sister. But if thou wilt  
come with me to our land un-  
der the Green Mountains, there  
is for thee a pleasant place &  
a fair dwelling, & honour from  
all folk, and our love that shall  
never leave thee; and I, & Ar-  
thur my brother, we shall win  
fame together amongst the  
kighthood, & thou shalt be  
proud & glad both of him and  
of me.

SHE said: And if I may  
not go with thee thith-  
er, what other way is  
there to escape the sundering?

Said Hugh: This, that thou  
choose in the world what land  
liketh thee for a dwelling place,  
and we will go with thee and  
leave thee never, & thou shalt  
be our lady and queen. Then  
he laughed and said: Yet, our  
lady, I have left behind me un-  
der the Green Mountains cer-  
tain things which I love, as two  
fair women/children, & a squire  
or two whose fathers served  
my fathers, & whose children  
I would should serve my chil-  
dren. And moreover I have left  
there certain matters of avail,



my wealth & livelihood to wit. Wilt thou begrudge it if I must needs go fetch these, & bring them to the land where thou dwellest, through whatever peril we may have to face?

**D**EAR HART thou, she said, & my very friend, but tell me: how sorry wouldst thou be to leave thine own land and follow after me for the sake of one who is neither thine own true love nor of thy kindred? Said he: Not so sorry that I should grudge against thee thereafter. Moreover if that much of sorrow came to me, I should deem it not ill, lest I grow so overhappy that the luck rise up against me and undo me.

**S**HE said, smiling on him kindly: Meseems that I am overhappy, whereas I have such dear cherishing of noble friends. But now I will tell thee all, & maybe thou wilt love me the less for the telling. In these woods here, and lady & mistress of them, dwelleth one who is not of the race of Adam. And she helped & cherished me and gave me wisdom when I was tormented and accursed, & she it was who saved me from the evil witch, & gave me the good hap to meet your loves and to fetch you to their helping; & twice hath she saved me from mortal peril otherwise. And she hath found me my love, thy brother Arthur,

and delivered him from unwitting and wanhope; & she it is who drew all you hither unto us, & who delivered you from the felons who had mastered you. And I have sworn unto her that I would never wholly sunder me from her; and how shall I break mine oath & grieve her, even had I the will thereto, as God wot I have not? And she wept therewith.

**B**UT HUGH kissed her and said: Birdalone, my dear, why weepest thou? Didst thou not hear my word, that thy people should be my people, and thy land my land, and that whither thou goest I will go? Dost thou not throw me then? Or how deemest thou I may tear thy friend Viridis from thee, when she hath just found thee? But tell me, hast thou in thy mind any dwelling place other than this?

**Y**EA, she said: I may not depart very far from this forest of Evilshaw lest I grieve my wisdom mother overmuch. But if one go westward through the wood, he shall happen at last, when he cometh forth of it, on a good town hight Utterhay, which lieth on the very edge thereof. There was I born, and there also I look to find three dear & trusty friends to whom I owe return of their much kindness. It is a noble town in a pleasant land, and thou and my lord Ar-



Part VII.  
The Days of  
Returning

thur may well win both honour and worship & lordship there. And wholly I trust in thy word that thou wilt not grudge against me for dragging thee thither.

**HEREWIT**H she gave him her hand, smiling on him, though there was yet trouble in her face. But he took the hand and held it, and laughed merrily and said: Lo now! how good it is for friends to take counsel together! What better may we do than go with thee thither? And how greatly will Viridis rejoice when she heareth of this. Now will I go and tell her and the others.

**Other** then, dear lad, she said; but as to the matter of thy fetching thy children & livelihood hither, that may be not so hard nor so perilous as thou deemest; & thou shalt go about it whenso thou wilt, and the sooner the better, and we shall abide thee here as long as need may be. And therewith he went his ways to tell Viridis and the others of this rede which they had come to between them.

Chapter II. Birdalone taketh Counsel with her Wood-mother concerning the matter of Sir Hugh

**ON** that same day went Birdalone to the Oak of Tryst and called her wood-mother to her, and she came glad and smiling, & kissed & embraced Birdalone, and said unto her: Now I see that thou art well content with this last matter I have done for thee, whereas thou art come to crave a new gift of me. How knowest thou that? said Birdalone, laughing. Said Habundia: Wouldst thou have come to me so soon otherwise from out of all that happiness? I have come to tell thee of my rede, said Birdalone, & to ask thee if thou art like-minded with me thereon. Said the wood-wife: And what is thy rede, my child? Wood-mother, said Birdalone, we deem that it were good for us all to go down into Utterhay where I was born, and to take up our abode therein.

**S**aid the wood-wife: This rede I praise, and even so would I have counselled you to do; but I abided to see if it should come from out of thy breast, and now even so it hath done; wherefore I under-



stand thy wisdom & rejoice in thee. And now crave thy boon, my child, and thou shalt have it without fail.

**Y**EA, said Birdalone, that will I, and the more that it is a simple one & easy for thee to do. Thou knowest that Hugh the Green Knight hath come with my she/friends seeking us all the way from under the Green Mountains, and he hath left there goods that he needs must have and folk whom he loves; and now he would go back thither, and fetch all that away hither, and see to his matters as soon as may be. And I would have thee counsel us what to do, whether to build a barque, as perchance we may get it done, and sail the lake therein to the Castle of the Quest or thereabout, & thence to ride to his land; or else to take thy guidance & safe conduct through the wood, & to bring his folk back the same way.

**S**HAID the wood/wife: As to the way by water, I may help you little therein, and meseemeth that way be many traps and wiles & many perils. Wherefore I bid you try it not, but let the Green Knight come up hither to this tree to-morrow before noon, all horsed and armed and arrayed, & there shall he find three men armed

in green gear, horsed well, and leading two sumpter/beasts with them; and they shall be his until he giveth them back unto me. But if he doubteth any thing betwixt the wood's end & under the Green Mountains, let him wage what folk he will besides, for these my men will have money enough of his with them. But by no means let him send them away till he hath done with the wood altogether, both betwixt here and the western dwelt/land, & here and Utterhay, save thou be with him. But while these be with him, both he & whatso ever money he bringeth shall be sure from all peril whiles they be in the wood. Now, my child, was not this the boon thou camest up hither to ask of me?

**Y**EA verily, said Birdalone; yet also I came up hither to praise thee & thank thee & love thee. And she threw herself into Habundia's arms and kissed and caressed her, and Habundia her in like wise.

**S**HAKE the wood/wife: Thou art the beloved child of my wisdom; & now I see of thee that thou wilt be faithful and true and loving unto me unto the end. And I think I can see that thou and thy man shall do well and hap-



Part VII.  
The Days of  
Returning

pily in Utterhay; & the Green Knight also & thy she-friends. And whatsoever thou wilt of me that I may do for thee or thy friends, ask it freely, and freely shalt thou have it. But this I will bid thee, that the while the Green Knight shall be gone about his matter, thou shalt come hither to me often; & thy friends also thou shalt bring to me, that I may see them and talk to them & love them. And specially shalt thou bid Atra unto me; for me seems she is so wise already that I may learn her more wisdom, & put that into her heart which may solace her and make her to cease from fretting her own heart, & from grief & longing overmuch. And I were fain to reward her in that she hath forborne to grudge against thee and to bear thee enmity. for I know, my child, not from mine own heart, but from the wisdom I have learned, how hardly the children of Adam may bear to have that which they love taken away from them by another, even if they themselves might in the long last have wearied of it and cast it away their own selves. Go now, my child, and do thy friend to wit what I will do for him.

**W**HEREWITH they parted, and Birdalone fared home to the house, and

found the fellowship of them all sitting by the brook-side, & talking sweetly together in all joy and hope of what their life should be in the new land whereto Birdalone would lead them. Straightway then she told them of Hugh & his journey, and how well he should be guarded in the wood both coming & going. And they thought that right good, & they thanked her & praised her, and took her into their talk, and she sat down by them happily.

Chapter III. Of the journey-  
ing through the forest of Evil-  
shaw unto the town of Utter-  
hay.

**I**N the morrow in due time Birdalone, going afoot, led Sir Hugh, all armed and horsed, to the Oak of Tryst, and there they found the three men-at-arms, well-weaponed and in green weed, abiding them. They did obeisance to Sir Hugh, & he greeted them, and then without more ado he kissed Birdalone and went his ways with his way-leaders, but Birdalone turned back to the house & her friends.

**N**EXT DAY Birdalone brought her three she-friends unto the Trysting Oak, and showed them to the wood-mother, and she was



kind and soft with them; and both Hurea and Viridis were shy with her, & as if they feared her, but Atra was frank & free, and spake boldly. And thereafter when Birdalone went to meet her wood-mother, Atra would go with her if she were asked, and at last would go alone, when she found that Habundia was fain of her coming, so that there were not many days when they met not; & the wood-wife fell to learning her the lore of the earth, as she had done aforetime with Birdalone; and Atra waxed ruddier & merrier of countenance, whereof was Birdalone right glad, and Arthur yet more glad, and the others well content.

**S**O wore the time till Hugh had been gone for twenty and three days, & as they walked the meadows anigh the house about undern, they saw a knight riding down the bent toward them, and presently they knew him for Hugh, and turned and hastened to meet him, so that he was straightway amidst them, and on foot. Dear then were the greetings and caresses betwixt them, & when it was over, & Birdalone had led away his horse & dight it for him, and had gotten him victuals and drink, & they were all sitting on the grass together, he told them how he had

fared. He had done all his matters in the Land under the Green Mountains, & had given over his lands and houses to a man of his lineage, his cousin, a good knight, and had taken from him of gold and goods what he would. Then he had taken his two bairns and their nurse, & an old squire & five sergeants, whereof one was his foster-brother, and the others men somewhat stricken in years, & had departed with them. Sithence he had come his ways to Greenford, and had held talk therein with the prior of a great and fair house of Black Canons, & had given him no little wealth wherewith to re-do the Castle of the Quest what was needed, and for livelihood of four canons to dwell there, and Leonard to be their prior, that there they might remember Sir Baudoin their dear friend daily in the office, and do good unto his soul. Sithence he had ridden to the Castle of the Quest with the said Prior of St. Austin of Greenford, & had found Leonard, and had settled all the business how it was to be done. Thereafter he had returned to Greenford, & gathered his folk, and got him gone, under the guidance of Habundia's folk, by castles & thorps and towns the nearest way to the edge of Evilshaw. And

Part VII.  
The Days of  
Returning



Part VII.  
The Days of  
Returning

they had come to the forest, and ridden it six days without mishap; and when they had come to the Oak of Tryst once more, the wayleaders said that it were well if all they together tarried not much longer in the forest; wherefore they had brought them to a fair wood-lawn, & there they encamped, & were there as now. And, said Hugh, there are they abiding me, and it is in my mind that this very eve we go, all of us, and meet them there, if ye may truss your goods in that while; but as to victuals, we have plenty, & it needeth not. And then to-morrow shall we wend our way as straight as may be toward the good town of Utterhay.

**A**LL THEY ye said it, though in her heart may be Birdalone had been fain of abiding a little longer in her own land; but she spake no word thereof. And they all set to work to the trussing up of their goods, & then turned their backs on the Great Water, & came up into the woodland, and so to the camp in the wood-lawn. And there had Viridis a joyful meeting with her babes, and she gladdened the hearts of Sir Hugh's men at arms by her kind greeting; and they rejoiced in meeting Aurea and Atra again, and they won-

dered at Birdalone & her beauty, and their hearts went out to her, both the old men's and the young ones'. But Habundia's men looked on it all like images of warriors.

**T**HERE then they feasted merrily that evening. But when the morrow was come they were speedily on the way toward Utterhay; and the wayleaders guided them so well and wisely, that by noon of the fifth day they were come forth of the wood & on to the bent that looked down upon the town of Utterhay. There turned to Hugh the three wayleaders, and spake: Lord, we have done thee the service which we were bidden; if thou hast no further need of us, give us leave.

**S**AID Hugh: Leave ye have, & I shall give you a great reward ere ye go.

Said the chief of them: Nay, lord, no reward may we take, save a token from thee that thou art content with us.

What token shall it be? said Hugh. Quoth the wayleader: That each of us kiss the Lady Birdalone on the mouth, for she it is that is verily our mistress under our great mistress.

**L**AUGHED Hugh thereat, but the men laughed not; then spake Hugh: This must be at the lady's own will. Even so, said they.



**W**HEN HUGH brought Birdalone thither & told her what was toward, & she consented to the kiss with a good will, and said to each of the men after they had kissed her: Herewith goeth my love to the mistress and queen of the woods; do ye bear the same unto her. And thereafter those wayleaders fared back into the woods.

**N**OW they gather themselves together and go down toward Utterhay, and make a brave show, what with the sumpter/horses, and the goodly array of the four ladies, and the glittering war-gear of the men/at/arms; and Sir Hugh and Sir Arthur displayed their pennons as they went.

**A**LL this saw the warders on the wall of Utterhay; & they told the captain of the porte, and he came upon to the wall, and a man with him; and when he saw this bright company coming forth from the wood, he bade men to him, two score of them, all weaponed, and he did on his armour, & rode out/at/gates with them to meet those new/comers; & this he did, not because he did not see them to be but few, but because they came forth out of Evilshaw, and then doubted if they were trustworthy.

**S**o he met them two bow-shots from the gate, and rode forward till he was close to the wayfarers; and when he beheld the loveliness of the women, & especially of Birdalone, who wore that day the gleaming/glittering gown which Habundia had given her, he was abashed, & deemed yet more that he had to do with folk of the faery. But he spake courteously, and said, turning to Hugh, who rode the foremost: fair sir, would ye tell unto the man whose business it is to safeguard the good town of Utterhay what folk ye be, and on what errand ye ride, and how it is that ye come forth from Evilshaw safe, in good case, with pennons displayed, as if the said wood were your very own livelihood? for, sooth to say, hitherto we have found this, that all men dread Evilshaw, & none will enter it uncompelled.

**T**HERETO answered Hugh: I hight Sir Hugh the Green Knight, and am come from under the Green Mountain; and this is Sir Arthur, called the Black Squire, but a knight he is verily, and of great kindred & a warrior most doughty. And he hath been captain of the good town of Greenford west away through the wood yonder a long way,



and hath done the town and the frank thereof mickle good service in scattering & destroying the evil companies of the Red Hold, which hold we took by force of arms from the felons who held it for the torment & plague of the country side.

**N**Ow as to our errand, we be minded to dwell in your good town of Utterhay, and take our part with your folk, and we have wealth enow thereto, so as to be beholden to none; and as time goes on we may serve you in divers wise, & not least in this maybe, that with a good will we shall draw sword for your peace & the freedom of them of Utterhay.

**W**HEN THE captain heard these words, he made obeisance to Sir Hugh, and said: fair sir, though we be here a long way from Greenford, yet have we heard some tale of the deeds of you, & surely the porte and all the folk shall be fain of your coming. Yet I pray thee be not wrath; for there is a custom of the good town, that none may enter its gates coming from out of this forest of Evilshaw, save he leave some pledge or caution with me, be it his wealth, or the body of some friend or fellow, or, if nought else, his

very own body. Wherefore if thou, Sir Green Knight, wilt but give us some sure pledge, then will I turn about and ride with you back and through the gate into Utterhay; & doubtless, when the mayor hath seen you and spoken with you, the said pledge shall be rendered to you again.

**E**RRE Hugh might answer, came Birdalone forth & said: Sir captain, if I, who am the lady of the Black Squire here, be hostage good enough, then take me, and if need be, chain me to make surer of me. And she drew near unto him smiling, & held out her hands as if for the manacles.

**B**UT when the captain saw her thus, all the blood stirred in his body for joy of her beauty, & he might but just sit his horse for his wonder & longing; but he said: The saints forbid it, lady, that I should do thee any hurt or displeasure, or aught save the most worship I may. But thy hostage I will take, Sir Knight, if thou be content to yield her, whereas in an hour belike she shall be free again. And now fare we all gateward again.

**S**O then they all rode on together, Birdalone by the captain's left hand; & as they passed by the poor



houses without the wall, she looked and saw the one which had been her mother's dwelling, so oft and so closely had she told her all about it.

**T**HUS then they entered Utterhay, and the captain led them straight to the mote/house whereas the mayor and the porte were sitting; and much people followed them through the streets, wondering at them, and praising the loveliness of the women, and the frank and gallant bearing of the men/at/arms.

**S**O they lighted down at the mote/house & were brought to the mayor, and when he had spoken them but a little, and had come to himself again from the fear and abashment that he had of them, he showed himself full fain of their coming, and bade them welcome to the good town, and took them into his own house to guesting, until folk might dight a very goodly house which the porte did give unto them.

**B**UT some two hours afterwards, when they were housed in all content, as they sat in the hall of the mayor, which was great and goodly, talking and devising with worthies of Utterhay, there entered two fair & frank/looking young men, who went straight

up to Birdalone, and the first knelt down before her & kissed her hand, and said: O our lady, and art thou verily come to us! O our happiness & the joy of this day!

**B**UT when she saw him and heard him and felt the touch of his hand, she bent down to him & kissed him on the forehead, for she knew him that it was Robert Gerardson.

**T**HEN the other man came up to her as if he also would have knelt to her, but his purpose changed, & he cast his arms about her body and fell to kissing her face all over, weeping the while, & then he drew off & stood trembling before her; and she, all blushing like a red rose & laughing a little, and yet with the tears in her eyes, said: O Giles Gerardson, and thou, Robert, how fain I am to see you twain; but tell me, is your father well? Yea, verily, our dear lady, said Robert, and it will be unto him as a fresh draught of youth when he wotteth that thou art come to dwell amongst us; for so it is, O lady beloved, is it not? said he. Yea, forsooth, or even so I hope, said Birdalone. But here be other friends that ye must needs know, if we come to dwell together here in peace; and then go & fetch



of the porte it was to strength-  
en the walls and the gates, and  
to build a good and fair castle,  
meet for any earl, joining on to  
the wall by the face that looked  
west, that is to say, on to Evil-  
shaw; and that liked the war-  
dukes well.

**S**O when spring came it  
was set about, but it was  
five years adoin, and  
before it was all finished the  
war-dukes entered into it, and  
dwelt there with their wives &  
their friends in all honour. And  
a little thereafter, whether they  
would or no, the men of Utter-  
hay had to handle weapons &  
fare afield to meet the foe with  
the valiant men of the crafts,  
and what of waged men they  
might get. And well & valiant-  
ly were they led by their dukes,  
and they came to their above,  
and gained both wealth & hon-  
our thereby; & from that time  
forward began the increase of  
Utterhay under those two cap-  
tains, who were unto them as in  
old time the consuls had been  
unto the Roman folk, save that  
they changed them not year  
by year as the Romans were  
wont.

**S**O wore the days, and all  
those friends dwelt to-  
gether in harmony & joy;  
though the wearing of time  
wrought changes amongst  
them. for Robert Gerardson

began in no long while to look  
on Hurea with eyes of love; &  
at last he came to Birdalone  
and craved her leave to woo the  
said lady, and she granted it  
with a good will, and was fain  
thereof, whereas she saw that  
Hurea sorely lacked a mate; &  
scarce might she have a better  
than was Robert; so in process  
of time they two were wedded  
and dwelt together happily.

**F**OR SOOTH Birdalone  
had been fainer yet  
might she have seen  
Giles Gerardson and Htra  
drawn together. But though  
they were dear friends & there  
was much converse betwixt  
them, this betid not, so far as  
we have heard.

**T**HE old Gerard dwelt  
happily amongst them  
all for fifteen years af-  
ter they had come to Utterhay,  
and then fell asleep, a very old  
man.

**A**S to the wood of Evil-  
shaw, it was not once  
a year only that Bird-  
alone & Arthursought thither  
and met the wood-mother, but  
a half-score of times or more,  
might be, in the year's circle;  
and ever was she kind & loving  
with them, and they with her.

**B**UT of all those fellows  
it was Htra that had  
longest dealings with  
the wood-wife; for whiles would



Part VII.  
The Days of  
Returning

she leave Utterhay and her friends and fare lonesome up into Evilshaw, & find Habundia & abide with her in all kindness holden for a month or more. And ever a little before these departures betid would she fall moody & few-spoken, but she came back ever from the wood calm and kind and well-liking.

**A**MIDST all these comings and goings somewhat wore off the terror of Evilshaw; yet never was it accounted other than a daring deed to enter it alone without

fellowship; & most had liefer that some man of religion were of their company therein, or they would bear about them something holy or blessed to hold the evil things.

**N**OW when all this hath been said, we have no more to tell about this company of friends, the most of whom had once haunted the lands about the Water of the Wondrous Isles, save that their love never sundered, and that they lived without shame and died without fear. So here is an end.

Here ends The Water of the Wondrous Isles, written by William Morris. It was printed at the Kelmscott Press, Upper Mall, Hammersmith, in the County of Middlesex, & finished on the first day of April, 1897.

The borders and ornaments were designed entirely by William Morris, except the initial words *Whilom & Empty*, which were completed from his unfinished designs by R. Catterson-Smith.





Sold by the Trustees of the late William Morris  
at the Kelmscott Press.



THE WATER  
OF THE  
WONDROUS  
ISLES  
BY  
WILLIAM  
MORRIS